



P. M. **GRAMMAR** *Nichols*

OF THE

FRENCH LANGUAGE,

WITH

PRACTICAL EXERCISES.

BY N. WANOSTROCHT, LL. D.

FIFTH AMERICAN FROM THE FOURTEENTH LONDON EDITION.

TO WHICH IS NOW FIRST ADDED,

A VERY COMPREHENSIVE TABLE OF CONTENTS.

With considerable Additions and Improvements.

BOSTON:

PRINTED BY J. H. A. FROST,
FOR WEST, RICHARDSON AND LORD,
No. 75, Cornhill.

1819.

PC 2109

W3

1819.

DISTRICT OF MASSACHUSETTS, to wit :

District Clerk's Office.

BE IT REMEMBERED, that on the thirtieth day of May, A. D. 1817, and in the forty-first year of the Independence of the United States of America, *West & Richardson*, of the said District, have deposited in this Office the Title of a Book, the right whereof they claim as Proprietors, in the words following, to wit :

A Grammar of the French Language, with Practical Exercises. By N. Wagnon-trocht, LL. D. Fourth American from the thirteenth London edition, with considerable Additions and Improvements.

In conformity to the Act of the Congress of the United States, entitled, "An Act for the Encouragement of Learning, by securing the Copies of Maps, Charts and Books, to the Authors and Proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned :'' and also to an Act entitled, "An Act supplementary to an Act, entitled, 'An Act for the Encouragement of Learning, by securing the copies of Maps, Charts and Books, to the Authors and Proprietors of such copies during the times therein mentioned ; and extending the benefits thereof to the Arts of Designing, Engraving and Etching Historical, and other Prints.' "

JOHN W. DAVIS,
Clerk of the District of Massachusetts.

Exchange

9 1

MAY 21 1848

Accessions Division

THE LIBRARY OF CONGRESS

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE publishers of the previous Boston editions of this Grammar now offer a new and improved edition of a work which has become generally known and esteemed.

When it was first determined to reprint this judicious system of theoretically and practically teaching the French language, a perfect conviction was felt that it would meet the approbation of the wise and learned as soon as it was known ; and the rapid sale of four editions in the United States within a few years has fully realized that expectation and given indubitable evidence of the intrinsic merit of this mode of instruction.

In London this Grammar has passed through fourteen editions, and it has likewise been printed several times at Paris.

Previous to the printing of every new edition the American publishers have always been careful to procure the latest English copy, in order to profit by any improvement which may have been made in succeeding editions, and this attention has always proved advantageous. Besides this, they have been so fortunate as to have the same editor for all their editions, who, being an experienced instructor of languages, has given this grammar a decided preference ever since its first appearance, and contributed, by his own observations in the course of tuition, to remove every obscurity, supply all defects, and render it as easy and perfect as possible.

This work is now introduced into some of the first literary institutions in the country, and particularly into the University at Cambridge, and St. Mary's College in Baltimore.

Boston, May, 1819.

PREFACE.

THAT "a great book is a great evil" is generally a great truth, for the discovery of which we moderns must hold ourselves indebted to the sages of antiquity. In the following sheets, I have endeavoured to improve upon the ancient maxim, and bring the two ends of the book as near together as I possibly could. On this frugal plan, the preface might have been spared, but custom must be complied with : some part of our time must be spent on superfluities ; and what is rendered venerable by age must not too hastily be rejected. To enter abruptly upon the main subject is generally considered as a breach of politeness. What is useful must sometimes give place to what is convenient, and what rigorous justice cannot defend, may yet enjoy the security of prescription. In compliance, therefore, with universal custom, with the general practice of the ancients, and, what is still more forcible, the urgent solicitation of the booksellers, I proceed to lay before the Reader the general Plan of the Work.

The idea of the **PRACTICAL GRAMMAR** was first suggested to the Author in the course of his private teaching. He found daily the inconvenience of referring from book to book, and determined to supply the defect in the best manner he could. Whatever was necessary to furnish a tolerable acquaintance with the elements of the language, and point out the nature of its construction, he proposed to admit ; and reject every thing that was not essentially connected with his principal design. His first object was to comprise, in as little room as possible, every thing that was really useful in the grammar, the exercise-book, and the book of dialogues. To this plan he has strictly adhered in the composition, and has brought the whole together in a much smaller compass than, at first, could reasonably have been expected.

The several parts of speech are arranged in the usual order, and each part is discussed under a separate section.

Each rule is followed by a familiar exercise, which the master may use in the place of a dialogue.

The advantages resulting from the scholars learning and then repeating their own translations by heart must, in the opinion of impartial and disinterested minds, materially tend to their improvement ;

by these means, the pupils, uniting practice to theory, not only become imperceptibly acquainted with the French phraseology, which in many instances differs so much from the English construction, but immediately know what is the English word that corresponds with the French, and *vice versâ*, which cannot absolutely be done, in a dialogue where the French is ready made for them. Therefore, in order the more fully to answer the Author's intention, he has, instead of fine sentences, extracted from the most elegant writers, and often above the comprehension of young people, preferred, and made use, throughout all the exercises, of plain and easy sentences, which, at the same time they are within the reach of the young learners' faculties, will soon enable them to speak the French language with propriety and elegance. What more can be expected from an elementary book?

At the close of every section, a recapitulatory exercise is given upon all the preceding rules.

When there is any difference in the order of arrangement, the French construction is pointed out by the small figures placed against the top of the words in the English sentence.

Some of the most remarkable French idioms are noticed, and exemplified by various instances. Many others might have been aduced, perhaps, to very little profit. The idiomatical expressions are daily giving way to a regular syntactical form, and growing into disuse with the best masters.

A few general rules for pronunciation only have been given. From all the attempts that have hitherto been made, it does not appear that any adequate idea of it can be conveyed in writing. The ear cannot be properly formed without the assistance of a good speaker.

Throughout the whole composition, the Author's chief aim has been to unite ease and simplicity with accuracy and precision. That he has not sometimes said too little where more was required, and sometimes too much where less would have been sufficient, he does not take upon himself to assert. That he has sometimes failed through negligence, and many times through ignorance, he has also great reason to fear. His daily avocations left him but little time for study, and his want of a better acquaintance with the English language, may have subjected him to many inaccuracies in his style, and sometimes, perhaps, to palpable improprieties.

The author cheerfully embraces this opportunity of making his most grateful acknowledgements to the Public, for the favourable reception given to the former editions of this Grammar, and, in general,

to all his other works : while he is perfectly sensible of the obligation, he is also sensible that much indulgence was required to justify the favours he has already received, either as a TEACHER or as an AUTHOR. That generous indulgence he again solicits for their acceptance in this new edition, and begs to assure them, that, in every situation of life, it will be his constant care, as well as his highest ambition, to deserve the flattering encouragement he has met with in this country, and never forget the obligations already conferred.

In this edition, the errors in the former publications are carefully corrected, the several expressions which did not so well please in the course of practice, have been altered, and every improvement added, that could tend to facilitate the attainment of the French language. It having been suggested, by some gentlemen, to whose judgment the Author pays the greatest deference, that the irregular verbs, being arranged in alphabetical order, in the body of the book, would be a considerable improvement to the work, and facilitate the progress of the scholar, this is done in the present edition. The primitives of the irregular verbs are conjugated at length, and at the end of each are given their several compounds, with large exercises, both upon the primitives and compounds.

Alfred-House Academy, Camberwell.

CONTENTS.

SECT. I.

OF GRAMMAR,	13
Of the French Alphabet	<i>ib.</i>
Of Vowels—Diphthongs—Accents—Kinds of E	14
Of Diæresis—Cedilla—Apostrophe	15
Alphabetical list of French words having their initial <i>h</i> mute	<i>ib.</i>
Variations in the pronunciation of Consonants	17
Kinds of words	18
General Explanation of their use	19

SECT. II.

Of Nouns	20
Of Articles	21
Declension of the Article Definite	22
Of Genders and Numbers	23
General Rules for the formation of the Plural Number	24
Of Exceptions	<i>ib.</i>
Of the Declension of Nouns	27
Declension of the Article Definite <i>Le</i> , (the) before Nouns masculine beginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated	28
Declension of the Article Definite <i>La</i> , (the) before nouns feminine beginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated	<i>ib.</i>
Declension of the Article Definite <i>L'</i> (the) for both Genders, before nouns beginning with a Vowel, or an <i>h</i> not aspirated	29
Recapitulation of the Article Definite	<i>ib.</i>
Rules for the proper use of the Definite Article with Exercises	30
Declension of the Article Partitive	38
Rules and Exercises upon this Partitive	39
Declension of the Article Indefinite	41
Rules and Exercises on this Indefinite	<i>ib.</i>
Declension of <i>Un</i> , <i>m. Une</i> , <i>f. a</i> or <i>an</i>	48
Rules and Exercises on this Article	<i>ib.</i>
Of Nouns Adjective	50
Of the Gender and Number of Adjectives	<i>ib.</i>
Declension of Nouns Adjective	53
Rules and Exercises upon Adjectives	<i>ib.</i>
The Place of an Adjective in a Sentence	56
Of Adjectives which precede their Substantives	<i>ib.</i>
Of Adjectives which come after their Substantives	57
Rules and Exercises upon these Adjectives	58

Of the Degrees of Comparison	60
Rules with Exercises upon the Degrees of Comparison	61
Of Numbers	67
Rules and Exercises upon these Cardinal Numbers	68
Of the Ordinal Numbers	71
Rules and Exercises upon the Ordinal Numbers	72
Recapitulatory or Promiscuous Exercises upon all the Preceding Rules	74

SECT. III.

Of Pronouns	81
Of Pronouns Personal	82
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns	83
Observations on the Pronouns <i>Je</i> and <i>Moi</i> , <i>Tu</i> and <i>Toi</i> , <i>Il</i> and <i>Lui</i> , <i>Us</i> and <i>Eux</i>	85
Exercises upon the Preceding Observations	86
Of Conjunctive Pronouns and their Declensions	87
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns	89
Of Particles Relative or Supplying Pronouns <i>en</i> , <i>y</i> , and <i>le</i> . . .	92
Rules and Exercises upon these Supplying Pronouns	<i>ib.</i>
Of Pronouns Possessive, and their Declensions	99
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns	100
Of Pronouns Demonstrative	104
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns	106
Of Pronouns Relative	110
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns	111
Of Pronouns Interrogative.	116
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns	<i>ib.</i>
Of Pronouns Indefinite	118
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns	120
Recapitulatory or Promiscuous Exercises upon all the Pronouns	135

SECT. IV.

Of Verbs and their different Sorts	142
Conjugation of Verbs and Moods	144
Tenses	147
Tenses of the Indicative Mood	148
Simple tenses of the Indicative Mood	<i>ib.</i>
Compound Tenses of the Indicative Mood	153
Tenses of the Subjunctive or Conjunctive Mood, and their Compounds	157
Numbers and Persons	159
Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb <i>Avoir</i> , to have	161
Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb <i>Etre</i> , to be	163
Rules and Exercises on the two preceding Auxiliary Verbs . . .	166
Promiscuous Exercises upon the Compound Tenses of these Auxiliary Verbs	169

Rules and Examples for using these Verbs Interrogatively, &c.	170
Promiscuous Exercises on Rules of Interrogation, &c.	172
Remark on the Verb <i>Etre</i> , to be	174
First Conjugation in <i>er</i> , as in <i>Parl-er</i>	175
Important Observation upon the repetition of Verbs, &c. see N. B.	179
Exercises on this Conjugation	181
Exercises on the Compound Tenses	183
Second Conjugation, in <i>ir</i> , as in <i>Pun-ir</i>	184
Exercises on this Conjugation	187
Third Conjugation, in <i>er</i> , as in <i>rec-er</i>	190
Exercises on this Conjugation	193
Fourth Conjugation, in <i>re</i> , as in <i>Vend-re</i>	197
Exercises on this Conjugation	200
Recapitulatory Exercises on the regular Verbs of the four Conjugations	203
Promiscuous Exercises on the Compound Tenses, of the preceding conjugations	206
Conjugations of the Passive Verbs	208
Of Neuter Verbs generally	<i>ib.</i>
Of Reflective Verbs	214
Model of Conjugations for the Reflected verbs of the four Conjugations	219
Exercises on the Reflective Verbs	222
Conjugation of the Irregular Verbs of the first Conjugation	227
Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation	230
Exercises on the Irregular Verbs of the first and second Conjugations	235
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the second Conjugation	238
Exercises on the preceding Irregular Verbs	243
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the second Conjugation	245
Exercises on the preceding Irregular Verbs and their Compounds	251
Irregular Verbs of the third Conjugation	254
Observation upon <i>May</i> , and <i>Might</i> , when used as a Verb or Auxiliary	259
Observation upon the words <i>Will</i> , and <i>Would</i> when used as a Verb or an Auxiliary	265
Exercises upon Irregular Verbs of the third Conjugation	266
Irregular Verbs of the fourth Conjugation	271
Exercises upon the preceding Irregular Verbs, and their Compounds	281
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the fourth Conjugation	284
Exercises on the preceding Irregular Verbs and their Compounds	296
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the fourth Conjugation	302
Exercises on the preceding Verbs, and their Compounds	313
Of the Impersonal Verbs	319
Conjugation of the Impersonal Verbs	<i>ib.</i>
Exercises on the Impersonal Verbs	321
Upon the Impersonal Verb <i>y avoir</i> , there to be	322
Exercises on the preceding Verb	323
Remarks on the Pronoun General <i>On</i>	324
Exercises on the preceding Pronoun, &c.	<i>ib.</i>

Remarks on the Impersonal Verb <i>Falloir</i> , to be needful, requisite, necessary	332
Exercises on the preceding Impersonal Verb	334
Additional Remarks on the general Pronoun <i>On</i>	337
Exercises on the preceding Pronoun	338
Recapitulatory Exercises on the Impersonal Verbs	339

SECT. V.

Of Participles	342
Rules and Exercises on the Participles	342, 343

SECT. VI.

Of Indeclinable Parts of Speech	353
Of Adverbs	<i>ib.</i>
Table of Adverbs	354, 357, 359, 361, 363, 365, 368, 369
Observation on the Adverb <i>Où</i>	370
Table of Adverbs continued	373, 376, 378, 379, 382

SECT. VII.

Of Prepositions	383
Prepositions governing the Genitive or Ablative Cases	383, 384
Exercises on these Prepositions	385
Prepositions governing the Dative Case	387
Exercises on these Prepositions	<i>ib.</i>
Prepositions requiring the Accusative Case	388
Exercises upon these Prepositions	389
Observations on some Prepositions, and Exercises upon them, <i>Above</i> , 392 ; <i>At</i> , 393, 394 ; <i>By</i> , 395, 396, 397 ; <i>For</i> , 398 ; <i>From</i> , 399 ; <i>In</i> , 400, 401 ; <i>On</i> or <i>Upon</i> , 402 ; <i>Over</i> , 403 ; <i>With</i> , 404, 405, 407, 408 ; <i>Without</i> , 409	409

SECT. VIII.

Of Conjunctions	411
Conjunctions requiring the Infinitive Mood, and Exercises upon them	<i>ib.</i>
Conjunctions requiring the Verb in the Indicative Mood, and Exercises upon them in continuation,	412
Conjunctions requiring the Future Tense	417
Remark on the Conjunction <i>Que</i> , preceding an Infinitive or Subjunctive Mood	418

Conjunctions requiring the Verb in the Subjunctive Mood, and Exercises upon them	420, 421
Remarks on the Conjunctions <i>Si</i> and <i>Que</i> ,	424
Exercises on the preceding Conjunctions	425
Verbs requiring the Conjunction <i>Que</i> , with the following Verb in the Subjunctive Mood	427
Exercises on this and the preceding Rules	428
Observation on the Verb <i>Vouloir</i> , to will, to wish,	431
Conjunctions <i>Qui</i> , <i>Que</i> or <i>Dont</i> , requiring the following Verb in the Subjunctive Mood, and Exercises upon them	433

SECT. IX.

Of Interjections	435
Table of Interjections	<i>ib.</i>
Exercises on the preceding Interjections	436
Remarks on the Particles <i>De</i> , <i>à</i> , <i>Pour</i> , when not expressed, and Exercises upon them	437
Remarks on the Particle <i>De</i> , when it is to be expressed, and Exercises upon it	439
Remarks on the Particle <i>à</i> , when it is to be expressed, and Exercises upon it	441, 442
Important remarks on the Particles <i>De</i> , <i>à</i> , and <i>Pour</i> , with Exercises	444

SECT. X.

Idiomatical Expressions	445
Of the Verb <i>Avoir</i> , to have, and Exercises upon it	445, 446
Of <i>Etre</i> , to be, and Exercises upon it	448
Of <i>Faire</i> , to make, or to do, and Exercises upon it	449, 450
Of different Verbs, and Exercises upon them	451, 452, 453, 454

SECT. XI.

General and Promiscuous Exercises	455
Of the Understanding of Languages	<i>ib.</i>
Of Study	456
Indolence Characterised	458
Anecdote of the Cardinal Viviers	459
Fraternal Affection	460
Study of Nature	461
History	471
The City of Babylon	477
Merit	479

AN EXPLANATION OF THE ABBREVIATIONS MADE USE OF IN
THE FOLLOWING WORK.

m.	Noun masculine.
f.	Noun feminine.
pl.	Plural.
adj.	Noun adjective.
pro.	Pronoun.
v.	Verb.
p. act.	Participle active.
p. p.	Participle passive.
p.	Preposition.
adv.	Adverb.
c.	Conjunction.
int.	Interjection.
∞	The English word that has this mark underneath, is not to be expressed in French.

The figures, ¹, ², ³, &c. direct to the arrangement of the words in the French sentence.

Two words having the same figure are expressed by the French word placed under one of them.

Two or three words between parentheses (), are expressed by the French under them.

A PRACTICAL FRENCH GRAMMAR.

SECT. I.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing in any language with propriety ; or, it is the art of rightly expressing our thoughts by words.

Grammar is of two kinds, general and particular. Universal grammar considers language in itself, explains the principles which are alike common to every tongue, and distinguishes, with precision, between those particulars which are essential and those which are only accidental. Particular grammar applies these common principles to a particular language, and furnishes certain rules and observations which are, either mediately or immediately, deducible from its common principles.

A grammar of the French tongue must be formed agreeably to the established usage, and those particular modes of expression, to which custom has given its sanction. It has therefore for its object, in common with all other grammars, the consideration of letters, syllables, words, sentences, &c.

ALPHABET ;--is composed of twenty-five letters, of which words are formed ; five of them, *a, e, i, o, u*, are distinguished by the name of vowels, which form a perfect sound of themselves. The twenty other letters *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, y, z*, are called consonants, and cannot be pronounced but when joined with vowels, except *y*, which has often the sound of double *i*, and of which some make a sixth vowel.

VOWELS, three sorts ;—**SIMPLE**, *a, e, i, o, u*, which are subdivided into short and long, whose sound is more prolonged and deeper.

COMPOUND, of two or three simple vowels, as *ai, ei, oi, ui, au, eu, ou, æ, œu* : *ai* has the sound of *e* mute in *faisant*, and the sound of *é* close in *je lirai*, as well as in all the verbs in the first person singular of the future.

NASAL, when they are joined to *m* or *n*, and when they form only one sound, as *an, am, en, em, in, im, ain, ein*.

DIPTHONG ;—Is the union of several vowels, the pronunciation of which causes two sounds to be heard by a single impulse of the voice. *Dieu, yeux, niais, pion, ouie, mien*, are dipthongs ; yet *Caen, eau, paon, eraie* are not so, because they are pronounced *Can, ô, pan, cré*.

ACCENTS, three sorts ;—The acute *'*, the grave *`*, and the circumflex *^* serve to modify the sound of the vowels ; the office of the latter is to render long the vowels which are affected by it ; thus pronounce *â, ê, î, ô, û*, by a greater opening of the mouth, almost as if it were *aa, ee, ii, oo, uu*. It is thus we write *âge*, instead of *aage* ; this is also the reason why it is placed over the vowels that were formerly followed by an *s*, which has been dropped, since it is no longer pronounced ; as in *asne, beste*, in which the suppression of the *s*, requires that we should write *âne, bête*, in order to shew that *â* and *ê* are long.

KINDS of E, five ;—**TWO KINDS**, *Mute* : 1st.—One whose dull sound is almost null in *brave, encore*, which are pronounced no otherwise than *brav, encor*.

2d.—The other, whose sound, although obscure, can be prolonged, nearly as the sound of *eu*, in *je, me, te, revenir, redemander*.

3d.—**CLOSE**, by the accent *Acute*, in *bonté* ; yet *ez* is equivalent to *é*, as in *voyez, lisez, touchez*.

4th.—OPEN, by the accent Grave, in *accès, succès, nêfle*, which is suppressed in *greffe, sans cesse, abbesse*.

5th—VERY OPEN, by the accent Circumflex, in *être, tête, tempête*, which were formerly pronounced and written *estre, teste, &c.*

MIDDLE, followed by a double consonant, and whose sound is between that of *é* close and *è* open, in *maisonnette, musette, poulette*.

The DIÆRESIS, (¨)—Which is placed over the vowels *ë, ï, ü*, and causes them to be pronounced separately from the preceding vowel as in *poëte, aïeul, Saül*, and may be ranked among the accents.

The CEDILLA, (¸)—A little dash, which is put under the *c*, is also a sort of accent, since it serves to modify the hard pronunciation which it would otherwise have before the vowels *a, o, u*, and to change it into that of *S*; it is thus we pronounce it in *françois, façon, reçu*.

The APOSTROPHE, (') ;—Is only a comma put over the place which the vowel *e* or *a* ought to occupy, which is suppressed when the word following begins with a vowel or an *h* not aspirate ;* thus, instead of *le esprit*,

* AN ALPHABETICAL LIST

of such French Words as have their initial *h* mute.

HABILE,	CLEVER	harmonie,	harmony
habilement,	cleverly	hebdomadaire,	weekly
habileté,	cleverness	Hébraïque,	Hebraick
habiller,	to clothe	Hébreu,	Hebrew
habillement,	dress	hécatombe,	an hecatomb
habit,	a coat	hégire,	hegira
habiter,	to inhabit	hélas !	alas !
habitable,	inhabitable	Hélicon,	Helicon
habitant,	inhabitant	héliotrope,	turn-sol
habitude,	custom	hémisphère,	hemisphere
habituel,	habitual	hémistiche,	hemistich
habituier,	to use	hémorrhagie,	bloody-flux
haleine,	breath	hémorrhoides,	piles
hameçon,	a fishing hook	hépatique,	hepatic

la ambition, and le homme, we must pronounce and write *l'esprit, l'ambition, l'homme*. But when the *h* is

herbage,	herbage, pasture	hôpital,	hospital
herbe,	herb or grass	horizon,	horizon
herboriste,	herbalist	horloge,	a clock
héréditaire,	hereditary	horloger,	watch-maker
hérésie,	heresy	hormis,	except
hérétique,	heretic	horoscope,	horoscope
héritage,	inheritance	horreur,	horror
hériter,	to inherit	horrible,	horrid
héritier,	an heir	horriblement,	horribly
heritière,	an heiress	hospitalier,	hospitable
hermine,	ermine	hospitalité,	hospitality
hermite,	an hermit	hostie,	host or victim
hermitage,	hermitage	hostilité,	hostility
héroïne,*	an heroine	hôte,	landlord
héroïque,	heroical	hôtesse,	landlady
héroïsme,	heroism	hôtel,	a great house
hésiter,	to hesitate	hôtelier,	inn-keeper
hésitation,	hesitation	hôtellerie,	an inn
heur,	luck	huile,	oil
heure,	hour	huilier,	oil-cruet
heureux,	happy	huissier,	usher or tip staff
heureusement,	happily	huître,	oyster
béxagone,	an hexagon	humain,	humane
hexamètre,	hexameter	humainement,	humanely
hiatus,	hiatus, a gap	humaniser,	to civilize
hier,	yesterday	humanité,	humanity
hiéroglyphe,	hieroglyphic	humble,	humble
hirondelle,	a swallow	humblement,	humbly
histoire,	history	humectation,	moistening
historien,	historian	humecter,	to moisten
historique,	historical	humeur,	humour
bistrion,	a buffoon	humide,	damp, moist
hiver,	winter	humidité,	humidity
hiverner,	to winter	humiliant,	mortifying
holocauste,	burnt sacrifice	humiliation,	humiliation
homme, (jeu)	ombre	humilier,	to humble
homélie,	an homily	humilité,	humility
homicide,	an homicide	hyacinthe,	hyacinth
hommage,	homage	hydre,	hydra
homme,	man	hydromel,	mead
honnête,	honest	hydropique,	hydropic
honnêtement,	honestly	hydropisie,	dropsy
honnêteté	honesty	hymen,	hymen
honneur,	honour	hymne,	hymn
honorable,	honorable	hyperbole,	hyperbole
honoraire,	honorary	hypocondre,	hypocondriac
honorer,	to honour	hypocrisie,	hypocrisy

* But the *h* is aspirated in *héros*.

aspirate, the article remains entire ; we must not say *Phéros*, but pronounce *le héros, du héros, au héros*.

VARIATION IN THE PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANTS ;—C is pronounced hard like *k* before the vowels *a, o, u*, in *cocarde, cube* ; like *s* before *e, i*, in *cécité*. There are even some words in which it is pronounced like *g*, as in *second, &c.* G is pronounced hard before *a, o, u* ; like *j*, before *e, i* ; when we wish to modify its pronunciation before *a, o, u*, an *e* is placed after it, as in, *il gagea, nageoire* ; when on the contrary we wish to have it pronounced hard before *e, i*, an *u* is placed after it, as in *guérir, guide*. H is of two sorts, aspirate as in *haïr, envahir* ; then the consonants by which it is preceded are not sounded ; it is called mute, when it is not pronounced at all, as in *homme, héroïne*. The *h* of *héros* is aspirate, that of its derivatives is not so. Q when not the last letter of a word, as in *cing*, is never used without being followed by *u*, which gives it the pronunciation of *k*, as in *qui, quelconque* ; yet in several words *u* has retained its ancient sound of *ou*, and then *qu* is pronounced like *kou*, as in *aquatique, equation*. S is pronounced hard in *salut, sénat* ; but between two vowels, it takes the pronunciation of *z*, as in *viser, raison, &c.* T followed by *i* and another vowel, is pronounced like *c*, as in *partial, partiel, portion* ; but if *ti* is preceded by *s* or *x*, or if it is at the beginning of a word, it is pronounced as in *tirer, question, mixtion*. X is pronounced like *cs* in *fixer, taxer* ; like *gz* in *examen, ex-*

hypocrite,	<i>hypocrite</i>	hypothèse,	<i>hypothesis</i>
hypothèque,	<i>mortgage</i>	hysope,	<i>hysop</i>
hypothéquer,	<i>to mortgage</i>	hystérique,	<i>hysterie</i>

In a familiar discourse, the letter *h* is not aspirated in the following words, viz. *Hanovre, Hollande, and Hongrie*, when either of them is preceded by the particle *de* ; for though we always say *le Hanovre, la Hollande* and *la Hongrie*, yet it is usual to say and write *l'Electorat d'Hanovre, la Reine d'Hongrie, la toile d'Hollande*, and the like. As to other national and proper names, the initial *h* is aspirated in most of them ; as in *Hainaut, Hambourgh, Haranne, Henri, &c.* but in *Hamilton, Harcourt, Hector, Hélène, Hercule, Hérode, Hamère, Horace, and Hyppolite*, it is mute.

*em*ple ; and like *s* in *six*, *dix*, *soixante*. *Ch* is generally pronounced like *sh*, as in *chat* ; yet it is pronounced often like *k* : *Christ*, *orchestre*, *bacchante*, are examples. *Rh*, *th*, *ph*, are pronounced like *r*, *t*, *f*, in *rhume*, *thème*, *philosophe*, which are pronounced *rume*, *tème*, *filosofo*.

A SYLLABLE, whether composed of one or more letters, requires, in the pronunciation, no more than a single impulse of the voice : ex. *ba*, *me*, *moi*, &c.

A WORD may consist of one syllable, or of many compacted into one meaning ; for, a word is the smallest part of speech which is in itself significant : ex. *mon*, *my* ; *livre*, *book*, &c.

A SENTENCE, OR PHRASE, is an assemblage of words arranged in their proper order, forming a sense either more or less complete : ex.

<i>Je suis votre ami,</i>	I am your friend.
<i>J'écrivis hier à votre tante,</i>	I yesterday wrote to your aunt.

A PERIOD may consist of two or three sentences joined together, so that they depend on one another to form a complete sense. Each of the sentences forming part of a period is called a member of the period ; ex.

<i>Les grands hommes sont rares ;</i>	Great men are scarce ; we
<i>on doit les respecter, et l'on</i>	ought to respect them,
<i>devroit toujours travailler à</i>	and constantly endeavour
<i>se rendre semblable à eux.</i>	to resemble them.

A DISCOURSE, OR SPEECH, is an assemblage of sentences (or phrases) and periods, joined together, and arranged according to the rules of the language.

KINDS OF WORDS.

There are, in the French tongue, nine different sorts of words, which are generally called the nine parts of speech, viz.

1. L'ARTICLE,	ARTICLE.
2. LE NOM,	NOUN.
3. LE PRONOM,	PRONOUN.
4. LE VERBE,	VERB.

5. LE PARTICIPE,	PARTICIPE.
6. L'ADVERBE,	ADVERB.
7. LA PREPOSITION,	PREPOSITION.
8. LA CONJONCTION,	CONJUNCTION.
9. L'INTERJECTION,	INTERJECTION.

Five of them are declinable ; that is to say, the radical part of the word remaining the same, the other parts, but especially the termination, will admit of several variations. These declinable words are, the article, noun, pronoun, verb, and participle.

The four last, as they never vary their terminations, are therefore called indeclinable.

GENERAL EXPLANATION.

The ARTICLES are certain minute words, which, joined to nouns, determine the extent of their signification, and which, in French, denote their gender, number, and case, corresponding to the English words, *the, of the, from the, and to the*. These in French, are

<i>Le, la, les,</i>	<i>The.</i>
<i>De, du, de la, des,</i>	<i>Of or from the.</i>
<i>A, au, à la, aux.</i>	<i>To the.</i>

The NOUN, in general, is a word which is used to name or qualify every thing which is the object of discourse : ex.

<i>Papier,</i>	<i>Paper.</i>		<i>Bon,</i>	<i>Good.</i>
<i>Plume,</i>	<i>Pen.</i>		<i>Petit,</i>	<i>Little.</i>
<i>Pain,</i>	<i>Bread.</i>		<i>Mauvais,</i>	<i>Bad, &c.</i>

The PRONOUN is a word commonly substituted in the place of the noun, to avoid its too frequent repetition : ex.

J'ai vu M. votre père, et lui ai parlé, *I saw your father, and spoke to him.*

In this instance the word *lui*, to him, is put to avoid the repetition of the word *père*, father.

The VERB is a word which either expresses the state of the subject, or an action done by the subject, or the action received or suffered by the subject : ex.

<i>Mon frère est malade,</i>	<i>My brother is ill.</i>
<i>Ma sœur écrit une lettre,</i>	<i>My sister writes a letter.</i>
<i>Votre cousine est punie,</i>	<i>Your cousin is punished.</i>

The verb is varied by moods, tenses, persons, and numbers.

The PARTICIPLE partakes both of the nature of the verb and the adjective noun : ex.

<i>Ayant,</i>	Having.		<i>Aimé,</i>	Loved.
<i>Donnant,</i>	Giving.		<i>Puni,</i>	Punished, &c.

The ADVERB is sometimes joined to the noun, but more frequently to the verb, whence it derives its name. The use of the adverb is, to determine the signification of the noun or verb, or express some particular modification or circumstance of the action or quality : ex.

<i>Je vous aime sincèrement,</i>	<i>I love you sincerely.</i>
<i>Venez demain,</i>	<i>Come to-morrow.</i>

In these instances the words *sincerely* and *to-morrow* are adverbs.

The PREPOSITION is a word which is put before the noun or pronoun, and it always governs the word before which it is placed : ex.

<i>Chez mon ami,</i>	<i>At my friend's house.</i>
<i>Devant moi,</i>	<i>Before me, &c.</i>

The CONJUNCTION serves to connect the several parts of a discourse : ex. *et*, and ; *car*, for ; *mais*, but, &c.

The INTERJECTION is a word which expresses the different affections or passions of the soul : ex.

<i>Hélas ! mon Dieu !</i>	<i>Oh ! my God ! &c.</i>
---------------------------	------------------------------

A more particular delineation of these nine parts of speech, and their use in the composition of a sentence, or period, will be the subject of the following sections.

SECT. II.

OF NOUNS.

NOUNS are divided into substantives and adjectives. A NOUN SUBSTANTIVE expresses a thing subsisting by itself,

and can make a complete sense independent of any other word: ex. *Dieu*, God; *roi*, king; *maison*, house, &c.

A NOUN SUBSTANTIVE is either common, collective, or proper.

A COMMON NOUN is applicable to all beings or things of the same kind: ex. *homme*, man; *roi*, king; *ville*, town; *table*, table, &c.

A COLLECTIVE NOUN is expressive of many particulars; yet, as these particulars are all united in the mind, and comprehended under one general idea, they may therefore be conceived as one individual, and, without any impropriety, expressed in the singular number: ex. *peuple*, people; *forêt*, forest; *armée*, army, &c.

A PROPER NOUN is applicable to one person or thing only: ex. *Pierre*, Peter; *Londres*, London, &c.

N. B. A noun is always a substantive when we cannot, with propriety, add to it the word *personne*, person, or the word *chose*, thing.

A NOUN ADJECTIVE is used to express the quality, colour, form or quantity, of the substance to which it belongs; and is so called because its meaning cannot be ascertained without being joined to its proper substantive, with which it must also agree in gender, number, and case: ex. *bon*, good; *aimable*, lovely; *rouge*, red; *jaune*, yellow; *rond*, round; *quarré*, square; *un*, one; *deux*, two; *trois*, three, &c.

N. B. The noun is always adjective when we can add to it the word *personne* or *chose*, person or thing.

In NOUNS, four things must be considered, viz.

<i>Les Articles,</i>	The Articles.
<i>Les Genres,</i>	The Genders.
<i>Les Nombres,</i>	The Numbers.
<i>Les Cas,</i>	The Cases.

ARTICLES.

There are three sorts of Articles, viz.

<i>L'Article défini,</i>	The Article definite.
<i>L'Article partitif,</i>	The Article partitive.
<i>L'Article indéfini,</i>	The Article indefinite.

The Article must always agree with the noun in gender and number.

The DEFINITE ARTICLE is so called, because it means the whole of the object to which it is applied.

SINGULAR.

Le, for the masculine, before nouns beginning with a consonant or H aspirated : ex. *le roi*, the king ; *le héros*, the hero, &c.

La, for the feminine : ex. *la reine*, the queen, &c.

L', with an elision, for both genders, before nouns singular beginning with a vowel or H not aspirated : ex. *l'enfant*, the child ; *l'homme*, the man, &c.

PLURAL.

Les, for both genders, whether the noun begin with a consonant or a vowel : ex. *les rois*, the kings ; *les reines*, the queens ; *les enfans*, the children, &c.

The PARTITIVE ARTICLE means only a part of the object, the English word SOME being always expressed or implied.

SINGULAR.

<p><i>Du</i>, for the masc. <i>De la</i>, for the fem.</p>	{	<p>These two articles are used before nouns beginning with a consonant or H aspirated : ex. <i>du pain</i>, some bread ; <i>de la viande</i>, some meat.</p>
--	---	--

De l', for both genders, beginning with a vowel or an H not aspirated : ex. *de l'encre*, some ink.

PLURAL.

Des, for both genders : ex. *des amis*, some friends.

The INDEFINITE ARTICLE is *de* or *d'*, of, from, and *à*, to.

This article is used, without distinction, before nouns masculine and feminine in both numbers. Proper names, and the greater part of the pronouns, are declined with it.

Some grammarians admit of a fourth article, viz. *un* for the masculine, and *une* for the feminine, in English *a* or *an* ; but it may be observed, that it is always declined

with the indefinite article, and therefore takes the nature of a noun adjective.

GENDERS AND NUMBERS.

There are two GENDERS, viz. the masculine and feminine. A noun is masculine when there is before it *le* or *un*, as *le* or *un livre*, the or a book. A noun is feminine when it is preceded by *la* or *une*, as *la* or *une plume*, the or a pen.

There are two NUMBERS, the singular and plural. The singular number speaks of one thing only, as *une table*, a table : the plural speaks of more than one, as, *des tables*, tables. There are some nouns that are never used but in the singular number : as,

1. The names of metals : ex. *or*, gold ; *argent*, silver ; *cuivre*, brass ; *plomb*, lead, &c.
2. The names of virtues and vices : ex. *avarice*, avarice ; *charité*, charity ; *foi*, faith ; *haine*, hatred ; *orgueil*, pride ; *prodigalité*, prodigality, &c.
3. The names by which the five senses are denoted : ex. *la vue*, the sight ; *le goût*, the taste ; *l'odorat*, the smell ; *le toucher*, feeling ; *l'ouïe*, hearing.
4. Proper names, except when they are used metaphorically.
5. To the foregoing may be added the following, which are not reducible to any general rules :

<i>Artillerie</i> ,	artillery.	<i>Faim</i> ,	hunger.
<i>Attirail</i> ,	implements.	<i>Fumée</i> ,	smoke.
<i>Bonheur</i> ,	happiness.	<i>Fuite</i> ,	flight.
<i>Celère</i> ,	anger.	<i>Gloire</i> ,	glory.
<i>Courroux</i> ,	wrath.	<i>Honte</i> ,	shame.
<i>Enfance</i> ,	infancy.	<i>Jeunesse</i> ,	youth.
<i>Lait</i> ,	milk.	<i>Salut</i> ,	safety.
<i>Miel</i> ,	honey.	<i>Soif</i> ,	thirst.
<i>Noblesse</i> ,	nobility.	<i>Sommeil</i> ,	sleep.
<i>Pauvreté</i> ,	poverty.	<i>Vieillesse</i> ,	old age.
<i>Sang</i> ,	blood.		

There are others which are never used but in the plural number only ; such as,

Ancêtres, ancestors.
Ayeux, forefathers.
Funérailles, a funeral.
Frais, expense.
Délices, delight.
Dépens, cost.
Entrailles, entrails.
Epousailles, espousals.
Fonts, font.

Atours, apparel.
Ciseaux, scissors.
Hardes, clothes.
Limites, limits.
Mœurs, manners.
Mouchettes, snuffers.
Ténèbres, darkness.
Vivres, victuals.

And, in general, those which, in English, admit of no singular.

In general the plural number is formed by adding *s* to the singular: ex.

Le père, the father; *les pères*, the fathers.
La mère, the mother; *les mères*, the mothers, &c.

All nouns, having their singular ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, admit of no variation in the plural: ex.

Le fils, the son; *les fils*, the sons.
Une noix, a walnut; *des noix*, walnuts.
Le nez, the nose; *les nez*, the noses.

EXCEPTIONS.

Nouns ending in *au*, *eau*, *eu*, *œu*, *ieu*, or *ou*, form their plural by *x*, instead of *s*: ex.

Un chapeau, a hat; *des chapeaux*, hats.
Un manteau, a cloak; *des manteaux*, cloaks.
Un lieu, a place; *des lieux*, places.
Un chou, a cabbage; *des choux*, cabbages.

The following differ from this rule, and their plural terminates in *s*:

Matou, a great cat; *matous*, great cats.
Trou, a hole; *trous*, holes.

Nouns ending in *al* and *ail* have their plural in *aux*: ex.

Animal, a living creature; *animaux*, living creatures.
Cheval, a horse; *chevaux*, horses.
Travail, work; *travaux*, works.

These only are excepted :

<i>Bal</i> , a ball,	<i>Gouvernail</i> , the helm,
<i>Détail</i> , account, retail,	<i>Sérail</i> , a seraglio,
<i>Eventail</i> , a fan,	<i>Portail</i> , gateway,

Which form their plural in *s*.

Nouns of more than one syllable (polysyllables) ending in *nt*, most generally form their plural by changing the *t* into *s* : as,

<i>Enfant</i> , a child ;	<i>enfants</i> , children.
<i>Commandement</i> , command ;	<i>commandemens</i> , commands.

But nouns of one syllable only (monosyllables) preserve the *t*, and form their plural by adding *s* : as,

<i>Dent</i> , tooth ;	<i>dents</i> , teeth.
<i>Pont</i> , bridge ;	<i>ponts</i> , bridges.

Tout, adj. all, makes *tous*, in its plural masculine, *toute* in the feminine gender sing. and *toutes* in the plural.

The following are not conformable to any established rule.

<i>Ayeul</i> , a grandfather ;	<i>ayeux</i> , grandfathers.
<i>Bétail</i> , cattle ;	<i>bestiaux</i> , cattle.
<i>Ciel</i> , heaven ;	<i>cieux</i> , heavens.
<i>Œil</i> , the eye ;	<i>yeux</i> , eyes.

Except { *des ciels de lit*,* testers of a bed,
 des œils de bœuf, ovals.

There are in French several compound words like the last two, which require some attention from the learner, in the formation of their plural, the difficulty of which may soon be removed by means of reflection ; for example :

A noun being composed of a substantive and an adjective, united by a hyphen, both admit of the plural formation : as,

<i>Un gentil-homme</i> , a noble- man ;	<i>des gentils-hommes</i> , noble- men.
--	--

A noun compounded of two substantives and a preposition, united by hyphens, the first only in French

* This term is growing obsolete : it is better to say, *un fond de lit*.

which is generally the last in English, admits of the plural formation : as,

Un arc-en-ciel, a rainbow ; *des arcs-en-ciel*, rainbows.
Un chef-d'œuvre, a master-piece. *des chefs-d'œuvre*, master-pieces.

N. B. Some of these French compound words are sometimes rendered in English by one word, in which case the formation of the plural in the French is still the same : as,

Un cul-de-sac, an alley (with- *des culs-de-sac*, alleys.
 out egress) ;

Nouns composed of a verb or a preposition and a substantive, the substantive only admits of the plural formation : as,

<i>Un avant-toit</i> , eaves.	<i>des avant-toits</i> , eaves.
<i>Un casse-noisette</i> , a nut-cracker ;	<i>des casse-noisettes</i> , nut-crackers.
<i>Un garde-fou</i> , a rail ;	<i>des garde-foux</i> , rails, &c.
<i>Monseigneur</i> , my lord	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{make in the} \\ \text{plural} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \textit{Messeigneurs}, \text{ my lords.} \\ \textit{Messieurs}, \text{ gentlemen.} \\ \textit{Mesdames}, \text{ ladies.} \\ \textit{Mesdemoiselles}, \text{ misses.} \end{array}$
<i>Monsieur</i> , Mr. or gent.	
<i>Madame</i> , Mrs. or madam	
<i>Mademoiselle</i> , miss	

CASES.

There are six cases, viz.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------|
| 1. <i>Le Nominatif</i> , | Nominative. |
| 2. <i>Le Génitif</i> , | Genitive. |
| 3. <i>Le Datif</i> , | Dative. |
| 4. <i>L'Accusatif</i> , | Accusative. |
| 5. <i>Le Vocatif</i> , | Vocative. |
| 6. <i>L'Ablatif</i> , | Ablative. |

The NOMINATIVE and ACCUSATIVE cases have exactly the same form, and are always declined with the same article ; the only difference between them arises from their different positions in the sentence.

In the natural construction, the nominative always precedes the verb, and the accusative follows it. The

nominative is the *subject* of the sentence, and the accusative is the *object* to which it refers : ex.

Le roi aime le peuple, The king loves the people.

In order to know the nominative from the accusative, I ask, Who loves the people? THE KING (which is the answer) is the subject, and consequently the nominative. Whom or what does the King love? The answer is THE PEOPLE, which is the object, and therefore the accusative.

The GENITIVE and ABLATIVE are declined with the same article, but the first is always preceded by another word on which it depends : as,

La porte de la chambre, The chamber door, that is,
the door of the chamber.

La maison de mon père, My father's house, &c.

Or it is governed by a preposition, as,

Près du feu, Near the fire, &c.

The last is always put after nouns or verbs expressing division, partition, or separation ; and after some prepositions. The genitive is known by the articles *de, du, de la, des,* of or of the. Sometimes the article is not expressed in English, as may be seen in the sentences before mentioned. The ablative is known by the articles *de, du, de la, des,* from or from the.

The DATIVE shows to whom the thing spoken of, is given, or to what it is attributed : as,

Donnez cette pomme à mon frère, Give that apple to my brother.

This case is known by the articles *à, au, à la, aux,* to or to the.

The VOCATIVE is used only for calling or naming the person to whom the speech is addressed : as,

Ami, qui êtes-vous ? Friend, who are you ?

DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS.

All changes in nouns are formed by numbers and cases. To decline a noun, therefore, is to express its

several variations ; and, under these variations, to point out its different significations.

Some short examples are added to the nouns, that learners may more easily understand what has been said respecting the cases.

Declension of the Article Definite Le (the), before Nouns masculine beginning with a Consonant.

SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>Le Prince,</i>	The prince.
<i>Le prince est généreux,</i>	The prince is generous.
Gen. <i>Du prince,</i>	Of the prince.
<i>Les vertus du prince,</i>	The virtues of the prince ; or, the prince's virtues.
Dat. <i>Au prince,</i>	To the prince.
<i>Parler au prince,</i>	To speak to the prince.
Acc. <i>Le prince,</i>	The prince.
<i>Aimer le prince,</i>	To love the prince.
Voc. <i>O prince,</i>	O prince.
Abl. <i>Du prince,</i>	From the prince.
<i>Recevoir des lettres du prince,</i>	To receive letters from the prince.

Declension of the Article Definite La (the), before Nouns feminine beginning with a Consonant.

SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>La princesse,</i>	The princess.
<i>La princesse est aimable,</i>	The princess is amiable.
Gen. <i>De la princesse,</i>	Of the princess.
<i>Les regards de la princesse,</i>	The looks of the princess ; or, the princess's looks.
Dat. <i>A la princesse,</i>	To the princess.
<i>Donner à la princesse,</i>	To give to the princess.
Acc. <i>La princesse,</i>	The princess.
<i>Imitez la princesse,</i>	Imitate the princess.
Voc. <i>O princesse,</i>	O princess.
Abl. <i>De la princesse,</i>	From the princess.
<i>Etre séparé de la princesse,</i>	To be separated from the princess.

Declension of the Article Definite L' (the), for both Genders, before Nouns beginning with a Vowel, or an H not aspirated.

SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>L'enfant,</i>	The child.
<i>L'enfant est timide,</i>	The child is fearful.
Gen. <i>De l'enfant,</i>	Of the child.
<i>Le tempérament de l'enfant,</i>	The child's temper ; or, the temper of the child.
Dat. <i>A l'enfant,</i>	To the child.
<i>Attribuer à l'enfant,</i>	To attribute to the child.
Acc. <i>L'enfant,</i>	The child.
<i>Admirer l'enfant,</i>	To admire the child.
Voc. <i>O enfant,</i>	O child.
Abl. <i>De l'enfant,</i>	From the child.
<i>S'éloigner de l'enfant,</i>	To go away from the child.

The plural of these nouns, whether they begin with a consonant or a vowel, is declined, in both genders, by the article *les* (the).

Nom. <i>Les rois,</i>	The kings.
<i>Les rois commandent,</i>	The kings command.
Gen. <i>Des rois,</i>	Of the kings.
<i>L'ordre des rois,</i>	The order of the kings ; or, the kings' order.
Dat. <i>Aux rois,</i>	To the kings.
<i>Envoyer aux rois,</i>	To send to the kings.
Acc. <i>Les rois,</i>	The kings.
<i>Respectez les rois,</i>	Honour the kings.
Voc. <i>O rois,</i>	O kings.
Abl. <i>Des rois,</i>	From the kings.
<i>Etre loin des rois,</i>	To be far from the kings.

RECAPITULATION OF THE ARTICLE DEFINITE.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
Mas.	Fem.	Mas. & Fem.	Mas. & Fem.
<i>Le,</i>	<i>la,</i>	<i>l' ;</i>	<i>Les,</i> the.
<i>Du,</i>	<i>de la,</i>	<i>de l' ;</i>	<i>Des,</i> of or from the.
<i>Au,</i>	<i>à la,</i>	<i>à l' ;</i>	<i>Aux,</i> to the.
		3*	

The *definite article* must be placed, in French, before all nouns used in a *general sense*, or denoting a whole species of objects, though the English admit of no article in this case : ex.

<i>L'homme est mortel,</i>	Man is mortal.
<i>Le Danemarck, la Suède, et</i>	Denmark, Sweden, and
<i>l'Angleterre, sont les trois</i>	England, are the three
<i>royaumes du nord,</i>	northern kingdoms.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I	hate	idleness. - -	Virtue is	estimable. - -
<i>Je, pro.</i>	<i>hais, v.</i>	<i> paresse, f.</i>	<i>Vertu, f. est, v.</i>	<i>estimable, adj.</i>
Gold is	preferable	to silver. - - -	Do you ²	
Or, m.	<i>préférable, adj.</i>	<i>argent, m.</i>	<i>vous, pro.</i>	
prefer ¹	England	to France?	Corn grows	
<i>préférez, v.</i>	<i>Angleterre, f.</i>	<i>France, f.</i>	<i>Bled, m. croît, v.</i>	
for men,	and grass	for cattle. - - -	Love,	
<i>pour, p. homme, m. et, c.</i>	<i>herbe, f.</i>	<i>bétail, m.</i>	<i>Aimez, v.</i>	
wisdom. - - -	Do ¹ not ³	neglect ²	study. - -	
<i>sagesse, f.</i>	<i>ne pas, adv.</i>	<i>négligez, v.</i>	<i>étude, f.</i>	
Avoid	leisure. - - -	She	comes from church. - -	
<i>Evitez, v.</i>	<i>loisir, m.</i>	<i>Elle, pro. vient, v.</i>	<i>église, f.</i>	
We	speak of	America,	and not	
<i>Nous, pro.</i>	<i>parlons, v.</i>	<i>Amérique, f.</i>	<i>non pas, adv.</i>	
of Poland. - - -	Grant	us	peace. - - -	
<i>Pologne, f.</i>	<i>Accordez, v.</i>	<i>nous, pro.</i>	<i>paix, f.</i>	
Honour is	due	to kings. - - -	They	
<i>Honneur, m.</i>	<i>dû, p. p.</i>	<i>roi, m.</i>	<i>Ils, pro.</i>	
come from Africa. - - -	Pride	disgraces	man. - -	
<i>viennent, v.</i>	<i>Afrique, f.</i>	<i>Orgueil, m.</i>	<i>dégrade, v.</i>	
Charity	patiently ²	bears ¹	injuries ³ .	
<i>Charité, f.</i>	<i>patiemment, adv.</i>	<i>souffre, v.</i>	<i>injure, f.</i>	

This article is also placed before nouns used in a *specific sense*, or denoting a particular object, in which case the article is likewise expressed in English : ex.

<i>L'homme que vous m'avez</i>	The man whom you re-
<i>recommandé est fort ha-</i>	commended to me is
<i>bile,</i>	very skilful.

Les poires de votre jardin *The pears of your garden*
sont excellentes, *are excellent.*

EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULE.

Where is the master of the house? -- The
Où, adv. *maître, m.* *maison, f.*
 prince spoke to the king. -- To the third
prince, m. *parla, v.* *troisième, adj.*
 page of the book. -- The¹ lazy² do³ not⁶
page, f. *livre, m.* *paresseux, adj.* *en*
 love⁴ work⁵. ---- Justice is the mistress and
aiment, v. *ouvrage, m.* *Justice, f.* *maîtresse, f.*
 queen of virtue. -- Send the child to school. --
reine, f. *Envoyez, v.* *enfant, m.* *école, f.*
 Walk in the garden. -- Tranquillity
Promenez-vous, v. *dans, p.* *jardin, m.* *Tranquillité, f.*
 of soul is the height of felicity. -- Give the tooth
âme, f. *comble, m.* *félicité, f.* *Donnez, v.* *cure-*
 picks to the gentlemen. ---- Education is to the
dent, m. *gentil-homme, m.* *Education, f.*
 mind, what cleanliness is to the body. -- The
esprit, m. *ce que, pro.* *propreté, f.* *corps, m.*
 life of man is short. -- The enemies were on
vie, f. *courte, adj.* *ennemi, m.* *étoient, v.* *sur, p.*
 the mountain. -- You admire the beauty of
montagne, f. *Vous, pro.* *admirez, v.* *beauté, f.*
 the ladies. -- To the thickness of the walls. -- We
dame, f. *épaisseur, f.* *muraille, f.*
 go to the park. --- It is the will of the em-
allons, v. *parc, m.* *C'est, v.* *volonté, f.* *em-*
 peror. --- The fate of nations is governed
pereur, m. *sort, m.* *nation, f.* *gouverné, p. p.*
 by Providence. -- You play with the boys.
par, p. *Providence, f.* *jouez, v.* *avec, p.* *garçon, m.*
 -- Revenge is the pleasure of a weak² mind¹. --
Vengeance, f. *plaisir, m.* *un foible, adj.*
 Italy is the garden of Europe. -- The most noble
Italie, f. *Europe, f.* *plus, adv.* *noble, adj.*

of virtues is charity. - - Carry the grammar to the
Portez, v. grammaire, f.
 boys, and the dictionary to the girls. - - - He
dictionnaire, m. fille, f. Il, pro.
 comes from the Indies. - - Give me the loaf.
vient, v. Inde, f. moi, pro. pain, m.

This article being declinable in French, and consequently admitting of different variations, ought to be repeated before all the *substantives* of a sentence, as well as before nouns adjective used as substantives, and agree with them in *gender* and *number* : ex.

Le sel, la moutarde, et l'huile, sont sur les tables, The salt, mustard, and oil, are on the tables.
Le blanc, le rouge, et le noir, sont trois différentes couleurs, White, red, and black, are three different colours.

EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

Prefer virtue to riches, friendship to
Préférez, v. richesses, f. pl. amitié, f.
 money, and utility to pleasure. - - The father, mother,
argent, m. utilité, f. père, m. mère, f.
 and children are dead. - - The men, women, and children of the village were all at the burial. - - -
sont, v. morts, p. p. femme, f.
village, m. tous, adj. à, p. enterrement, m.
 Children generally^a like¹ apples and pears. - -
ordinairement, adv. aiment, v. pomme, f. poire, f.
 I like yellow and grey. - Peace and plenty
aime, v. jaune, m. gris, m. abondance, f.
 make men happy. - - - - Wheat and barley
rendent, v. heureux, adj. Froment, m. orge, f.
 are dear. - - - I hate milk, butter, and cheese. - -
cher, adj. lait, m. beurre, m. fromage, m.
 Bring the knives and forks. - - - Patience
Apportez, v. couteau, m. fourchette, f. Patience, f.
 and perseverance are necessary. - - - - The desire
persévérance, f. nécessaire, adj. désir, m.

of glory, riches, power, and pleasure, is a
gloire, f. pouvoir, m. une
 disease of the mind. - - - Have you passed
maladie, f. âme, f. Avez, v. passé, p. p.
 through Spain, Portugal, or Holland? - - Pre-
par, p. Espagne, f. Portugal, m. ou Hollande, f.
 fer always virtue, prudence, and good sense
toujours, adv. prudence, f. bon, adj. sens, m.
 to beauty. - - Put the wine, beer, and cider on
Mettez, v. vin, m. bière, f. cidre, m. sur, p.
 the table. - - (It is said) that America, France, and
table, f. On dit que
 Spain have made peace with England.
ont, v. fait, p. p.

On the contrary, this article, though expressed in English, must be omitted in French, before a noun followed by a name denoting a *degree of consanguinity or kindred*, or the name of a *particular place* to which it belongs; and when it precedes a noun in the nominative or accusative case, denoting *dignity, office, or business* : ex.

Alexandre, fils de Philippe, Alexander the son of Philip.
Mon ami demeure à Londres, ville capitale d'Angleterre, My friend lives in London, the capital city of England.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The Jupiter of the heathens was the son of
payen, m. étoit, v. fils, m.
 Saturn, and the father of the gods. - - - Robert,
Saturne, m. dieu, m.
 duke of Normandy, the brother of Henry, king
duc, m. Normandie, f. frère, m. Henri, m.
 of England, was the son of William the con-
Guillaume, m. con-
 queror. - - My sister lives at York, the cap-
quérant, m. Ma, pro. sœur, f. demeure, v. à, p.
 ital city of the county of the same name.
comté, m. même, adj. nom, m.

Mr. C***, the rector of the parish of St. James, and
curé, m. paroisse, f. Jâques
 his brother, the dean of the cathedral, were
son, pro. doyen, m. cathédrale, f.
 the sons of Mr. L***, the first lord of
premier, adj. seigneur
 the admiralty.

In several instances, the definite article is neither expressed in English nor in French; and this generally happens when nouns common are not taken in the full extent of their signification, especially in narrations, and after the conjunction *ni*, neither, nor: ex.

Conscience, honneur, intérêt, Conscience, honour, inter-
tout est sacrifié; il n'a est, every thing is sacri-
ni justice ni humanité, ficed; he has neither
 justice nor humanity.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The town was taken by storm: men,
ville, f. fut, v. prise, p.p. d'assaut, m.
 women, children, old people, (every body) was
vieillard, m. tout, adj.
 put to death.-- Palaces, temples, publick² build-
mis, p.p. à mort, f. Palais, édi-
 ings¹, private² houses¹ (every thing) was
fice, m. particulière, adj. maison, f. (tout)
 destroyed, and the enemies did² ¹not³ leave² stone
détruit, p.p. laissèrent, v. pierre, f.
 upon stone. --- His father will² spare² ¹neither³
sur, p. Son, pro. épargnera, v. ne ni
 pains nor money. --- He is a fatherless child,
peine, f. C'est, v. orphelin, adj. or
 he has neither parents nor friends.
parent, m. ami, m.

When, in English, two or more substantives, signifying different things, come together in a sentence, having a dependence on each other, and having no stop between them, the last (in English) must be placed

EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE.

Mr. Richard, brother to the Prince's steward,
intendant, m.
 has married Miss Prescott, niece to the Constable
a, v. épousé, p. p. nièce, f. connétable, m.
 of the Tower. - - - I have spoken to the Marchioness
Tour, f. parlé, p. p. Marquise, f.
 of ***, sister to the queen's first Lady of honour. - -
Dame, f.
 Mr. Henry, perfumer to the princess, has made
Henri, m. parfumeur, m. fait, p. p.
 a ²considerable ¹fortune. - - - The heir to the
considérable, adj. fortune, f. héritier, m.
 crown of Portugal is the Prince of Brasil. - - My
couronne, f. du Brésil, m.
 father was witness to that quarrel. - - -
a été, p. p. témoin, m. cette, pro. querelle, f.
 I am a friend to ²diligent ¹scholars, and an
suis, v. en diligent, adj. écolier, m. en
 enemy to idleness.
ennemi, m. paresse, f.

After the adverb *bien*, when placed before a substantive and signifying *much*, *a great deal*, *many*, the genitive of this article must always be used: ex.

Bien du mérite, Much merit.
Bien des amis, Many friends.
Bien de l'argent, A great deal of money.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The children make much noise. - - - This man
font, v. bruit, m. Cet, pro.
 has (a great deal) of money, but he has also many
aussi, adv.
 enemies. - - - They ²give ¹you much trouble
donnent, v. peine, f.
 now; but they will ²give ¹you ¹afterward
à présent, adv. mais, c. donneront, v. ensuite, adv.
 much pleasure. - - - (There were) many ladies in
Il y avoit, v.

company (last night). ----- Mr. R. has read
compagnie, f. hier au soir, adv. lu, p. p.
 many books, and he has acquired much know-
livre, m. acquis, p. p. connois-
 ledge. ---- To teach youth (we must
sances, f. pl. Pour, p. enseigner, v. jeunesse, f. (il faut, v.
 have) a great deal of patience.
avoir, v.)

If the second substantive in French (which is the first in English) serve to denote some *particular commodity, use, quality, or liquor*, then it must be put in the dative :
 ex.

<i>Le pot au lait,</i>	The ¹ milk ³ -pot ² .
<i>La femme aux pommes,</i>	The ¹ apple ³ -woman ² .
<i>Une cruche à l'eau,</i>	A water-jug.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Tell the servant to bring²
Dites, v. au or à la domestique, m. & f. de apporter, v.
 me¹ the tea-cannister, sugar-dish, cream-
me, pro. thé, m. boîte, f. sucre, m. pot, m. crème, f.
 basin, and coffee-cups. -- Go to the wine-cellar
bassin, m. café, m. tasse, f. Allez, v. vin, m. cave, f.
 and bring² us¹ the vinegar-bottle. ---- (There is)
vinaigre, m. bouteille, f. Voilà
 the oyster-woman. --- I live in the hay-market,
huître, f. foin, m. marché, m.
 my cousin in the fish-market, and my sister
mon, pro. poisson, m. ma, pro.
 in the poultry-market. ---- Give me the oil-
volaille, f. moi, pro. huile, f.
 bottle, pepper-box, and mustard-pot. ---- The
poivre, m. boîte, f. moutarde, f.
 butter-boy, the green-girl, the hot - rolls
beurre, m. légume, m. chaud, adj. pain, m.
 man, and the gingerbread-woman, called here. --
pain d'épices, m. ont passé, p. p. ici, adv.
 We had cabbage-soup, a rice-pudding, a
eûmes, v. chou, m. soupe, f. riz, m. pouding, m.

(leg of mutton) with caper-sauce, and ice-
gigot, m. *capre*, f. *sauce*, f. *glace*, f.
 cream. -- We shall have pease porridge, a salt²
aurons, v. *pois*, m. *soupe*, f. *salé*, adj.
 cod¹ with egg-sauce, and a turbot with
morue, f. *œuf*, m.
 lobster-sauce. ---- I bought a plum - cake, an
homar, m. *ai acheté*, *raisin*, m. *gâteau*, m.
 apple - tart, and two gooseberry and cherry
pomme, f. *tarte*, f. *groseille*, f. *cerise*, f.
 pies.
tourte, f.

DECLENSION OF THE ARTICLE PARTITIVE.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *du pain*, some bread.

Gen. Abl. *de pain*, of or from some bread.

Dat. *à du pain*, to some bread.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *de la viande*, some meat.

Gen. Abl. *de viande*, of or from some meat.

Dat. *à de la viande*, to some meat.

Masculine or Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *de l'argent*, some money.

Gen. Abl. *d'argent*, of or from some money.

Dat. *à de l'argent*, to some money.

The plural is the same for both genders.

N. Ac. *des livres*, some books, *des auteurs*, some authors.

G. Ab. *de livres*, of or from, &c. *d'auteurs*, of or from, &c.

Dat. *à des livres*, to, &c. *à des auteurs*, to, &c.

N. B. In asking a question, the English generally make use of *any*, which, in French, must be rendered by the same article: ex.

Y a-t-il du pain ici?

Is there *any* bread here?

Avez-vous de la viande?

Have you *any* meat?

This article must be used wherever the English word *some*, or *any*, is either expressed or understood, and ought to be repeated before every substantive in a sentence : ex.

<i>Du pain et de l'eau lui suffisent,</i>	Bread and water are sufficient for him.
<i>Apportez du vinaigre, de la moutarde, de l'huile, et des fourchettes,</i>	Bring some vinegar, mustard, oil, and forks.
<i>Avez-vous de l'argent à nous prêter ?</i>	Have you any money to lend us ?

EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE.

Bread, meat, and water, are things necessary
sont, v. chose, f. nécessaire, adj.
 to man. - - I drink wine and water. - - She eats
bois, v. mange, v.
 cheese. - - - Bring me some mustard. - - - Have you
fromage, m.
 bought some paper, pens, and ink ? - - Send
acheté, p.p. papier, m. plume, f. encre, f.
 him some bread, meat, and potatoes. - - - - - Do you²
pomme de terre, f. ∞
 sell¹ fruit³ ? - - Buy some tea and sugar. - -
vendez, v. fruit, m. Achetez, v. thé, m.
 Will you eat some beef with turnips and
Voulez, v. manger, v. bœuf, m. navet, m.
 carrots ? - - Do you drink beer ? - - (Is there) any
carotte, f. buvez, v. bière, f. Y a-t-il
 wine in the cellar ? - - - - (Was there) any oil in the
Y avoit-il
 bottle ? - - I¹ have³ given⁴ him² bread, money,
donné, p.p. lui, pro.
 and clothes. - - She has modesty and prudence. - -
habit, m. modestie, f. prudence, f.
 He has bought some dishes and plates. - - - - Will
plat, m. assiette, f.
 you have some milk or cream ? - - I eat fish, eggs,
œuf, m.

greens, artichokes, and asparagus. - - - Bread, meat
artichau, m. asperge, f.
 fish and vegetables, often² make¹ a good
légume, m. souvent, adv. font, v.
 dinner.
diner, m.

If the substantive be preceded by an adjective, instead of *du, de la, des*, we must use *de* or *d'*: as,

	Masc.	Fem.	Masc. or Fem.
N. Ac. }	<i>De mauvais vin,</i>	<i>De bonne eau,</i>	<i>D'excellent pain,</i>
G. Abl. }	Bad wine,	Good water,	Excellent bread.
Dat. }	<i>à de mauvais vin,</i>	<i>à de bonne eau,</i>	<i>à d'excellent pain,</i>
	To bad wine.	To good water.	To excellent bread.

PLURAL.

N. Ac. }	<i>De bons livres,</i>	<i>d'habiles gens,</i>
G. Ab. }	Good books.	Learned men.
Dat. }	<i>à de bons livres,</i>	<i>à d'habiles gens,</i>
	To good books.	To learned men.

This last rule is not general; for there are some substantives, which, though preceded by an adjective, require the other article, instead of *de*. However, instances of this kind are very few: they never happen but when the adjective and substantive present to the mind one idea only: as, *Londres est le centre du bon goût*, &c. London is the centre of good taste, &c.

EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

You always² read¹ good books. - - Bad¹ wine²
toujours, adv. lisez, v.
 is⁴ ³not⁵ worth⁴ good water. - - He speaks to learned
vaut, v. parle, v.
 men. - - - I have heard good news. - - -
gens, f. appris, p.p. bonne, adj. nouvelle, f.*
 You have fine fruit. - - - She has worthy
avez, v. beau, adj. digne, adj.
 friends. - - Bring me good pens. - - Onions, celery,
Oignons, m. céleri, m.

* *Gens*, preceded by an adjective, is of the feminine gender; but when the adjective follows, it is put in the masculine.

leeks, chervil, and plenty of meat make
poireau, m. *cerfeuil*, m. *beaucoup*, adv. *font*, v.
 what the French call, good
ce que, pro. *François*, m. pl. *appellent*, v.
 broth. - - - I prefer good water to bad cider. - - -
bouillon, m. *cidre*, m.
 I have discoursed with learned people. - - My father
conversé, p. p. *gens*, f.
 has in his garden good plums, fine peaches,
son, pro. *prune*, f. *belle*, adj. *pêche*, f.
 and very large apricots. - - - Miss
très, adv. *gros*, adj. *abricot*, m. - - - *Mademoiselle*, f.
 Sharp has fine eyes.
œil, m.

DECLENSION OF THE ARTICLE INDEFINITE.

SINGULAR.—Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *Pierre*, Peter.

Gen. Abl. *de Pierre*, of Peter.

Dat. *à Pierre*, to Peter.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *Marie*, Maria.

Gen. Abl. *de Marie*, of Maria.

Dat. *à Marie*, to Maria.

This article, before a noun beginning with a vowel or *h* not aspirated, is expressed as follows :

Nom. Acc. *Antoine*, Antony.

Gen. Abl. *d'Antoine*, of Antony.

Dat. *à Antoine*, to Antony.

Nom. Acc. *Londres*, London.

Gen. Abl. *de Londres*, of London.

Dat. *à Londres*, to London.

N.B. It is necessary to observe, that the particle *To*, used after a word signifying coming, going, returning, or sending *to*, placed before the name of a *kingdom*, *republic*, *country*, *province*, or *county*, must be rendered in French by the preposition *en*, without any article : ex.

Mon frère est allé en Italie,
Il doit bientôt retourner en
Amérique,

My brother is gone to Italy.
He is soon to go back to
America.

On the contrary, *to* must be rendered by *de*, when immediately preceded by the words *road*, or *path-way*:
ex.

<i>Le chemin de Londres,</i>	The road to London.
<i>Le chemin de Paris,</i>	The way to Paris.

It must be observed that the *proper names* of most of the islands and other countries both in the East and West-Indies, and some few places in Europe, do not follow the above rule, but take the definite article, such as *l'Abyssinie*, Abyssinia; *le Brésil*, Brasil; *le Caire*, Cairo; *le Canada*, Canada; *la Guadeloupe*, Guadeloupe; *la Jamaïque*, Jamaica; *le Japon*, Japan; *la Martinique*, Martinico; *le Pérou*, Peru; *la Virginie*, Virginia; and a few others; ex.

<i>Venir</i>	{	<i>de l'Abyssinie,</i>		to come	{	from Abyssinia;
		<i>du Brésil,</i>				from Brasil,
		<i>du Caire,</i>				from Cairo.
<i>Aller</i>	{	<i>à la Chine,</i>		to go	{	to China,
		<i>au Canada,</i>				to Canada,
		<i>au Japon,</i>				to Japan.

EXERCISE UPON THESE RULES.

(Here is) John's brother. - - Speak to Martha. - -

Voici, adv. Jean, m. Parlez, v. Marthe, f.

It is Peter's hat. - - - She goes to Richmond. -

C'est, v. chapeau, m. va, v.

He comes from Paris. - - - You have Mr.

vient, v. *Monsieur, m.*

Richard's sword. - - - When¹ will² - you³ go² to
épée, f. Quand, adv. irez, v.

France? - - I know not, for my father says
sais, v. ne pas, adv. car, c. dit, v.

that he will² send² me¹ soon to Canada or
que, c. il, pro. enverra, v. bientôt, adv.

Jamaica. - - Give me Laura's cap. - - - I (am going)
Laure, f. bonnet, m. vais, v.

to Croydon. - - - I have found Andrew's waistcoat.
 trouvé, p.p. André, m. veste, f.

She (shall come back) to England (next year)
 reviendra, v. l'année prochaine

to see her brother who is arrived from
 pour voir, v. qui, pro. est, v. arrivé, p.p.

Japan and China. - - Carry that to Stephen. - -
 Portez, v. cela, pro. Etienne, m.

(Here is) the road to Clapham. - - - My mother
 Ma, pro.

intends to send my sister to Portugal
 se propose de, v. envoyer, v. ma, pro.

or Spain, and thence to Rome, and my cousin (is to)
 de là doit, v.

go to Mexico or Cairo.
 aller, v. Mexique, m. ou, c.

The genitive of this article *de* is used after nouns and adverbs of *quantity*, whether expressed in English, or not; after the negation *pas* or *point*, no or not; the words *que*, what, *quelque chose*, something, *rien*, nothing; before names of countries, kingdoms and provinces, when preceded by a noun expressing a personal title, or by a verb signifying *coming*, *arriving*, or *returning from*: *ex.*

<i>Tant de pommes,</i>	So many apples.
<i>Tant d'argent,</i>	So much money.
<i>Point de repos,</i>	No rest.
<i>Quelque chose* de bon,</i>	Something good.
<i>Il arrive de France,</i>	He arrives from France.
<i>Rien de mauvais,</i>	Nothing bad.
<i>Le roi d'Angleterre,</i>	The king of England.

EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE.

I have bought six yards of cloth. - - - Bring
 acheté, p.p. six, aune, f. drap, m.
 me three pounds of veal, and two pounds of
 trois, livre, f. veau, m. deux,

* It must be observed, that the word *chose*, standing by itself, is of the feminine gender; but, being joined to the word *quelque*, it is of the masculine.

mutton. - - - She has a great number of child-
mouton, m. un grand, adj. nombre, m.
 ren. - - - He has (too much) vanity. - - You have
trop, adv. vanité, f.
 less merit, but more wisdom. - - What
moins, adv. mais, c. plus, adv. sagesse, f. Que
 a noise you make. - - - Do ¹not⁴ give³ her²
∞ bruit, m. faites, v. ∞ ne pas, adv. lui, pro.
 (too many) pears. - - I¹ have³ ²no⁴ daughters.⁵ - -
trop, adv. ne point, adv.
 So much pride does ¹not⁴ become³ him². -
Tant, adv. orgueil, m. ∞ sied, v. lui, pro.
 (There is) something noble in his physiognomy. - -
Il y a, v. sa, pro. physionomie, f.
 We have (so many) grapes. - - They have a little
raisin, m. un peu, adv.
 money. - - I know the king of Prussia. - - Did you
connois, v. Prusse, f. Avez, v.
 see the duke of Bavaria with the archbishop
vu, p.p. duc, m. Bavière, f. archevêque, m.
 of York? - - He commanded an army of forty
commandoit, v. une armée, f. quarante
 thousand men. - - She¹ says³ ²nothing⁴ true⁵. - -
mille, dit, v. ne rien, adv. vrai, adj.
 You speak of Alexander, king of Macedonia. - -
parlez, v. Alexandre, m. Macédoine, f.
 Do you² come¹ from Italy? - - - No, I come
∞ venez, v. Non, adv. viens, v.
 from Africa.

Afrique.

De is likewise placed before nouns governed by another substantive, of which they express the character, cause, country, matter, nature, and quality; and after the adjectives of number, when they are followed by a participle passive: ex.

Une maison de brique,
Un bonnet de nuit,
Une cuiller d'argent,
Du poisson de rivière,
Du vin de Bourgogne,
Quatre de renvoyés,

A¹ brick³ house².
 A night cap.
 A silver spoon.
 River fish.
 Burgundy² wine¹.
 Four sent away.

EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE.

Your¹ sister² has³ a⁴ silk⁶ gown⁵ and a gold
Votre, pro. sœur, f. a, v. une soie, f. robe, f. un or, m.
 thimble. -- We drink Champagne wine. ---- It is a
dé, m. buvons, v. C'est, v.
 marble pillar. ---- They have a country
marbre, m. pillier, m. une campagne, f.
 house built with oak wood. --
maison, f. construite, p.p. de, p. chêne, m. bois, m.
 Edinburgh is the capital city of the kingdom
Edinbourg, m. capitale, adj. ville, f. royaume, m.
 of Scotland. -- Shut the fore - door. -- A lady
Ecosse, f. Fermez, v. devant, m. porte, f. Une
 of wit is a jewel of worth. -- -- He is a man
esprit, m. un joyau, m. prix, m. C'est, v.
 of honour. -- -- She has bought silver buckles
argent, m. boucle, f.
 and diamond ear - rings. ---- Have you
diamant, m. pendans-d'oreille, m. Avez, v.
 spoken to the silk-merchant? -- -- Give me the
parlé, p.p. marchand, m.
 upper - crust. -- Bring me my straw - hat and
dessus, m. croûte, f. mon, pro. paille, f. chapeau, m.
 my night - cap. -- Miss Brown's chamber - maid and
nuit, f. bonnet, m. chambre, f. fille, f.
 Mrs. Rose's house-keeper are two sis-
Madame, f. femme de charge, f. deux,
 ters. -- The rich make use of silver plate,
riche, m. se servent, v. vaisselle, f.
 and the poor make use of iron forks
pauvre, m. font, v. usage, m. fer, m.
 and pewter spoons. ---- The enemies had a
étain, m. cuiller, f. eurent, v. ∞
 hundred men killed, seventy wounded,
cent tué, p.p. soixante-dix, blessé, p.p.
 forty lost, and five hundred taken pri-
quarante, perdu, p.p. cinq, pris, p.p. pri-
 soners.
sonnier, m.

De is placed after the adjectives signifying dimension, as *épais*, thick ; *gros*, big, large ; *haut*, high, tall ; *large*, wide, broad ; *long*, long ; and *profond*, deep ; though there is no article expressed in English : ex.

Une table longue de dix pieds A table ten feet long and
et large du huit, eight broad.

But there is a more elegant way, which is, to turn the adjective of dimension into the substantive ; then the words of measure and those of dimension are preceded by *de* : ex.

Une table de dix pieds de longueur A table ten feet long and
et de huit de largeur, eight broad.

In this last example it may be seen, that the French and English are parallel with each other ; therefore, in the following exercise, the adjective and substantive are put down, that the learner may translate it both ways.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I saw a tree eighteen feet large.
ai, v. vu, p.p. un arbre, m. dix-huit pied, m. gros-
----- I have a box four inches thick,
seur, f. une boîte, f. quatre pouce, m. épais-seur, f.*
ten feet long, and six broad. - - I know
dix pied, m. long-ueur, f. large-ur, f. connois, v.
a man seven feet high. - - - (It is) a ditch
un sept haut-eur, f. C'est, v. un fossé, m.
nine feet six inches deep and five feet broad.
neuf profond-eur, f. cinq,
(There is) a room fifty paces long and
Voilà une chambre, f. cinquante pas, m.
twenty broad. - - - The walls of our garden,
vingt muraille, f. notre, pro.
are (have) thirty feet three inches high, and two
sont, v. ont, v. trente trois deux
feet broad. - I have a tree sixty feet high
un arbre, m. soixante
and eighteen round.
dix-huit gros-seur, f.

* Read *gros*, adjective, *grosseur*, substantive, and so of the others. See the rules to form the feminine gender, (p. 50.)

If the learner translate this last sentence by the adjective of dimension, he must use the word *sont*, which is the proper word of the English *are*, and follows the preceding rule: but if he turn the adjective of dimension into its substantive, the word *être*, to be, is to be rendered into French by the verb *avoir*, to have, and *de* before the word of measure is suppressed. In this last case, the word *ont*, have, must be inserted instead of *sont*.

Example by the adjective :

*Notre chambre est longue
de vingt pieds et large
de douze.*

By the substantive :

<i>Notre chambre a vingt pieds de longueur et douze de largeur,</i>	Our room is twenty feet long and twelve broad.
---	---

When two substantives are joined together, both making a compound word in English, the first of which denotes the *form* or *use* of the second, the latter must be placed before the former in French, and followed by the particle *à* : ex.

*Un moulin à papier,
Une boîte à poudre,*

A paper² mill¹.
A powder² box¹.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Gun - powder was invented by a monk.
Canon, m. poudre, f. fut, v. inventée, p. p. par, p. moine, m.
 The servant has lost the tinder-box, and cannot
 perdu, p. p. fusil, m. ne sauroit, v.
 light the candle. - - - If you go to London
allumer, v. chandelle, f. Si, c. allez, v.
 to-morrow, bring me a toupee - iron. - - Have you
demain, adv. toupet, m. fer, m.
 seen the water-mill which my father has bought?
vu, p. p. que, pro.
 No, but I have seen the wind-mill which your
Non, adv. vent, m.

brother has built at Greenwich. - - I have
fait bâtir, v. à
 found your sister's work - bag, in the eating-
ouvrage, m. sac, m. manger, m.
 room. - - - William the Conqueror forbade the
chambre, f. défendit, v. aux
 English to have any fire - arms.
Anglois, m. de aucune, pro. feu, m. arme, f.

DECLENSION of UN, m. UNE, f. A or AN.

SINGULAR.—Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *un livre*, a book.
 Gen. Abl. *d'un livre*, of or from a book.
 Dat. à *un livre*, to a book.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *une plume*, a pen.
 Gen. Abl. *d'une plume*, of or from a pen.
 Dat. à *une plume*, to a pen.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I have a hat and a sword. - - - She speaks
chapeau, m. épée, f. parle, v.
 of an officer. - - He¹ has³ given⁴ it² to⁵ a
officier, m. donné, p.p. le, pro.
 sailor. - - (There are) a bird and a cage. - - -
matelot, m. Voilà osieau, m. cage, f.
 An ungrateful man is a monster in the eyes of a
ingrat, m. ∞ monstre, m. aux, œil, m.
 sensible² man¹. - - Alexander was a great warrior,
sensé, adj. Alexandre, m. étoit, v. guerrier, m.
 and a very learned philosopher. - - A fine
très, adv. savant, adj. philosophe, m. beau, adj.
 flower in a garden is an ornament.
fleur, f. ornement, m.

It must be observed, that the English article *a* or *an*, before nouns of measure, weight, and number, must be rendered in French by the definite article, *le, la, les*; and by the preposition *par*, used in the sense of *each, every, or per*: ex.

Deux chelins le cent,
Un écu le boisseau,
Cinq chelins par semaine,
Une guinée par mois,

Two shillings *a* hundred.
 A crown *a* bushel.
 Five shillings *a* week.
 One guinea *a* month.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Barley sells for three shillings a bushel. - - -
Orge, f. se vend, v. ∞
 That ale (is worth) six pence a pint. - - -
Cette, pro. aile, f. vaut, v. sou, m. pinte, f.
 Beef costs eight pence a pound. - - -
Bœuf, m. coûte, v. huit, adj. livre, f.
 This lace cost a crown an ell. - - He
Cette, pro. dentelle, f. coûta, v. écu, m. aune, f.
 sells his best cloth a guinea a yard. - -
vend, v. son, pro. meilleur, adj. drap, m. verge, f.
 Burgundy wine (is sold) nine shillings a bottle. - -
se vend, v. neuf, adj.
 My shoemaker sold² me¹ two pair of
Mon, pro. cordonnier, m. a vendu, p.p. paire, f.
 shoes at the rate of ²half ¹a guinea a pair. - - My
soulier, m. à raison demi
 master comes twice a week. - - My uncle goes
vient, v. deux fois, adv. va, v.
 to France thrice a year. - - She gives three
trois fois, adv. an, m. donne, v.
 shillings a day and ten pence a mile. ¹
jour, m. mille, m.

N. B. *A* or *an* is not to be expressed when it immediately precedes a noun in the nominative or accusative case, denoting *title, dignity, office, business, or words* which point out the kind or species of things; and lastly, after the verb *être*, to be, unless this verb be preceded by *ce* in the third person singular, or the above nouns be followed by an adjective or any other modification, one of the relative pronouns, *who, whom, which, &c.* or by an adjective in the superlative degree: ex.

M. D. membre de la chambre des communes. M. D. *a* member of the house of commons.

Are you *an* Englishman?

No, sir, I am a Frenchman.

2

pour, p.

100

• T

wit

A young man.

A young woman.

Adjectives ending with one of the following letters, *d, e, i, l, n, r, s, t,* and *u*, form their feminine by adding an *e* mute : ex.

Masc.	<i>Grand,</i>	Fem.	<i>grande,*</i>	great, tall, large.
	<i>Poli,</i>		<i>polie,</i>	polite.
	<i>Aimé,</i>		<i>aimée,</i>	loved.
	<i>Civil,</i>		<i>civile,</i>	civil.
	<i>Demi,</i>		<i>demie,</i>	half.
	<i>Nu,</i>		<i>nue,</i>	naked.

The last two adjectives are indeclinable when they precede a substantive, but are declinable when they follow it : ex.

<i>Une demi-livre,</i>	A half-pound.
<i>Une livre et demie,</i>	A pound and half.
<i>Nu tête,</i> bare head, }	<i>la tête nue.</i>
<i>Nu pieds,</i> bare feet, }	<i>les pieds nus.</i>

There are a few ending in *an, as, el, il, eil, ien, in, es, et, is, on, os, ot,* and *ul*, that double the final letter, before an *e*, mute, for the feminine : ex.

Masc.	<i>Gras,</i>	Fem.	<i>grasse,</i>	fat.
	<i>Gentil,</i>		<i>gentille,</i>	genteel.
	<i>Eternel,</i>		<i>éternelle,</i>	eternal.
	<i>Pareil,</i>		<i>pareille,</i>	alike.
	<i>Chrétien,</i>		<i>chrétienne,</i>	christian.
	<i>Epais,</i>		<i>épaisse,</i>	thick.
	<i>Bon,</i>		<i>bonne,</i>	good.

* When that adjective precedes a substantive singular of the feminine gender, beginning with a consonant, we often suppress, in French, both in the pronunciation and writing the *e*, which is supplied by an apostrophe as in the following instances.

<i>A grand' peine,</i>	with hard labour.
<i>Avoir { grand' faim,</i>	{ very hungry.
<i>{ grand' soif,</i>	{ very thirsty.
<i>{ grand' peur,</i>	{ very much frightened.
<i>Faire grand' chère,</i>	to live well, to fare sumptuously.
<i>La grand' mère,</i>	the grand mother.
<i>La grand' messe,</i>	the high mass.
<i>La grand' chambre,</i>	the high court.

Should however the word *grande* be preceded by *très, fort,* very, *une,* one, or *la plus,* the most, then the final *e* must be added ; as,

<i>Une fort grande salle,</i>	A very large room.
-------------------------------	--------------------

Masc. <i>Gros,</i>	Fem. <i>grosse,</i>	big.
<i>Sot,</i>	<i>sotte,</i>	foolish.

The following are very irregular, and cannot be comprised under any rule, viz.

Masc. <i>Beau, bel,*</i>	Fem. <i>belle,</i>	handsome, fine.
<i>Bénin,</i>	<i>bénigne,</i>	benign.
<i>Favori,</i>	<i>favorite,</i>	favourite.
<i>Fou, fol,*</i>	<i>folle,</i>	foolish.
<i>Frais,</i>	<i>fraîche,</i>	fresh.
<i>Long,</i>	<i>longue,</i>	long.
<i>Malin,</i>	<i>maligne,</i>	malicious.
<i>Mou, mol,*</i>	<i>molle,</i>	soft.
<i>Nouveau, nouvel,*</i>	<i>nouvelle,</i>	new.
<i>Vieux, vieil,*</i>	<i>vieille,</i>	old.

Adjectives ending in *c* add *he* to the *c* for their feminine: ex.

Masc. <i>Blanc,</i>	Fem. <i>blanche,</i>	white.
<i>Franc,</i>	<i>franche,</i>	sincere.
<i>Sec,</i>	<i>sèche,</i>	dry, &c.

The four following are excepted.

Masc. <i>Caduc,</i>	Fem. <i>caduque,</i>	in decay.
<i>Grec,</i>	<i>Grecque,</i>	Greek.
<i>Public,</i>	<i>publique,</i>	public.
<i>Turc,</i>	<i>Turque,</i>	Turkish.

Those ending in *f* change *f* into *ve* for the feminine: ex.

Masc. <i>Bref,</i>	Fem. <i>brève,</i>	short.
<i>Naïf,</i>	<i>naïve,</i>	plain, ingenuous.
<i>Neuf,</i>	<i>neuve,</i>	new.
<i>Veuf,</i>	<i>veuve,</i>	widowed.
<i>Vif,</i>	<i>vive,</i>	quick.

Adjectives ending in *x*, change *x* into *se*: ex.

Masc. <i>Douloureux,</i>	Fem. <i>douloureuse,</i>	painful, dolorous.
<i>Heureux,</i>	<i>heureuse,</i>	happy, &c.
<i>Jaloux,</i>	<i>jalouse,</i>	jealous.

* These adjectives are used before substantives beginning with a vowel or *h* not aspirated.

The following are excepted :

Masc.	<i>Doux,</i>	Fem.	<i>douce,</i>	sweet.
	<i>Faux,</i>		<i>fausse,</i>	false.
	<i>Perplex,</i>		<i>perplexe,</i>	perplexed.
	<i>Préfix,</i>		<i>préfixe,</i>	prefixed.
	<i>Roux,</i>		<i>rousse,</i>	reddish.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

French adjectives must agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case : ex.

SINGULAR.—Masculine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Le bon livre,</i>	the good book.
Gen. Abl.	<i>Du bon livre,</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>Au bon livre,</i>	to the good book.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Les bons livres,</i>	the good books.
Gen. Abl.	<i>des bons livres,</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>aux bons livres,</i>	to the good books.

SINGULAR.—Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>La bonne plume,</i>	the good pen.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de la bonne plume,</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>à la bonne plume,</i>	to the good pen.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Les bonnes plumes,</i>	the good pens.
Gen. Abl.	<i>des bonnes plumes,</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>aux bonnes plumes,</i>	to the good pens.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

The tall man, the little woman, and the
petit, adj.
 pretty children, whom I met yesterday
joli, adj. *que, pro.* *ai rencontré, p.p.* *hier, adv.*
 with their grandmother (were going) to London:
alloient, v.
 they were all very hungry and thirsty.--The polite:
avoient, v.

inhabitants¹ of that fine city treat all the
habitant, m. cette, pro. traitent, v.
 strangers in a civil² and frank³ manner.¹ --
étranger, m. de une manière, f.
 Lean² sheep¹ grow fat in good
Maigre, adj. brebis, f. deviennent, v. dans, p.
 pastures. --- Constant² study¹ joined to a great
pâturage, m. étude, f. joint, p.p.
 application makes men learned. --- The new
application, f. rend, v. savant, adj.
 coat, which ²you gave ¹me, is
habit, m. que, pro. avez donné, p.p.
 better than the old great-coat which my
meilleur, adj. que, c. redingote, f.
 father had bought at his tailor's. -- We went
chez, p. allâmes, v.
 yesterday to the high court where we found all
trouvâmes, v.
 the judges already met.
déjà, ad. assemblé, p.p.

As two or more substantives in the singular are equivalent to a plural, the verb and adjective, or participle past, not immediately following them, must be put in the plural, when they refer to two or more substantives in the singular, and that adjective or participle is to be put in the masculine, if these substantives be of different genders: ex.

Le frère, la sœur, le neveu, The brother, sister, ne-
et la nièce, sont tous phew, and niece are all
morts, dead.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The book, paper, pencil, and penknife, which
papier, m. crayon, m. canif, m.
 you lent² me¹, are excellent. --- The
avez prêté, p.p. me, pro. excellent, adj.
 pen, ruler, inkhorn and grammar which my bro-
règle, f. écritoire, f.

ther has bought, are very good. --- The king,
très, adv.
 queen, prince, and princesses were gone. --- The
étoient, v. sorti, p.p.
 corn, wheat, rye, pease and beans, in a word, all
seigle, m. fève, f. en mot, m.
 the grains which were on the ground,
grain, m. qui, pro. étoient, v. sur, p. terre, f.
 were frozen. -- My father's house, and my uncle's
furent, v. gelé, p.p.
 country-seat are (very much) alike.
château, m. bien, adv. semblable, adj.

When two or more substantives of different genders are immediately followed by an adjective or participle, the French language requires that adjective or participle to agree in gender and number with the last substantive, except those adjectives or participles implying union or collection, such as *joint, uni, réuni, &c.* which follow the foregoing rule: ex.

Il gouverne avec un pouvoir et une autorité absolue, He governs with an absolute power and authority.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

He studies with incredible application and
étudie, v. incroyable, adj.
 courage. --- He who has for his guides
courage, m. Celui, pro. qui, pro. guide, m.
 consummate³ zeal¹ and prudence² deserves
consommé, adj. zèle, m. prudence, f. mérite, v.
 the general esteem and applause of his
estime, f. applaudissement, m. ses, pro.
 fellow-citizens. --- She left the trunk, the
concitoyen, m. laissa, v. coffre, m.
 closet, and the room open. --- I found
cabinet, m. chambre, f. ouvert, p.p. ai trouvé, p.p.
 the doors, the windows and the shutters, shut. ---
porte, f. fenêtre, f. volets, m. fermé, p.p.

We saw the children, father, and mother, well
vîmes, v.
 united. - - - When we arrived on the fron-
réuni, p.p. Quand, c. arrivâmes, v. fron-
 tiers, we found the soldiers, the officers,
nière, f. trouvâmes, v. soldat, m. officier, m.
 and the general in chief, assembled, and
en chef, m. assemblé, p.p.
 (drawn up) in (battle array.)
rangé, p.p. en, p. bataille, f.

THE PLACE OF THE ADJECTIVE IN A SENTENCE.

Some adjectives are always placed before their substantives, and others after them; but there is a kind of adjectives, which may either precede or follow their substantives, as the euphony of the sentence requires.

The following must be placed before.

<i>Beau</i> , handsome, fine.	<i>Saint</i> , holy.
<i>Bon</i> , good.	<i>Tout</i> , all.
<i>Brave</i> , brave.	<i>Joli</i> , pretty.
<i>Cher</i> , dear.	<i>Méchant</i> , wicked.
<i>Chétif</i> , vile, poor, mean.	<i>Mauvais</i> , bad.
<i>Galant</i> , well bred.	<i>Meilleur</i> , better.
<i>Grand</i> , great, tall.	<i>Moindre</i> , less.
<i>Gros</i> , big, large.	<i>Petit</i> , little, small.
<i>Honnête</i> , honest, civil.	<i>Vieux</i> , old.
<i>Jeune</i> , young.	<i>Vrai</i> , true.

EXERCISE ON THE FOREGOING ADJECTIVES.

I have seen a handsome lady, who (was
vu, p.p. dame, f. qui, pro.
 speaking) to an old gentleman. - - - He had
parloit, v. gentil-homme, m. Il, pro. avoit, v.
 a fine hat and a pretty sword. - - Your little
chapeau, m. Votre, pro.

sister deserved a better fate. - - I know a young
méritoit, v. destin, m. connois, v.
 man who has a good horse, but a bad stable. - -
cheval, m. écurie, f.
 He¹ has³ lent⁴ it² to an honest man. - - The
prêté, p.p. le, pro.
 apostle Paul was a holy man. - - - My brother has
apôtre, m.
 bought a good watch. - - - Your father was a
acheté, p.p. montre, f. étoit, v.
 brave general, and a well-bred man. - - - You have
avez, v.
 lost all your money. - - - Vile creature, I have
perdu, p.p. créature, f.
 heard your wicked conversation.
entendu, p.p. conversation, f.

Some adjectives have different meanings according as they are placed before or after their substantive, as, *une femme sage*, a wise woman; *une sage femme*, a midwife; and *une grosse femme*, a big woman; *une femme grosse*, a pregnant woman; *un homme honnête*, a civil man; *un honnête homme*, an honest man; a little practice will soon remove any of these apparent difficulties.

The following adjectives must be placed after their substantives.

1. All participles used as adjectives; as,

Une personne reconnoissante, A grateful person.
Du bœuf rôti, Roast beef.

2. All adjectives expressing the *shape* or *form*; as,

Une table ronde, A round table.
Une chambre carrée, A square room.

3. All adjectives expressing the *colour* or *taste*; as,

Un chapeau noir, A black hat.
Un habit rouge, A red coat.
Une pomme douce, A sweet apple.
Une liqueur amère, A bitter liquor.

4. All adjectives expressing the *matter* of which a thing is composed ; as,

<i>Des parties sulfureuses,</i>	Sulphurous parts.
<i>Un corps aérien,</i>	An ariel body.

5. All adjectives expressing the quality of *hearing* and *touching* ; as,

<i>Un instrument sonore,</i>	A sonorous instrument.
<i>Une voix harmonieuse,</i>	An harmonious voice.
<i>Un bois dur,</i>	A hard wood.
<i>Un corps mou,</i>	A soft body.

6. All adjectives expressing the name of nations ; as,

<i>L'empire Romain,</i>	The Roman empire.
<i>La poésie Angloise,</i>	The English poetry.

7. All adjectives, which, when used by themselves, convey the meaning of a substantive, as *rich*, *blind*, &c.

<i>Un homme riche,</i>	A rich man.
<i>Une femme aveugle,</i>	A blind woman.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

An ignorant young man is despised by (every
méprisé, p.p. de, p. tout le
 body.) - - - You have an English hat, and she has a
monde, m. Anglois, adj.
 French gown. -- He reads an Italian proverb. --
François, adj. robe, f. lit, v. Italien, adj. proverbe, m.
 I like (very much) the German tongue and
aime, v. beaucoup, adv. Allemand, adj. langue, f.
 the Spanish dress. - - - (It is) a square place. -
Espagnol, adj. habillement, m. C'est, v. carré, adj. place, f.
 She likes sweet wine. - - Your sister has an har-
aime, v. doux, adj. vin, m.
 monious voice. - - - I have bought a white gown
voix, f. blanc, adj.
 and a black cloak. - - You have a faithful
noir, adj. mantelet, m. fidèle, adj.

servant. - - - - I eat green pease, with
domestique, m. et, f. mange, v. vert, adj.
 boiled mutton. - Bring me a pound and a half
bouilli, p.p. mouton, m. demi, adj.
 of cherries, and half a pound of currants. - We had a
cerise, f. groseille, f. eûmes, v.
 kind reception, and we played at a di-
favorable, adj. accueil, m. jouâmes, v. à, p. di-
 verting game. - He lives in a cold country.
vertissant, adj. jeu, m. demeure, v. froid, adj. pays, m.
 - - You have left the windows and the door
laissé, p.p. fenêtre, f. porte, f.
 open. - - Will you have a bit of roast
∞ morceau, m. rôti, p.p.
 chicken? - - Do you² read¹ the Punic war? - -
poulet, m. ∞ lisez, v. Punique, adj. guerre, f.
 He has made a rash vow. - - Your sister
fait, p.p. téméraire, adj. vœu, m.
 is an agreeable lady. - - I like a grey stuff. - -
agréable, adj. gris, adj. étoffe, f.
 (It was) really a tragical history.
C'étoit, v. réellement, adv. tragique, adj. histoire, f.

When two or more adjectives belong to one substantive, the surest way is to place them after it, with the conjunction *et*, and, before the last; and if an adjective be used in a sentence without a substantive, this adjective must always be rendered in French by the masculine gender.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

We have a just, wise, and bountiful king. - -
juste, adj. sage, adj. bienfaisant, adj.
 Mr. Brown's daughter is with a sincere and
Monsieur, m. sincère, adj.
 generous lady. - - I have a scholar of a solid,
généreux, adj. écolier, m. solide, adj.
 bright, and lively genius. - - The wicked
brillant, adj. vif, adj. esprit, m. méchant, adj.
 shall be punished. - - Miss Preston is a
seront, v. puni, p.p. Mademoiselle, f.

young, handsome, and well-shaped lady. - - She has
bien-fait, adj.
 married a sober, virtuous, and amiable
épousé, p.p. *sobre*, adj. *vertueux*, adj. *aimable*, adj.
 man. - - The good shall be praised. - - The diligent
loué, p.p. *diligent*, adj.
 shall be rewarded.
récompensé, p.p

DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

Adjectives and adverbs are the only kind of words that will admit of different degrees of *more* or *less* in the several qualities of persons or things.

There are two degrees of comparison :

1. *Le comparatif*, the comparative.
2. *Le superlatif*, the superlative.

Some grammarians admit of another degree, which they call *positive* : but this is merely an adjective used in its simple signification, without expressing any increase or diminution : ex. *joli*, pretty ; *aimable*, lovely.

The *comparative* refers to some other person or thing, and shows its *equality*, *excess*, or *defect* : it is therefore of three sorts :

1. *Le comparatif d'égalité*, The comparative by equality.
2. *Le comparatif d'excès*, The comparative by excess.
3. *Le comparatif de défaut*, The comparative by defect.

The comparative by *equality* is formed by placing the adverbs *autant*, as much, as many ; *aussi*, so, or as, before an adjective ; and *que*, as, after it : ex.

<i>Votre oncle a autant d'argent, et autant d'amis que mon père,</i>	Your uncle has as much money, and as many friends as my father.
<i>Ma sœur est aussi ambitieuse que vous,</i>	My sister is as ambitious as you.
<i>Mon frère est aussi savant que le vôtre.</i>	My brother is as learned as yours.

N. B.—From the preceding examples and the following, it will be easily seen that when the adverbs, *tant*, *autant*, as much, as many, *plus*, more, and *moins*, less, are immediately followed by a substantive, that substantive must be preceded by *de*. The learner will also observe that *si* and *aussi*, so, as; generally precede adjectives, when a comparison is made by either; whereas *tant* and *autant* are always followed by a noun or verb, the French conjunction *que*, Englished by either *as*, *than*, or *that*, being the term of the comparison; *plus* or *moins* may precede either an adjective, a noun, or verb.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Alexander was as ambitious as Cæsar. --
était, v. ambitieux, adj. que, c. César, m.
 I am as tall as you. -- My father is as rich
suis, v. haut, adj. riche, adj.
 as yours. -- Miss D. has as much liveliness, and she is
vivacité, f.
 as amiable as her cousin. -- If my father were
sa, pro. cousine, f. Si, c. était, v.
 as rich as my uncle, he (would make) a better use
oncle, m. ferait, v. usage, m.
 of his riches. -- We have as many books as
ses, pro. autant, adv.
 your brothers, and they are as learned as we. ---
vos, pro. sont, v. nous, pro.
 I am as rich as you, and as honest and civil as
riche, adj.
 my companions.
compagnon, m.

The comparative by excess is formed by placing the adverb *plus*, more, before an adjective: ex.

Sa cousine a plus de livres que moi, et est plus savante que vous, Her cousin has more books than I, and is more learned than you.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Miss A. is handsomer but more learned than
mais, c. que, c.

her sisters. - - Lucia is taller and more proud
Lucie, f. orgueilleux, adj.
 than her little cousin. - - - His sister is more
sa, pro. Sa, pro.
 covetous than he. - - - Nothing is pleasanter
avare, adj. lui, pro. Rien ne, adv. agréable, adj.
 to the mind than the light of truth. - - -
esprit, m. lumière, f. vérité, f.
 Nothing is more lovely than virtue, and
aimable, adj.
 nothing is more desirable than wisdom. - - -
désirable, adj. sagesse, f.
 My daughter is taller than your son by two inches. - -
de pouce, m.
 Your brother is taller than you by the² whole¹ head³. - -
tête, f.
 In winter the roads are always worse than
En hiver, m. chemin, m. plus mauvais, adj.
 in summer.
été, m.

The *comparative by defect* is formed by placing the adverb *moins*, less, before an adjective; or *tant*, so much, so many; or *si*, so; with the negation *ne pas*, or *point*, not; or *ne, ni*, neither, nor, before them: ex.

<i>Votre cousine est moins noble</i>	Your cousin is less noble
<i>que vous,</i>	than you.
<i>Il n'est pas si orgueilleux que</i>	He is not so proud as his
<i>sa sœur,</i>	sister.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Mrs. P*** is less polite than her daughter.
Madame, f. poli, adj.
 but her daughter (is not) so revengeful as she.
n'est pas, adv. vindicatif, adj.
 You are² not³ so dutiful as your brother.
êtes, v. ne pas, adv. obéissant, adj.
 My father is not so rich as yours, but he has
le vôtre, pro.

not so much self-love. --- Miss Goodwill has less
amour-propre, m.

wit than her mother. -- Paris (is not) so populous as
peuplé, adj.

London.—Your companion is neither so prudent, nor
ni

so circumspect as you.

circonspect, adj.

It must be observed, that in sentences in which the above adverbs *more* or *less* are repeated to express a comparison, the definite article *the*, preceding either, is totally suppressed in French: as,

Plus on est pauvre, moins on The poorer people are, the
a d'embarras, less care they have.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The more a thing is difficult, the more honour-
chose, f. *difficile*, adj. *hono-*

able³ it¹ is². -- The less you give to your chil-
drable, adj. *elle*, pro. *donnez*, v.

dren, the less they spend. --- The¹ richer⁴ they²
ils, pro. *dépensent*, v.

are³, the more covetous they are. -- The more a
avare, adj.

young man studies, the more learned he grows,
étudie, v. *savant*, adj. *devient*, v.

and the more respected he is. -- The more a
respecté, p.p.

drunkard drinks, the more thirsty he is. ---
ivrogne, m. *boit*, v. *altéré*, adj.

The more odious laziness is, the more we
odieux, adj. *paresse*, f.

should avoid² it¹. --- The less you apply,
devrions, v. *éviter*, v. *la*, pro. *vous vous appliquez*, v.

the less you learn. -- The more they know² you¹,
apprenez, v. *connoîtront*, v.

the less they will esteem² you¹.
estimeront, v.

The above comparative adverbs, *si*, *aussi*, *tant*, *autant*, *plus*, and *moins*, must be repeated, in French, before

each adjective, noun, verb, or adverb, in the sentences
ex.

<i>Votre frère est aussi savant</i>	Your brother is <i>as</i> learned
<i>et aussi éclairé que mon</i>	and enlightened <i>as</i> my
<i>cousin,</i>	cousin.
<i>M. Robert n'a ni tant de</i>	Mr. Robert has neither <i>so</i>
<i>bien ni tant d'esprit que</i>	<i>much</i> wealth nor wit <i>as</i>
<i>M. Dubois,</i>	Mr. Dubois.

EXERCISE ON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

My father has *as* many apple - trees
autant, adv. *pommier, m.* *∞*
 and pear - trees in his orchard *as* (there are)
poirier, m. ∞ *verger, m.* *il y en a, v.*
 in yours. - - - His eldest brother will be more
ainé, adj. *sera, v.*
 attentive, industrious, and rich than he. - - -
attentif, adj. *industrieux, adj.* *lui, pro.*
 Miss S*** has less wit, less liveliness, and become
vivacité, f. *agré-*
 ingness than her sister. - - She has *as* much virtue.
mens, m. pl.
 and good sense *as* beauty and modesty. - - My
sens, m. *Mon, pro.*
 cousin is *as* merry, lively, and amiable *as* his
gai, adj. *enjoué, adj.* *ses, pro.*
 school-fellows.
compagnon, m.

The same rule is to be observed with respect to the
adverbs used in forming the superlative degree.

The three following adjectives are comparative by
themselves, *meilleur*, better; *pire*, worse; and *moindre*,
less; which signify *plus bon*, *plus mauvais*, *plus petit*.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The watch which my grand father has bought
montre, f. *que, pro.* *grand-père, m.* *achetée, p. p.*

is better than the clock which he gave to
 pendule, f. *à donnée, p.p.*
 my mother. - - - - My friend's buckles are better than
 mère, f. *boucle, f.*
 those of his uncle, but mine are worse
celles, pro. *oncle, m.* *les miennes, pro.*
 than his. - - - - - The life of a slave is
 les siennes, pro. *vie, f.* *esclave, m.*
 ten times worse than death itself. - - - - The
dix fois, adv. *mort, f.* *même, adv.*
 pain which I endure is less than that which
peine, f. *souffre, v.* *celle, pro.* *qui, pro.*
 is inflicted on galley-slaves.
infligée, p.p. *aux galérien, m.*

The *superlative* expresses the highest degree of any quality. There are two kinds of superlatives: 1. The *relative* which expresses the quality of a person or thing above all others of the same kind. In this case, one of the following articles, *le, la, les, de, du, de la, des, à, au, à la, aux*, precedes the adverbs *plus, most, mieux, best, moins, least*, before an adjective; or the adjectives *meilleur, best, moindre, least, pire, worse*: ex.

Votre sœur est la plus belle Your sister is the hand-
et la meilleure femme de somest and best woman
la ville, in the town.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The vine is one of the most useful* and agree-
 vigne, f. *utile, adj.*
 able gifts of Providence. - - - Virtue is the most pre-
 don, m. *Providence, f.* *pré-*
 cious² thing¹ in the world. - - - The lion is the
cieux, adj. *chose, f.* *du monde, m.*
 strongest and most courageous of all animals. - - -
fort, adj. *courageux, adj.* *animal, m.*
 (There is) the handsomest lady in London. - - She is
Voilà, adv. *de*
 so touchy, that she will not bear the least
bourru, adj. *veut, v.* *souffrir, v.*

* See the gender of adjectives, p. 60.

joke. - - - Miss P. is the mildest, politest, and most
raillerie, f. *doux, adj.* *poli, adj.*

affable of all her sisters. - - - Ingratitude is
affable, adj. *ses, pro.*

the greatest of all vices. - - - If France were as rich
vice, m. *étoit, v.*

as England, (it would be) the best country in the
ce seroit, v. *pays, m.*

world.*

monde, m.

The *absolute* simply expresses the quality of a person or thing in its highest degree. This happens when one of the adverbs *très, fort, bien*, very, *infiniment*, infinitely, precedes an adjective; and when any of the comparatives by excess or defect are preceded by one of the possessive pronouns *mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur*, &c. they become superlatives: ex.

Votre oiseau est très-joli, Your bird is very pretty.

Vous êtes mon meilleur ami, You are my best friend.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

God is a being infinitely great and perfect. - - -
être, m. *parfait, adj.*

I am your most humble and obedient
très, adv. *obéissant, adj.*

servant. - - - The front of your house is very
serviteur, m. *façade, f.*

beautiful. - - - You are very good, but your brother
beau, adj.

is very wicked. - - - My uncle has a very fine coun-
méchant, adj. *cam-*

try - house, and very spacious² gardens¹. - - -
pagne, f. *spacieux, adj.*

* It may be observed in some of these examples, that the preposition *in*, following an adjective in the superlative degree, must be rendered in French by one of these articles *de, du, de la, des*, according to the gender and number of the substantive to which it belongs. The preposition *by*, when it follows an adjective in the comparative degree, is rendered by *de* only.

My best friend is dead. - - - Our common
Notre, pro. commun, adj.
 enemy has the most inveterate² hatred¹ against
invétééré, adj. haine, f. contre, p.
 this country. - - - Their least embarrassments
ce, pro. Leurs, pro. embarras, m.
 make their greatest delight. - - - Pride and
font, v. délices, f. pl. Orgueil, m.
 passion are his least defects.
colère, f. ses, pro. défaut, m.

OF NUMBERS.

There are two kinds of numbers: 1st, The *absolute*, which simply relates the number of the things spoken of, viz.

<i>Un,</i>	One.
<i>Deux,</i>	Two.
<i>Trois,</i>	Three.
<i>Quatre,</i>	Four.
<i>Cinq,</i>	Five.
<i>Six,</i>	Six.
<i>Sept,</i>	Seven.
<i>Huit,</i>	Eight.
<i>Neuf,</i>	Nine.
<i>Dix,</i>	Ten.
<i>Onze,</i>	Eleven.
<i>Douze,</i>	Twelve.
<i>Treize,</i>	Thirteen.
<i>Quatorze,</i>	Fourteen.
<i>Quinze,</i>	Fifteen.
<i>Seize,</i>	Sixteen.
<i>Dix-sept,</i>	Seventeen.
<i>Dix-huit,</i>	Eighteen.
<i>Dix-neuf,</i>	Nineteen.
<i>Vingt,</i>	Twenty.
<i>Vingt et un,</i>	Twenty-one.
<i>Vingt-deux,</i>	Twenty-two.
<i>Vingt-trois, &c.</i>	Twenty-three, &c.
<i>Trente,</i>	Thirty.

Trente et un,
Trente-deux, &c.
Quarante,
Cinquante,
Soixante,
Soixante et un,
Soixante et deux, &c.
Soixante et dix,
Soixante et onze, &c.
Quatre-vingt,
Quatre-vingt un,
Quatre-vingt deux, &c.
Quatre-vingt dix, &c.
Cent,
Cent un, &c.

Deux cens,
Trois cens,
Neuf cens,
Mille, mil,†
Deux mille,
Trois mille, &c.
Cent mille, &c.

Neuf cent mille,
Un million,

Thirty-one.
 Thirty-two, &c.
 Forty.
 Fifty.
 Sixty.
 Sixty-one.
 Sixty-two, &c.
 Seventy.
 Seventy-one, &c.
 Eighty.
 Eighty-one.
 Eighty-two, &c.
 Ninety, &c.
 A or one* hundred.
 A or one* hundred and
 one, &c.
 Two hundred.
 Three hundred.
 Nine hundred.
 A or one* thousand.
 Two thousand.
 Three thousand, &c.
 A or one* hundred thou-
 sand, &c.
 Nine hundred thousand.
 A million.

These *absolute numbers* are declined with the article indefinite *de*, *à*, and are always placed before the substantive to which they are joined; and they are invariable in their form, except *quatre-vingt*, eighty; *cent*, a hundred; and *million*, a million; which take an *s* in their plural, when immediately followed by a substantive: ex.

Quatre-vingts femmes,
Deux cens hommes.

Eighty women.
 Two hundred men.

* It will be seen by the following, that the English particle *a* or *one* is not expressed in French: ex.

Je l'ai vu et lui ai parlé cent fois, mille fois, I have seen him and spoken to him a hundred times, a thousand times.

† Mentioning the date of the year, we must write, *mil*, and not *mille*: ex. *L'an mil huit-cent quinze*, the year 1815.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I was in the company of seven gentlemen and
compagnie, f.
 nine ladies. - - He has spoken to three officers and
parlé, p.p.
 two generals. - - If I had a hundred guineas I would^d
avois, v. guinée, f. en
 lend^d you^l eighty. - - The army of our
prêterois, v. armée, f. nos, pro.
 allies was composed of a hundred thousand
allié, m. composée, p.p.
 men of foot, and twenty thousand of horse. - - -
infanterie, f. cavalerie, f.
 They took fifteen hundred men prisoners,
priront, v. prisonnier, m.
 killed four thousand, wounded a thousand,
en tuèrent, v. en blessèrent, v.
 and (carried away) above two millions in specie. -
emportèrent, v. plus de espèce, f.
 The battle (was fought) in one thousand eight hun-
bataille, f. se livra, v. en
 dred and fourteen, at three o'clock in the morning.
heure, f. du matin.

It must be observed, that, when the number *un*, one, comes after *vingt*, twenty, *trente*, thirty, *quarante*, forty, &c.; the substantive, relating to those two numbers taken together, is put in the singular in French, though in the plural in English; and, when the noun singular, in French, immediately following the *unit*, is attended by an adjective, that adjective must be put in the plural: ex.

<i>Vingt-et-un homme,</i>	One and twenty men.
<i>Vingt-et-un an accomplis,</i>	Full one and twenty years old.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I have found a purse in which (there were)
bourse, f. laquelle, pro. il y avoit, v.

one and thirty guineas, one and forty crowns, and
guinée, f. écu, m.
 one and twenty shillings. - - - I saw one and fifty
chelin, m. ai vu, v.
 men assembled before St. James's palace. - -
St. Jâques, m.

When my brother died he was one and thirty
mourut, v. avoit, v.
 years old. - - - Mr. P*** will pay² ~~me~~¹ one
payera, v. me, pro.
 and sixty guineas well told. - - - I received
bien, adv. comptées, p.p. ai reçu, v.
 yesterday by the last mail one and forty
hier, adv. derniere, adj. malle, f.
 letters well sealed, and very interesting.
lettre, f. cachetées, p.p. importantes, adj.

N. B. Such were the opinion and decision of the French Academy some years ago ; but now the best authors write, *vingt-et-un ans accomplis, trente et une guinées bien comptées.*

However, custom will have us say, in the following instances,

Vingt-et-un chevaux, One and twenty horses.
Trente-et-un volumes, One and thirty volumes.

The cardinal numbers must be used in French when speaking of the days of the month, though the ordinal be used in English ; but we must say, *le premier*, the first, speaking of the first day of every month : as,

Le premier de Mai, The first of May.
Le deux de Novembre, The second of November.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My friend will come to see² us¹ on the fifth of
viendra, v. voir, v.
 next² month¹. - - Lady - day falls
prochain, adj. mois, m. Notre dame, f. jour, m. tombe, v.
 on the twenty-fifth of March. - - In the leap²
Mars, m. bissextile, adj.

year¹ the month of February has one day more,
année, f. Février, m. de plus, adv.
 which is the twenty-ninth. - - The first of November
qui, pro. Novembre, m.
 is all-saints - day, and the fifth of the same month
la toussaint, f. même, adj.
 is the day of the Gun - powder plot.
des poudres, pl. conspiracy, f.
 Come on the first day of July.
Venez, v. Juillet, m.

2. The ordinal numbers. This class of numerals, beside the simple notation, signifies the order or rank of things, viz.

<i>Le premier ou unième,</i>	The first.
<i>Le second ou deuxième,</i>	The second.
<i>Le troisième,</i>	The third.
<i>Le quatrième,</i>	The fourth.
<i>Le cinquième,</i>	The fifth.
<i>Le sixième,</i>	The sixth.
<i>Le septième,</i>	The seventh.
<i>Le huitième,*</i>	The eighth.
<i>Le neuvième,</i>	The ninth.
<i>Le dixième,</i>	The tenth.
<i>Le onzième,*</i>	The eleventh.
<i>Le douzième,</i>	The twelfth.
<i>Le treizième,</i>	The thirteenth.
<i>Le quatorzième,</i>	The fourteenth.
<i>Le quinzième,</i>	The fifteenth.
<i>Le seizième,</i>	The sixteenth.
<i>Le dix-septième,</i>	The seventeenth.
<i>Le dix-huitième,</i>	The eighteenth.
<i>Le dix-neuvième,</i>	The nineteenth.
<i>Le vingtième,</i>	The twentieth.
<i>Le vingt-et-unième,</i>	The twenty-first.
<i>Le vingt-deuxième, &c.</i>	The twenty-second, &c.
<i>Le trentième,</i>	The thirtieth.
<i>Le trente-deuxième, &c.</i>	The thirty-second, &c.
<i>Le quarantième,</i>	The fortieth.

* No elision is to be made in the article before *once, onzième; huit, huitième*; for we say, *le, du, au, la, de la, à la, &c. once, onzième, &c.*

<i>Le cinquantième,</i>	The fiftieth.
<i>Le soixantième,</i>	The sixtieth.
<i>Le soixante-et-dixième,</i>	The seventieth.
<i>Le quatre-vingtième,</i>	The eightieth.
<i>Le centième,</i>	The hundredth.
<i>Le cent unième,</i>	The hundred and first.
<i>Le cent deuxième, &c.</i>	The hundred and second, &c.
<i>Le deux centième,</i>	The two hundredth.
<i>Le millièmè,</i>	The thousandth.

These ordinal numbers are declined with the article definite *le, la, &c.* and are placed before their substantives : ex.

Le premier jour du mois, The first day of the month.

EXERCISE ON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULE.

On the eleventh of June I received twelve letters,
en Juin, ai reçu, v.
 but the eleventh² has afforded³ me¹ more
procuré, p.p. me, pro. plus, adv.
 pleasure than the others. - - - Mrs. B. is the fifth
autre, pro. Madame, f.
 lady whom I saw to day. - - - The spring
que, pro. ai vue, v. aujourd'hui, adv. printemps, m.
 begins on the twenty-first or twenty-second of
commence, v.
 March. - - - He cannot spend the sixth
Mars, m. ne peut pas, v. dépenser, v.
 part of his fortune. - - - The eleventh of No-
partie, f. sa, pro. fortune, f.
 vember, which is the eleventh month of the year,
année, f.
 was the dullest² day¹ of the² whole¹ month³.
triste, adj. tout, adj.

Speaking of sovereigns, we use the *absolute* number in French, though the ordinal be used in English, except first and second; but we place it after the substantive, as in English, without expressing the article *the*: ex.

George trois,
Louis Seize,
Henri Quatre,

George the third.
Lewis the Sixteenth.
Henry the Fourth.

Henri Premier,
George Second,

Henry the First.
George the Second.

and not, *Henri Un, George Deux.*

We also say, for the following only,

Charles Quint,
Sixte Quint,

Charles the Fifth.
Sixtus the Fifth.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Edward the Sixth, the son of Henry the
Edouard, m. fils, m.
Eighth, and the grand - son of Henry the Seventh,
petit, adj.
was² ¹but³ nine years old when he began
avoit, v. ne que, an, m. quand, c. commença, v.
to reign. - - - - Henry the Fifth, King of England,
à régner, v. roi, m.
the son of Henry the Fourth, and father of Henry
the Sixth, married Catharine, the daughter of
épousa, v. Cathérine, f.
Charles the Sixth, king of France; conquered the
conquit, v.
greatest part of that kingdom, and died
grand, adj. partie, f. ce, pro. royaume, m. mourut, v.
(in the) midst of his victories. - - (Long live)
au milieu ses, pro. victoire, f. Vive, v.
George the Third, grand - son to George the
petit, adj.
Second. - - - Charles the Fifth, king of Spain, and
roi, m.
Sixtus the Fifth, pope of Rome, were two
pape, m. étoient, v.
great men.
grand, adj.

The definite article *the* is also suppressed in French before the ordinal number, when it is preceded by a noun used to quote a chapter, article, or page of a book;

but, should the ordinal number precede the noun, the construction is the same in French as in English, and the article is expressed: ex.

<i>Livre troisième,</i>	Book the third.
<i>Le troisième livre,</i>	The third book.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

What you (look for) you (will find²) it¹
Ce que, pro. cherchez, v. trouverez, v. le, pro.
 in the Second Book of Samuel, chapter the
Samuel, m. chapitre, m.
 third, verse the ninth, page the first, and
verset, m. page, f.
 line the tenth. - - - We read in Telemachus,
ligne, f. lisons, v. Télémaque, m.
 book the seventh, page the hundred and twenty-
 fifth, that Mentor pushed Telemachus into the sea,
que poussa, v. mer, f.
 and threw³ himself¹ (into it²) afterward with
jeta, v. se, pro. y, adv. ensuite, adv.
 him. - - - Our master forgives the first time,
lui, pro. Notre, pro. pardonne, v. fois, f.
 threatens the second, and always² punishes¹
menace, v. toujours, adv. punit, v.
 the third.

RECAPITULATORY or promiscuous EXERCISES upon all the preceding RULES.

Ignorance is the mother of admiration,
Ignorance, f. est, v. mère, f. admiration, f.
 error, and superstition. - - - The covetous de-
erreur, f. superstition, f. avare, adj. mé-
 spise the poor. - - - Humility is the basis of
prisent, v. pauvre, adj. Humilité, f. base, f.
 Christian virtues. - Pride is generally the effect
Chrétien, adj. Orgueil, m. effet, m.
 of ignorance. - - Give me some bread, meat.
Donnez, v. moi, pro.

turnips, and water. - - Merit and favor are
navet, m. Mérite, m. faveur, f. sont, v.
 the two springs of envy. - - Interest, pleasure,
source, f. envie, f. Intérêt, m.

and glory, are the three motives of the actions
motif, m.

and conduct of men. - - Is^a it^a 'not'^a
conduite, f. Est, v. ce, pro. ne pas, adv.

Peter's book? - - Your father is gone to London,
allé, p.p.

where he has bought a few horses and a great many
 cows, which he intends to send to Canada or
vache, f. que, pro. se propose, v. d'envoyer, v.

Jamaica. - - The father's house and the son's gar-
maison, f. jar-

den (are adjoining.) - - He found the windows
din, m. se joignent, v. trouva, v.

and the door shut. - - Truth is the bond of
Vérité, f. lien, m.

union and the basis of human happiness :
union, f. humain, adj. bonheur, m.

without it (there is no) confidence in
sans, p. elle, pro. il n'y a point confiance, f.

friendship, and no security in promises. - -
amitié, f. point, adv. sûreté, f. promesse, f.

The love of liberty and independence is the
amour, m. liberté, f.

character of noble minds. - - Iron, steel,
caractère, m. âme, f. Fer, m. acier, m.

and brass are more useful than gold and
cuivre, m. utile, adj.

silver. - - The smith has at last repaired
serrurier, m. enfin, adv. réparé, p.p.

the two jacks, and the cook (is
tourne-broche, m. cuisinière, f. fait

roasting) the meat. - - I have seen the inside of the
rôtir, v. dedans, m.

church. - - Bring me my powder-box, and
église, f. ma, pro.

my toupee-iron. - - I take a lesson three times
mon, pro. prends

a week. - - The study of grammar is² ¹neither² so
 étude, f. *ni, c.*
 dry nor so dull as (it is thought.) - - -
sec, adj. *triste, adj.* *on se l'imagine, v.*
 Have prudence and patience, and you (will have)
Ayez, v. *aurez, v.*
 success. - - - - A good conscience is to the soul
succès, m. *conscience, f.* *âme, f.*
 what health is to the body. - - Merit and
ce que, pro. *santé, f.* *corps, m.*
 virtue are the only source of true
 unique, adj. *véritable, adj.*
 nobility. - - - Religion, commerce, and arms
noblesse, f. *Religion, f.* *commerce, m.* *arme, f.*
 are proper instructions for a young prince. - -
 propre, adj. *instruction, f.* *à*
 Her father has been made a knight
Son, pro. *été, p.p.* *fait, p.p.* *chevalier, m.*
 of the order of the Bath, and her grandfather
 ordre, m. *Bain, m.*
 was a knight of the order of the Garter. - - -
étoit, v. *Jarrettière, f.*
 He has not so much profit, but more honor. - - -
 tant, adv. *profit, m.*
 Fortune's favours are seldom the prize of
 faveur, f. *rarement, adv.* *prix, m.*
 virtue. - - - Gaming is the son of avarice, and the father
 Jeu, m.
 of despair. - - This cloth is equal to silk. -
 désespoir, m. *Ce, pro.* *drap, m.* *comparable, adj.* *soie, f.*
 I see the coast of England. - - - A forest twenty
 vois, v. *côte, f.* *forêt, f.*
 miles long and eleven wide. - - - The example of a
 mille, m. *exemple, m.*
 good life is a lesson for the rest of man-
 pour, p. *reste, m.* *genre*
 kind. - - The French fleet was destroyed
humain, m. *François, adj.* *flotte, f.* *fut, v.* *détruite, p.p.*
 by the brave Admiral Nelson, on the first of August,
 Amiral, m. *so* *Août, m.*
 one thousand seven hundred and ninety eight. - - - -

The eldest son of the king of England
aîné, adj.

bears the title of Prince of Wales as
porte, v. *titre*, m. *Galles*, pl. *comme*, adv.

presumptive heir to the crown. - - Lewis
présomptif, adj. *héritier*, m. *couronne*, f. *Louis*

the sixteenth was the grand-son of Lewis the fif-
petit, adj.

teenth. - - William, surnamed the Con-
Guillaume, m. *surnommé*, p.p. *Con-*

queror, King of England and Duke of Nor-
quérant, m. *Duc*, m. *Nor-*

mandy, was one of the greatest generals of the
mandie, f.

eleventh century. - - - He (was born) at Falaise, and
siècle, m. *naquit*, v. *à*

was the natural son of Robert, Duke of Nor-
naturel, adj.

mandy, and of Arlotte, a furrier's daughter. - - He
fourreur, m. *fille*, f.

died at Hermentrude in France, on the ninth of
mourut, v. *à*

September, one thousand eighty-seven. - - Mrs. Nel-
 son's servant knows the price of all the provisions.

servante, f. *sait*, v. *prix*, m. *dénrée*, f.

- - She bought yesterday some chickens at one shilling
poulet, m. *à*

and three pence a piece. - - She came from America
vint, v.

in three weeks. - - Thomas was formerly a mu-
en, p. *autrefois*, adv. mu-

sician, now he is a dancing - master,
sicien, m. *à présent*, adv. *danse*, f. *maître*, m.

to-morrow he will be a painter. - - This
demain, adv. *sera*, v. *peintre*, m. *Cette*, pro.

water is very agreeable to the smell. - - - - We
odorat, m.

(are going) to Coxheath, to see the camp. - - I
allons, v. *en voir*, v. *camp*, m.

have in my ward-robe five coats, sixteen waistcoats

twenty-two pair of stockings, and forty-six hand-
 kerchiefs. - - - The road to Croydon is very bad
choir, m. chemin, m. mou-
 in winter. - - Bring us good wine, good beer,
en, p. hiver, m.
 and the oil-bottle. - - The front of the king's pa-
façade, f.
 lace (is not) so beautiful as I thought. - - Gene-
n'est, pas croyois, v. Gén-
 erosity excites admiration. - - Charles the Second,
rosité, f. excite, v. admiration, f.
 the son of Philip the fourth, the grandson of Philip
Philippe
 the third, and the great grand-child of Philip the
arrière, petit - fils, m.
 second, left his kingdom to Philip the fifth. - -
laissa, v. son, pro.
 On the eighteenth of February, one thousand four
∞ Février,
 hundred and seventy-eight, the Duke of Clarence,
 brother to King Edward the fourth, was drowned in
frère, m. fut, v. noyé, p.p.
 a butt of malmsey-wine. - The inhabitants of the
tonneau, m. malvoisie, f. habitant, m.
 city of Dublin have presented a petition to
ville, f. ont, v. présenté, p.p. adresse, f.
 the king. It was signed by one-and-
Elle, pro. étoit, v. signé, p.p. par, p.
 twenty knights and above two hundred citizens.
plus de, adv. citoyen, m.
 - - Good cider is preferable to bad wine. - That
cidre, m.
 man always wears a green hat, a white shirt, red
a, v. chemise, f.
 shoes, and black stockings. He has many children
bas, m. bien, adv.
 and plenty of money. - - - The longer the
beaucoup, adv. argent, m. long, adj.
 day is, the shorter is the night. - - You have a fine

hat. - - Shame is a mixture of the grief and
Honte, f. mélange, m. chagrin, m.
 fear which infamy causes. - - Religion,
crainte, f. que, pro. infamie, f. cause, v.
 morality, government, fine arts, in a word,
morale, f. gouvernement, m. en, p.
 (every thing) is overturned. - - Homer was the
tout renversé, p. p. fut, v.
 first poet who personified the divine at-
poète, m. personnifia, v. divin, adj. at-
 tributes, human passions, and physical
tribut, m. humain, adj. physique, adj.
 causes. - - Pride and vanity are often the
vanité, f. souvent, adj.
 source of the misfortunes of mankind. - - We sell
malheur, m. vendons, v.
 good bread, excellent meat, and very large
gros, adj.
 fishes; but¹ we² have⁴ ³neither⁵ gold nor
poisson, m. mais, c. avons, v.
 silver. - - (Is there) any beer in the cellar? - -
Y a-t-il dans, p. cave, f.
 Mrs. B. is a good, virtuous, prudent, and
vertueux, adj.
 generous lady: she has a daughter as beautiful as an
fille, f.
 angel, but she has neither so much docility nor af-
ange, m.
 fability as her cousin. - - Pindar (was born) at
Pindare, m. nâquit, v.
 Thebes, a city of Greece. - Malta is a small
Grèce, f. Malthe, f.
 island, but it produces corn, cotton, honey,
île, f. elle, pro. produit, v. coton, m. miel, m.
 figs, and the finest oranges in the world. - - The
figue, f. beau, adj. orange, f.
 inhabitants of that fine country are all catholics,
 and go every Sunday to hear high mass. - - The
vont, v. Dimanche, m. ∞
 pleasure of the mind is greater than the pleasure

of the body, and the diseases of the mind are
corps, m. maladie, f.
 more pernicious than the diseases of the body. --
pernicieux, adj.

Health, honors, and fortune, united together,
Santé, f. uni, p.p. ensemble, adv.
 cannot satisfy the heart of man. ---
ne peuvent, v. satisfaire, v. cœur, m.

(It is) in the sixth page of the second book, chapter
C'est, v.

the third. -- Miss W's. father, a banker in the
 Strand, is one of the richest men in town, but
Strand, m.

she is prouder and more haughty than
orgueilleux, adj. hautain, adj.
 if she were the handsomest woman in Europe. --
*étoit, v. **

Their son arrived yesterday at Portsmouth from
Leur, pro.

Peru and Martinico, in the St. George, a ninety-
Perou Martinique,

gun ship. --- Hypocrisy is a homage which
canon, m. vaisseau, m. hommage, m. que, pro.

vice pays to virtue. -- A judicious answer
vice, m. rend, v. judicieux, adj. réponse, f.

does more honor than a brilliant repartee. --
fait, v. brillant, adj. repartie, f.

Give me a knife and fork. -- My father has bought
 one-and-thirty fine grey horses. -- (He is) an
gris, adj. C'est, v.

intrepid man, and a man of honor and pro-
intrépide, adj. pro-

bity. -- Mr. C***, the queen's jeweller, has a
bité, f. jouailler, m.

very prudent wife, and the most faithful, indus-
fidèle, adj. indus-

trious, and honest servant in London. --
*trieux, adj. honnête, adj. **

* See the remarks on the prepositions *in* and *by*, in the note, in the degrees of comparison, page 66.

He found beauty, youth, riches, wisdom,
trouva, v. jeunesse, f.
 and even virtue, united in her per-
même, adv. réuni, p.p. sa, pro.
 son. - Thomas has discretion, but he has no
discrétion, f. ne point, adv.
 wit. - - They have a quantity of apples and pears. - -
quantité, f.
 Vienna, the capital of the empire of Germany,
Vienne, f. Allemagne, f.
 is a fine city. - - The more pleasing plays
agréable, adj. spectacle, m.
 are, the more dangerous they are. - - The rich,
dangereux, adj.
 the poor, the young, the old, the learned, and
savant, adj.
 the ignorant, are all subject to death. - - - True
sujet, adj. mort, f. Vrai, adj.
 friends are as rare as good kings. - - - The
rare, adj.
 famous mine of Potosi, in Peru, is above
fameux, adj. mine, f. plus, adv.
 two hundred and fifty fathoms deep. - - Henry the first,
toise, f. Henri
 king of England, and brother to William Rufus,
le Roux,
 died the richest prince in Europe. - - Paul is taller
mourut, v.
 than you by an inch, but Mrs. Nichol's brother is
** pouce, m.*
 the tallest of all.

SECT. III.

OF PRONOUNS.

There are seven sorts of PRONOUNS ;

1. *Les Pronoms personnels,* Pronouns personal.
2. *Les Pronoms conjonctifs,* Pronouns conjunctive.

* See the Note, page 66.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 3. <i>Les Pronoms possessifs,</i> | Pronouns possessive. |
| 4. <i>Les Pronoms démonstratifs,</i> | Pronouns demonstrative. |
| 5. <i>Les Pronoms relatifs,</i> | Pronouns relative. |
| 6. <i>Les Pronoms interrogatifs,</i> | Pronouns interrogative. |
| 7. <i>Les Pronoms indéfinis,</i> | Pronouns indefinite. |

OF PRONOUNS PERSONAL.

Pronouns personal are those which directly denote the persons, and supply the place of them.

There are three persons :

The first is the person who speaks : *ex.*

<i>Je parle,</i>	I speak.
<i>Nous parlons,</i>	We speak.

The second is the person spoken to : *ex.*

<i>Tu parles,</i>	Thou speakest.
<i>Vous parlez,</i>	You speak.

The third is the person spoken of : *ex.*

<i>Il or elle parle,</i>	He or she speaks.
<i>Ils or elles parlent,</i>	They speak.

Both Genders.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Je or moi, I.</i>	<i>Nous, we.</i>
<i>Tu or toi, thou.</i>	<i>Vous, you or ye.</i>

Masculine.

<i>Il or lui, he, it.</i>	<i>Ils, or eux, they.</i>
---------------------------	---------------------------

Feminine.

<i>Elle, she, it.</i>	<i>Elles, they.</i>
-----------------------	---------------------

These pronouns are never to be used but as nominatives to the verbs. The rest are declined with the article indefinite : *ex.*

First Person for both Genders.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
G. A. <i>de moi, of or from me,</i>	<i>de nous, of or from us.</i>
Dat. <i>à moi, to me,</i>	<i>à nous, to us.</i>
Acc. <i>moi, me.</i>	<i>nous, us.</i>

Second Person, for both Genders.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

G. A. <i>de toi</i> , of or from thee,	<i>de vous</i> , of or from you.
Dat. <i>à toi</i> , to thee,	<i>à vous</i> , to you.
Acc. <i>toi</i> , thee.	<i>vous</i> , you.

Third Person.

SINGULAR.

G. A. <i>de lui</i> , of or from him,	<i>d'elle</i> , of or from her.*
Dat. <i>à lui</i> , to him,	<i>à elle</i> , to her,*
Acc. <i>lui</i> , him.	<i>elle</i> , her.*

PLURAL.

Masculine.

Feminine.

G. A. <i>d'eux</i> , of or from them,	<i>d'elles</i> , of or from them.
Dat. <i>à eux</i> , to them,	<i>à elles</i> , to them.
Acc. <i>eux</i> , them,	<i>elles</i> , them.

There are two other pronouns of the third person,
viz.

SINGULAR and PLURAL. Both Genders.

1st. G. A. <i>de soi</i> , of or from	{ one's self, himself, herself, themselves.
Dat. <i>à soi</i> , to one's self, himself, &c.	
Acc. <i>soi</i> , one's self, himself, &c.	

N. B. Though it have been said, that the personal pronouns are used for the names of persons, it must not thence be concluded, that they are never employed for the names of animals or inanimate objects: this seldom happens in the first and second persons; but the personal pronouns, *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, may denote every object in nature, either animate or inanimate: ex.

<i>Ce chien est fort beau, mais</i>	That dog is very handsome,
<i>il est trop gras,</i>	but it is too fat.

* *Her*, when standing by itself, is to be rendered by *elle*, *la*, or *lui*; but, if joined to a noun, by the pronoun possessive, *son*, *sa*, *ses*.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

This picture is very old, but it is
Ce, pro. portrait, m. ancien, adj.
 well painted. - - The house which I bought
bien, adv. peint, p.p. que, pro. ai acheté, p.p.
 is well situated, but I assure² you¹ that it
situé, adj. assure, v. que, adv.
 cost² me¹ much. - - - The books which
coûte, v. me, pro. beaucoup, adv.
 you saw in my library are good
vîtes, v. ma, pro. bibliothèque, f.
 books, but they are badly bound. - - - Your
mal, adv. relié, p.p. Vos, pro.
 buckles would be much more in the fashion, if
boucle, f. seroient, v. à mode, f.
 they were smaller. - - - My hat is quite
étoient, v. Mon, pro. tout, adv.
 new, but it is too big. - - - Their
neuf, adj. trop, adv. grand, adj. Leur, pro.
 coach is old, but it is as good as if
carrosse, m. vieux, adj. si, c.
 it were new.
étoit, v.

2d. The general and indefinite pronoun, *on*, one, is always considered as a nominative of the masculine gender, and can never be used (in French) but in the singular, though the meaning be plural; ex. When we say, *On chante, on mange*, They sing, one eats, or people eat; i. e. some men or women sing, eat.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

People imagine that when they are
On, pro. s'imaginer, v. que quand, adv. est, v.
 rich, they are happy; but they (are mistaken)
heureux, adj. se trompe, v.
 very often; for, the more one has, the
très, adv. souvent, adv. car, c.
 more one wishes to have. - - - When we are
veut, v. en avoir, v.

(raised up) to honors, or we are invested
élevé, p.p. *ou que*, c. *revêtu*, p.p.
 with some dignity, we are to expect
de quelque, adj. *dignité*, f. *doit*, v. *s'attendre*, v.
 to be criticised. - - - (Some persons) reported
à être, *critiqué*, p.p. *On*, pro. *rapporta*, v.
 last week, that in France they
dernière, adj. *semaine*, f.
 talk of peace.
parle, v.

The word *même*, self, is very often joined to the personal pronouns, to denote, in a more special manner, the person spoken of : as,

<i>Moi-même</i> , myself.	<i>Soi-même</i> , one's self.
<i>Toi-même</i> , thyself.	<i>Nous-mêmes</i> , ourselves.
<i>Lui-même</i> , himself.	<i>Vous-mêmes</i> , yourselves.
<i>Elle-même</i> , herself.	<i>Eux-mêmes</i> , or <i>elles-mêmes</i> , themselves.

OBSERVATIONS on the PRONOUNS *Je* and *Moi*, *Tu* and *Toi*, *Il* and *Lui*, *Ils* and *Eux*.

Je and *moi* are used in two different senses, though both in the nominative case ; *Je* is always followed or preceded immediately by a verb to which it is the nominative case, and has no need to be joined to another pronoun : but *moi* always requires to be followed by one pronoun or more, either expressed or understood : ex.

<i>Qui a pris mon livre ?</i>	Who took my book ?
<i>C'est moi,</i>	It is I. That is,
<i>C'est moi qui l'ai pris ;</i>	It is I who took it.

Moi must be used instead of *Je* before an infinitive mood, or at the end of a sentence, when it is intended to express something sudden, as *grief*, &c. ; when *I*, in English, is followed by the pronoun relative *who* or *whom*, or is preceded by the verb *être*, to be, used impersonally, as *c'est*, it is ; and lastly, whenever any difference or distinction is intended between persons ; in which case it must be immediately followed by *Je* : ex.

<i>Moi lui parler !</i>	I speak to him or her !
<i>Moi qui vous aime,</i>	I who love you.

Il étoit à pied et moi j'étois à cheval, *He was on foot, and I was on horseback.*

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Who (was calling²) me¹? - - It was not
appeloit, v. me, pro. Ce, pro. ne pas, adv.
 I. - - The boy wants to speak² to you¹. - - I
désire, v. ∞ parler, v. ∞
 who am older than he, I, go and speak²
âgé, adj. lui, pro. aller, v. ∞
 to him¹! No, I will not go, (let him come)
lui, pro. Non, adv. veux, v. qu'il vienne, v.
 himself. - - - It is I who am to be rewarded
dois, v. ∞ récompensé, p.p.
 instead of him. - - My father commanded the
au lieu lui, pro. commandoit, v.
 horse, and I commanded the foot. - - - - He
cavalerie, f. infanterie, f.
 could not do² it¹ in one day, and I
put, v. faire, v. le, pro. en, p.
 did it in the space of three hours. - -
ai fait, v. dans, p. espace, m. heure, f.
 When the enemy appeared, my companions
parut, v. mes, pro.
 (ran away) and I remained alone.
prirent la fuite, v. restai, v. seul, adj.

The same rule is to be attended to with respect to *toi*,
lui, *eux*, &c. : as,

<i>Toi qui me parles,</i>	Thou who speakest to me.
<i>Lui que je méprise,</i>	He whom I despise.
<i>Eux que je respecte,</i>	They whom I respect.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

How darest thou answer thy
Comment, adv. oses, v. répondre, à, v. ton, pro.
 master in so³ insolent⁴ a¹ manner²? thou
de, si, adv. insolent, adj. manière, f.
 whom he loves, thou for whom he takes
que, pro. aime, v. pour, p. qui, pro. prend, v.
 so much pains. - - - He and they, not (being able)
peine, f. pourtant, v.

to agree,	were	obliged	to part. - - - -
<i>s'accorder, v.</i>	<i>furent, v.</i>	<i>obligé, p.p.</i>	<i>de se séparer, v.</i>
It is I who wrote		the letter,	but it is he
	<i>ai écrit, v.</i>	<i>lettre, f.</i>	
who carried	it. - - -	It is ²	¹ neither ³ I, nor
<i>a portée, p.p</i>	<i>la, pro.</i>		<i>ne ni, c. ni, c.</i>
thou, nor he, who have	broken		the windows,
	<i>avons, v.</i>	<i>cassé, p.p.</i>	<i>fenêtre, f.</i>
but it is they who have ²	done ³	it ¹ .	
	<i>ont, v.</i>	<i>fait, p.p.</i>	<i>le, pro.</i>

After these remarks, it is also necessary to observe here, that *je*, I, never admits of an adjective or participle immediately after it, except in *acts*, or *deeds*, *notes*, or *bills*, *receipts*, and the like : ex.

<i>Je, soussigné, demeurant à</i>	I, the undersigned, living
<i>Londres, déclare, &c.</i>	in London, declare, &c.
<i>Je, soussigné, reconnois avoir</i>	I, the undersigned, acknow-
<i>reçu de Mons. D**, la</i>	ledge to have received
<i>somme de—</i>	from Mr. D**, the sum
	of—

OF CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are called *conjunctive*, because they are always joined to some verb by which they are governed, and are generally used for the dative or accusative case of the personal pronouns. There are three persons in the conjunctive as in the personal, which are,

For the first Person, both Genders.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Dat. or Ac. <i>Me, moi,*</i> me or to me,	<i>Nous</i> , us, or to us,
for <i>à moi</i> , or <i>moi</i> ,	for <i>à nous</i> , or <i>nous</i> .

For the second, both Genders.

Dat. or Ac. <i>Te, Toi,*</i> thee or to thee,	<i>Vous</i> , you, or to you,
for <i>à toi</i> , or <i>toi</i> ,	for <i>à vous</i> , or <i>vous</i> .

* *Moi* and *toi* must be used instead of *me* or *te*, after the second person singular or plural of the imperative mood, conjugated without a negative : ex.

écoutez-moi,
suivez-moi,

hear me.
follow me.

For the third.

SINGULAR.—Masculine.

Dat. *Lui*, { to him, to it, } for *à lui*.
 Acc. *Le*, { him, it, } *lui*.

Feminine.

Dat. *Lui*, { to her, to it, } for *à elle*.
 Acc. *La*, { her, it, } *elle*.

PLURAL.—Both Genders.

Dat. *Leur*, { to them, } for *à eux*, m. *à elles*, f.
 Acc. *Les*, { them, } *eux*, m. *elles*, f.

Dat. or Acc. *Se*, { one's self, himself, } for *à soi*, or *soi*.
 { herself, themselves, }

Five of these pronouns are used for the dative or accusative case, and are of both genders, viz.

Me or *moi*, *te* or *toi*, *nous*, *vous*, *se* : ex.

Vous me parlez, You speak to me.
Il vous croit, He believes you.
Vous me priez de, &c. You desire me to, &c.

In the first example, *me* is the dative case, because it may be turned by *à moi*, to me ; in the second, *vous* is the accusative, &c.

Lui and *leur* are used in the dative only, and are of both genders :

Je lui parle, I speak to him or to her.
Vous leur écrivez, You write to them.

The three others are used for the accusative, and may be applied to things animate or inanimate, viz.

Le, masc. him, it ; *la*, fem. her, it ; and *les*, masc. and fem. them : ex.

Je le vois tous les jours, I see him every day.
Je le sais, I know it.
Nous la connoissons, We know her.
Il les enverra ce soir, He will send them to-night.

The pronoun personal may be placed before or after the verb, agreeably to the English construction ; but the conjunctive pronouns are to be placed (in French) before the verbs by which they are governed, though they come after them in English : ex.

<i>Je parle,</i>	I speak.
<i>Avons-nous parlé,</i>	Have we spoken ?
<i>Il me parle,</i>	He speaks to me.
<i>Nous les connoissons,</i>	We know them.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Your brother bought yesterday a very good book,
acheta, v.
 and after having² read³ it¹, he gave² it¹
après, p. avoir, v. lu, p.p. le, pro. donna, v.
 to my sister. - - - You speak of my cousin,
ma, pro. mon, pro.
 do you know him ? - - - I see her and speak
connoissez, v. vois, v. parle, v.
 to her (every day). - - Do you² know¹ your
tous les jours. savez, v. vos, pro.
 lessons ? - - - We know them all. - - I will carry
leçon, f. savons, v. tout, adj. mènerai, v.
 them to my brothers, but I (will write)
chez, p. mes, pro. écrirai, v.
 to them before. - - - I find him more reason-
auparavant, adv. trouve, v. raison-
 able than his sister. - - - Your dog (is
nable, adj. sa, pro. chien, m. a
 thirsty), shall² I³ give² him¹ water ? - - They are
soif, donnerai, v.
 tired, and I give them some rest.
fatigué, p.p. donne, v. repos, m.

In the second person singular and the first and second persons plural of a verb in the imperative mood conjugated affirmatively, the conjunctive pronouns come after the verb : but if the verb be conjugated negatively, the pronouns follow the above rule : ex.

Donnez-lui de l'argent, Give him money.
Ne lui donnez pas de pain, Do not give him any bread.

EXERCISE ON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

Send them some apples, but do not send
Envoyez, v.
 them any plums. - - I give you these books,
prune, f. donne, v. ces, prò.
 but do not lend them to your brother. - - -
prêtez, v. votre, pro.
 You may tell it to my father, but do not
pouvez, v. dire, v. mon, pro.
 tell it to my mother. - - Believe me, go
dites, v. ma, pro. Croyez, v. allez, v.
 and speak to them, but do not insult them. - -
parler, v. insultez, v.
 Have you returned (to her) the handkerchief
rendu, p.p. mouchoir, m.
 which she has lent you? - - Send it to-morrow,
prêté, p.p. demain, adv.
 do not forget it. - - Bring me some cho-
oubliez, v. Apportez, v. cho-
 colate, but bring² me¹ no sugar.
colat, m.

When two imperatives are joined by either of the conjunctions, *et*, and; *ou*, or; the conjunctive pronoun or pronouns must precede the last imperative by which it is governed: ex.

Allez le trouver, et lui dites Go to him, and tell him to
de venir ici, come hither.

After the verbs *se fier à*, to trust to, *penser, songer à*, to think of, *viser à*, to aim at, *courir, accourir à*, to run to, *venir à*, to come to, and some of the reflexive verbs followed by a preposition governing a dative case, the pronouns must be placed after the verb, especially if used in opposition or contradiction to each other; or denote the order in which a thing ought to be done: and if there be more than one dative pronoun, the first only may be placed before the verb, and the others after: ex.

<i>Fiez-vous à moi,</i>	Trust to me.
<i>Nous pensons à vous,</i>	We think of you.
<i>Cela s'adresse à toi,</i>	That is addressed to thee.
<i>Je cours à lui,</i>	I run to him.
<i>Il me parle aussi bien qu'à vous et à eux.</i>	He speaks to me as well as to you and them.

EXERCISE ON THESE AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

Bring me my hat, or send³ it² to me¹ by the carrier. - - - Trust to him, but do not
voiturier, m. Fiez-vous, v.
 trust to them, and do not believe them. - - Think
croyez, v. Pensez, v.
 of us, and write to us as soon as you can. - - -
écrivez, v. ∞ tôt, adv. pourrez, v.
 Go and see her, and carry her these
Allez, v. ∞ voir, v. portez, v. ces, pro.
 flowers. - - - Send me my clock, or bring³ it²
fleurs, f. pendule, f.
 to me¹ yourself. - - - Do not give it to
me, pro. vous-même, pro. donnez, v.
 my sister, give it to me. Why do you prefer her to
∞ préférez, v.
 me, and give her all your affection?

When two or more of the conjunctive pronouns come together in the same sentence, they must be arranged in the following order.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Me, m. & f. me or to me.</i>	<i>Nous, m. & f. us or to us.</i>
<i>Te, m. & f. thee or to thee.</i>	<i>Vous, m. & f. you or to you.</i>
<i>Se, m. & f. one's self, him- self, herself,</i>	<i>Se, m. & f. themselves,</i>
are to be placed before all others;—next,	
<i>Le, m. him, it,</i>	<i>Les, m. & f. them.</i>
<i>La, f. her, it,</i>	
Then,	
<i>Lui, m. & f. to him, to her,</i>	<i>Leur, m. & f. to them.</i>
<i>Il me le promet,</i>	He promised it to me.
<i>Je vous les donnerai,</i>	I will give them to you.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My brother (will send) them to you, or he
enverra, v.
 (will bring) them to you himself. - - - He likes
apportera, v. *aime, v.*
 your² house³ (very much,¹) for we showed
votre, pro. *fort, adv.* *car, c.* *fîmes voir, v.*
 it to him. - - Carry it to them. - - He will² ¹not³
Portez, v. *veut, v.* *ne pas*
 sell⁶ it⁴ to them, but he will give it to
vendre, v. *veut donner, v.*
 you. - - - If they ask a favour, will you
Si, c. *demandent, v.* *grâce, f.* *∞*
 refuse it to them? - - - Why do you
refuserez, v. *Pourquoi, adv.*
 give it to him? Had you not promised
donnez, v. *Aviez, v.* *promis, p.p.*
 it to her? - - - He speaks to me, and not to you. - -
parle, v.
 If they behave themselves well, I will
comportent, v.
 reward them. - - He had promised it to
récompenserai, v. *avoit, v.*
 him, but he gave it to me.
a donné, v.

N. B. There are three other conjunctive pronouns, commonly called particles relative, or supplying pronouns; they are *en*, *y*, and *le*.

En always denotes a genitive or ablative, and relates to some object mentioned before: it is rendered in English by *of* or *from him, her, it, them*; *about him, her, it, &c.*; *with or without him, her, it, &c.*; *at it, &c.*; *for it, &c.*; *upon it, &c.*; *any, one, ones, none, some, some of, &c.*; *thence, thereof*, and sometimes it is elegantly understood in English, especially when immediately followed by a numeral adjective or a noun of quantity, though it must be absolutely expressed in French: ex.

Nous en parlons,

We speak of him, of her,
of it, of them; about
him, about her, about it,
about them.

J'en suis fâché,

I am sorry for it.

Donnez-lui en,

Give him some.

Lui en avez-vous porté ?

Did you carry him or her
any ?

Ne lui en envoyez pas,

Send him or her none.

Nous en venons,

We come from it or thence.

*Combien avez-vous de do-
mestiques ? Nous en avons
six.*

How many servants have
you ? We have six.

*Avez-vous un jardin à la
campagne ? Oui, nous en
avons un très joli.*

Have you a garden in the
country ? Yes, we have
a very pretty one.

In the third, fourth, and fifth sentences it should be observed, that the pronouns *of it*, or *of them*, are elegantly understood in English, according to the object or objects mentioned before.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

I have heard that your uncle is arrived,
ouï dire, v. arrivé, p.p.
and I¹ am³ very⁴ glad⁵ of it². - - She spoke³ to
aise, adj. parla, v.
him¹ of it². - - Talk³ no¹ more⁴ of it², for I¹
Parlez, v. ne plus, ear, c.
will³ not² hear⁶ of it⁵ (any more⁴). - -
veux, v. ne entendre parler, v. plus, adv.
I¹ thank⁴ you² for it³. - - Do you⁴ 'not⁵ see³
remercie, v. voyez, v.
the⁶ beauty⁷ of it² ? - - They are sorry for
sont, v. fâché, adj.
it. - - Since you have no pears in your garden,
Puisque, c. poire, f.
I (will send) you some. - - They¹ have⁴ stolen⁵
enverrai, v. ont, v. volé, p.p.

from us² the⁶ greatest⁷ part³ of them³. - - My
 brother has written a letter to your sister, and
 shown² me¹ the⁴ two⁵ first⁶ lines⁷ of it². - -
 Will you lend me some books? With all
 my heart, I will lend you some very pretty
 ones. - - Do you² think¹ that³ she⁴ has⁷ spoken
 to him⁵ of it⁶? - - If I had money, I would give
 you some, but you know, as well as I do,
 how scarce² it is¹ now. - - - Send⁴
 me² ¹none³ ⁵. - - Have² you³ any¹? - - - Do ¹you⁴
 remember³ it²?
 souvenez, v. en.

Y is used for the dative only : it is Englished by *to it, to them, of it, in it, upon it, thither, there, &c.* and very often not expressed in English, though it must be in French. It seldom supplies the place of animate objects, except when connected with the verbs *fier*, to trust ; *penser*, to think ; and the like in a reply : ex.

<i>J'y consens,</i>	I agree to it.
<i>Nous y penserons,</i>	We shall think of it.
<i>Ne vous y fiez plus,</i>	Trust them no more.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

I¹ ²never⁵ will⁴ consent to³ it, and¹
 ne jamais, adv. consentirai, v.
 I¹ ²neither⁴ will³ speak⁶ nor⁷ write⁹ to
 ne ni veux, v. parler, v. ni, c. écrire, v.
⁵him³. - - Believe me, go and see them, do
 Croyez, v. allez, v.

¹not⁵ ⁴confide² in³ it. - - We¹ have⁴ forced⁵
fiez vous, v. avons, v. forcé, p.p.
 them² to it³. - - I (will carry²) my³ brother⁴ thither¹
mènerai, v.
 myself⁵. - He¹ (will carry⁵) them³ to you² thither³ him-
portera, v. y
 self. - - Did you think of what you had
Avez, v. pensé, p.p. à ce que, pro. aviez, v.
 promised me? - - No, but¹ I² will think⁴
promis, p.p. Non, adv. penserai, v.
 (of it³.) - (It is) a good book, we¹ read³ excellent⁴
y C'est, v. on, pro. lit, v.
 things⁵ in it². - - Our orchards are very fruit-
choses, f. Nos, pro. verger, m. fer-
 ful, we see all sorts of fruits in
tile, adj. on, pro. voit, v. sorte, f. fruit, m.
 them. - - Since those people have deceived
Puisque, c. ces, pro. gens, pl. trompé, p.p.
 you do not trust them (any more). - - When a
vous fiez, v. plus, adv.
 friend is dead we² often¹ think⁵ of
mort, adj. on, pro. souvent, adv. pense, v.
 him⁴ ³no longer⁶.
plus, adv.

Le which in English is either not expressed, or most commonly rendered by *so*, likewise prevents the repetition of one or more words, and supplies the place of the same. It is indeclinable when it relates to, and holds the place of, one adjective or more, a verb, or a whole member of a sentence : ex.

<i>Vous m'avez cru belle, mais</i>	You have thought me hand-
<i>je ne le suis pas,</i>	some, but I am not.
<i>Nous étions embarrassés, et</i>	We were embarrassed, and
<i>nous le sommes encore,</i>	are so yet.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

My	brothers	were	ill	yesterday,
Mes, pro.			malade, adj.	hier, adv.

and are so still to - day. - - - I am
encore, adv. aujourd'hui, adv.
 satisfied with my fate, but my sister is not.
content, adj. de sort, m. ma, pro.
 I had heard that your sister was married,
avois, v. ouï dire, v. que étoit, v. marié, p.p.
 but my cousin tells me that she is not. - - -
mon, pro. dit, v.
 Our master rewards us when we deserve
Notre, pro. récompense, v. méritons, v.
 it. - - - Children ought to apply to their
doivent, v. s'appliquer, v. leurs, pro.
 studies as much as they can. - - - I thought
autant, adv. peuvent, v. croyois, v.
 your brother was diligent, but I mistook,
étoit, v. me suis trompé, p.p.
 for he is not, and ¹never⁴ will be³ so².
jamais, adv. sera, v.

On the contrary, *le* is declinable when it relates to, and holds the place of one substantive or more; then *le* is used for the masculine, *la* for the feminine, and *les* for the plural: ex.

Etes-vous le fils de mon Are you my friend Mr. D's
*ami M. D** ? Oui, je* son ? Yes, I am.
le suis,
Etes-vous la mère de ce Are you the mother of
bel enfant ? Oui, je la that fine child ? Yes,
suis, I am.
Etes-vous les tantes de Are you Mr. Brown's
M. Brown ? Oui, nous aunts ? Yes, we are.
les sommes,
Est-ce là votre livre ? Oui, Is this your book ? Yes,
ce l'est. it is.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

(It is said) that you are the son of my neighbour
On dit, v. voisin, m.

Mr. Peter, are you so ? Yes, Sir, I
Pierre, m. Monsieur, m.

am. - - Are you the sister of Mrs. Adams? Yes,
Madame, f.
 I am. - - She is very amiable, and so are you. - -
aimable, adj.
 Are you the ladies whom my mother expects?
dame, f. que attend, v.
 Yes, we are. - - These young people are the
Ces, pro. jeune, adj. gens, pl.
 scholars whom you have taught? Yes, madam,
écolier, m. ensigné, p.p.
 they are. - - (Is that) the horse which you bought
Est-ce là cheval, m. que
 from my brother? Yes, it is. - - - (Are these) the
à Sont-ce là
 houses which you built? Yes, they are.
avez fait bâtir, v. sont.

N. B. It must be observed, that the following pronouns, *me, te, se, le, la*, and *les*, can never be used after a preposition; as we cannot say, *j'étois avec le, avec la*, I was with him, with her; but we must use the personal pronouns, *moi, toi, soi, lui, elle*, and *eux*, or *elles*, and say, *j'étois avec lui, avec elles*, &c.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The nosegay which I gathered in our
bouquet, m. que, ai cueilli, p.p.
 garden is for her, and not for him. - - He
pour, p. non pas, adv.
 was with me when we received a letter from
étoit, v. reçûmes, v.
 them. - - If he do not come soon we (will set
viens, v. vient, v. bientôt, adv. parti-
 out) without him. - - - Your sisters have dis-
rons, v. sans, p. Vos, pro. mécon-
 pleased me, I am very angry with them.
tenté, p.p. fâché, adj. contre, p.
 - - Your brothers have broken these windows, I
cassé, p.p. ces, pro.

I am sure of it, for I was behind them, and
sûr, adj. car, c. derrière, p.
 John was with me.
Jean, m.

Y and *en* always go last in a sentence, except the pronoun of the first person *moi*, which, in the imperative mood of a verb conjugated affirmatively, is placed after *y* and *en*: ex.

Il vous y en enverra, He will send some to you
 thither.

Apportez-y en moi, Bring me some hither.

N. B. The above pronouns, when governed by two or more verbs, must be repeated, in French, before every governing verb; though most generally expressed but once in English, and after the last verb: ex.

Votre fils vous aime et Your son loves and fears
vous craint, you.

Je le plains et l'encourage, I pity and encourage
 him.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

You have very fine roses in your garden: when
avez, v.

I am in the country, pray send me some hither.
serai, v. à de grâce, envoyez, v.

- - May God bless and reward her! said
Que Dieu, bénisse, v. récompense, v. dit, v.

the prince. - - I ¹neither³ will² sell⁶ nor⁷ give¹⁰
ne ni, veux, v. vendre, donner, v.

⁵them⁹ to ⁴you⁸. - - Our master rewards and punishes
punit, v.

us when we deserve it. - - - Often beauty seduces
séduit, v.

and deceives us. - - - A well-bred child, who
trompe, v. né, p.p.

knows the extent of his duties towards his
connoit, v. étendue, f. devoir, m. envers, p.

parents, far from offending and vexing
parent, m. et f. loin de, offenser, v. molester, v.

them, cherishes, loves, honors, respects, and
chérit, v. honore, v. respecte, v.
obeys them.
obéit, v.

OF PRONOUNS POSSESSIVE.

These pronouns are called *possessive*, because they always denote property or possession.

There are two sorts of possessive pronouns, viz. absolute and relative.

The *absolute* are so called, because they must always precede the substantive to which they are joined, and agree with it (and not with the possessor as in English) in *gender, number, and case*:—They are,

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	Both Genders.
<i>Mon,*</i>	<i>Ma,</i>	<i>Mes, my.</i>
<i>Ton,*</i>	<i>Ta,</i>	<i>Tes, thy.</i>
<i>Son,*</i>	<i>Sa,</i>	<i>Ses, his, her, or its.</i>
		Both Genders.
	<i>Notre,</i>	<i>Nos, our.</i>
	<i>Votre,</i>	<i>Vos, your.</i>
	<i>Leur,</i>	<i>Leurs, their.</i>

They are declined with the article indefinite *de, à*: *ex.*

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *mon père, my father.*
Gen. Abl. *de mon père, of my father, or from, &c.*
Dat. *à mon père, to my father.*

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *ma mère, my mother.*
Gen. Abl. *de ma mère, of or from my mother.*
Dat. *à ma mère, to my mother.*

* *Mon, ton, son*, must be used before a noun feminine beginning with a vowel, to prevent the hiatus: *ex.*

<i>Mon âme,</i>	<i>My soul.</i>
<i>Ton indifférence,</i>	<i>Thy indifference.</i>
<i>Son opinion,</i>	<i>His, or her opinion.</i>

PLURAL.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *mes frères*, my brothers.

Gen. Abl. *de mes frères*, of or from my brothers.

Dat. *à mes frères*, to my brothers.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *mes sœurs*, my sisters.

Gen. Abl. *de mes sœurs*, of or from my sisters.

Dat. *à mes sœurs*, to my sisters.

The others are declined as the preceding.

These pronouns ought to be repeated before every substantive in a sentence, though but once expressed in English; they must also be used in French, when speaking to any of our relations or friends, though they be suppressed in English: ex.

J'ai perdu mon chapeau I lost my hat and gloves.

et mes gants,

Bon jour, mon père,

Good day, father.

Etes-vous là, ma sœur ?

Are you there, sister?

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Give me my dictionary and grammar. - - She
dictionnaire, m. *grammaire, f.*

had lost her gloves and fan. - - - Have
avoit, v. perdu, p.p. *éventail, m. Avez, v.*

you found your pen? - - - His daughter is
trouvé, p.p. *plume, f.* *fille, f.*

older than my son, but her son (is not)
vieux, adj. *fil, m.* *n'est pas, v.*

so tall as my nephew. - - - Her brother says
grand, adj. *neveu, m.* *dit, v.*

that he will not refuse you what you ask
refusera, v. *ce que demandez, v.*

of him. - - Dear father, pray, forgive me. - - My
de grâce,

ambition is the only cause of my impru-
ambition, f. *seul, adj.* *cause, f.* *impru-*

dence. - - - I have seen your father, mother, bro-
dence, f. *ai, v. vu, p.p.*

thers, and sisters. - - - Her affection for me is
affection, f. pour, p.
 false. - - - Good night, cousin, I hope that you
faux, adj. soir, m. espère, v.
 will come soon to see my country-
viendrez, v. bientôt, adv. voir, v.
 house and gardens. - - - Your horses and carriage
cheval, m. carrosse, m.
 are very beautiful, but the queen's horses and carriages
beau, adj.
 are much more so.
beaucoup, adv.

When these pronouns are used in a sentence, speaking of any part of the body, they are not to be expressed in French, but the preposition *in* and the pronoun are rendered by the article definite ; the personal pronoun being sufficient to determine the possession : ex.

J'ai mal aux yeux, . I have a pain in my eyes.
 and not *dans mes yeux,*

Il se cassa le bras, He broke his arm.
 and not *son bras.*

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My mother has (a pain) in her head. - - - I have
a, v. mal, m. à, p. tête, f.
 a pain in my ear, and she has a pain in her
oreille, f.
 teeth. - - - When I eat meat, I have always
dent, f. mange, v. toujours, adv.
 a pain in my stomach. - - The man who fell from
estomac, m. tomba, v.
 the roof of our house, disjoined his wrist,
toit, m. se démit, v. poignet, m.
 broke his right leg, sprained
droit, adj. jambe, f. se donna une entorse au
 his left foot, dislocated his shoulders,
gauche, adj. pied, m. se disloqua, v. épaule, f.
 and hurt his head. - - - When I run fast,
se blessa, v. cours, v. vite, adv.

I (am afraid) of falling and breaking my
crains, v. de tomber, v. de me casser, v.
 arm or neck.

Its, their, having a reference to inanimate or irrational objects, and placed in another member of the sentence from that wherein the object referred to is itself expressed, are not made into French by *son, sa, ses, &c.* but by *en* : ex.

Paris est une grande ville, Paris is a large city, but
mais les rues en sont trop its streets are too nar-
étroites. row.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Windsor is a fine town, I admire its
ville, f. admire, v.
 situation, walks, and streets. - - This
situation, f. promenade, f. rue, f. Cette, pro.
 house is well situate, but its architecture
situé, adj. architecture, f.
 does not please me much. - - - His coach is
plait, v. beaucoup, adv. carrosse, m.
 beautiful, (every body) admires its painting
tout le monde, m. admire, v. peinture, f.
 and ornaments. - - - The shops of London are
 (very fine,) foreigners especially see their
superbe, adj. étranger, m. sur-tout, adv.
 riches and cleanliness with pleasure and astonish-
 ment. - - - The walks of your (country-seat) are well
allée, f. château, m.
 kept, I like their regularity.
tenu, p.p. régularité, f.

The *relatives* are never joined to any substantive ; for the substantive to which they refer is always implied in the pronoun. They are,

Masculine.

Feminine.

SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Le mien,</i>	<i>les miens,</i>	<i>la mienne,</i>	<i>les miennes, mine.</i>
<i>Le tien,</i>	<i>les tiens,</i>	<i>la tienne,</i>	<i>les tiennes, thine.</i>
<i>Le sien,</i>	<i>les siens,</i>	<i>la sienne,</i>	<i>les siennes, his or hers.</i>

Masculine.		Feminine.	
SING.	PLURAL.	SING.	PLURAL.
<i>Le nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres,</i>	<i>la nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres, ours.</i>
<i>Le vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres,</i>	<i>la vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres, yours.</i>
<i>Le leur,</i>	<i>les leurs,</i>	<i>la leur,</i>	<i>les leurs, theirs.</i>

They are declined with the article definite ; ex.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.		Feminine.	
Nom. Acc.	<i>Le mien,</i>		<i>la mienne, mine.</i>
Gen. Abl.	<i>Du mien,</i>		<i>de la mienne, of or from miné.</i>
Dat.	<i>Au mien,</i>		<i>à la mienne, to mine.</i>

PLURAL.

Masculine.		Feminine.	
Nom. Acc.	<i>Les miens,</i>		<i>les miennes, mine.</i>
Gen. Abl.	<i>Des miens,</i>		<i>des miennes, of or from miné.</i>
Dat.	<i>Aux miens,</i>		<i>aux miennes, to mine.</i>

The rest are declined as the preceding.

When any one of these relative pronouns is used after the verb *être*, to be, signifying to belong to, it must be expressed in French by one of the pronouns personal in the dative ; and when joined to a noun substantive, it ought to be rendered by a pronoun possessive absolute, and the substantive must be put in the genitive plural : ex.

<i>Ce livre est à moi,</i>	This book is mine.
<i>C'est un de mes amis,</i>	He is a friend of mine.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Your daughter is handsomer than mine, but
beau, adj.
 mine has more wit than yours. - - - Her house is
esprit, m.
 more convenient than ours, but yours is not so
commode, adj.
 well situate as theirs. - - - This hat is mine and
Ce, pro.

not yours, but this sword is yours and
non pas *cette*, pro.
 not his. - - - I lost a book of mine, and a friend
ai perdu, v.
 of yours found it. - - - He sold me a knife,
a trouvé, v. *couteau*, m.
 but this knife was not his, it was a friend of his
étoit, v.
 who had lent it to him.
prêté, v.

OF PRONOUNS DEMONSTRATIVE.

These pronouns are called *demonstrative*, because they distinguish, in a precise manner, the persons or things to which they are applied. They are,

SINGULAR.

Masculine.	Feminine.
<i>Ce, cet</i> ,*	<i>cette</i> , this, that.
<i>Celui</i> , he, that,	<i>celle</i> , she, that.
<i>Celui-ci</i> ,	<i>celle-ci</i> , this.
<i>Celui-là</i> ,	<i>celle-là</i> , that.

PLURAL.

Masculine.	Feminine.
<i>Ces</i> ,	<i>ces</i> , these, those.
<i>Ceux</i> ,	<i>celles</i> , they, these, those.
<i>Ceux-ci</i> ,	<i>celles-ci</i> , these.
<i>Ceux-là</i> ,	<i>celles-là</i> , those.
<i>Ce qui, ce que</i> , what.	
<i>Ceci</i> , this ; <i>cela</i> , that.†	

The last two are always of the masculine gender, and of the singular number.

* *Cet* is used before a noun masculine beginning with a vowel, or H mute: ex. *cet oiseau*, this bird ; *cet honneur*, this honor.

† The word *that*, whether expressed or understood, coming between two verbs, and followed by a noun or pronoun, is then a conjunction, and must be rendered into French by *que*, which must be placed immediately after the first verb: ex.

Je sais que votre frère est marié, I know that your brother is married.

These pronouns are declined with the article indefinite, *de, à : ex.*

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *ce livre*, this or that book.
 Gen. Abl. *de ce livre*, of or from this book.
 Dat. *à ce livre*, to this book.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc. *ces livres*, these books.
 Gen. Abl. *de ces livres*, of or from these books.
 Dat. *à ces livres*, to these books.

SINGULAR.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *cette plume*, this or that pen.
 Gen. Abl. *de cette plume*, of or from this pen.
 Dat. *à cette plume*, to this pen.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc. *ces plumes*, these pens.
 Gen. Abl. *de ces plumes*, of or from these pens.
 Dat. *à ces plumes*, to these pens.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *celui*, he, him, that.
 Gen. Abl. *de celui*, of or from him.
 Dat. *à celui*, to him.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *celle*, she, her, that.
 Gen. Abl. *de celle*, of or from her.
 Dat. *à celle*, to her.

PLURAL.

Masc.

Fem.

N. Acc. *ceux*, *celles*, they, them, those, such as.
 G. Abl. *de ceux*, *de celles*, of or from those.
 Dat. *à ceux*, *à celles*, to those.

The others are declined as the preceding.

N. B. *He, she, they, him, her, them*, being immediately followed in a sentence by *who, whom, or that*, used in an indeterminate sense, not relating to any individual mentioned before, and only implying *any person, one or any body*, must not be rendered in French by the personal pronouns, *il, elle, &c.* but by the above pronouns, *celui, celle, &c.*

The same rule must be observed with respect to *such as, such that*, used in English in the same sense as *he who, they who* : ex.

<i>Celui ou celle qui pratique la</i>	He or she who practices
<i>vertu vit heureux,</i>	virtue lives happy.
<i>Ceux qui méprisent la sci-</i>	Such as despise learning do
<i>ence n'en connoissent pas</i>	not know its value.
<i>le prix,</i>	

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

He who supports	idleness makes himself
<i>encourage, v.</i>	<i>rend, v.</i>
despicable. - - - She whom you saw at my	
<i>méprisable, adj.</i>	<i>que, pro. vites, v. chez, p.</i>
brother's is not yet	married. - - - - - You
<i>encore, adv.</i>	<i>marié, adj.</i>
punish him who is not guilty. - - - Men com-	
<i>punissez, v.</i>	<i>coupable, adj. ordi-</i>
monly ² hate ¹ him whom they fear. - - - -	
<i>nairement, adv. haïssent, v.</i>	<i>que, pro. craignent, v.</i>
She whom you hate is my best friend. - - You	
<i>haïssez, v.</i>	<i>amie, f.</i>
have punished him who did not deserve it,	
<i>puni, p.p.</i>	<i>méritoit, v.</i>
and rewarded her who was guilty. - - We	
<i>récompensé, p.p.</i>	
ought to pray for them who persecute	
<i>devons, v.</i>	<i>qui, pro. persécutent, v.</i>
us. - - Of all virtues, that which most ² dis-	
<i>qui, pro. le plus, adv. dis-</i>	
tinguishes ¹ a Christian is charity. - - This book and	
<i>tingue, v.</i>	

that which I lent you are the two best. - -
que, pro. ai prêté, v.
 Such as seem to be happy, are not
qui, pro. paroissent, v. être, v.
 always so.
toujours, adv.

Ce, cette, ces, this, that, these, those, most always precede the substantive to which they are joined, and agree with it in gender, number, and case. On the contrary, *celui, celle, celui-ci, celle-ci, celui-là, celle-là*, this, that, &c. either in the singular or plural, are never joined to any noun; for the noun to which they refer is always implied in the pronoun: ex.

J'ai vu le portrait du père I have seen the father's
et celui du fils, picture, and that of the
 son.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

She who dines with us, is my brother's wife. - -
dîne, v. avec, p. femme, f.
 She brought her picture, and that of her
a apporté, v. portrait, m.
 husband. - - - I have seen the king's palace, and
mari, m. palais, m.
 that of the queen. - - - That gold watch, which
montre, f. que, pro.
 you showed me, is not yours, it is that of
avez montré, v. c'est, v.
 your brother. - - I have lost my buckles and
perdu, p.p.
 those of your cousin. - - - Your books and those of
cousin, m.
 your little sister are torn. - - - I know this
petit, adj. déchiré, p.p. connois, v.
 cap, it is that of your mother.
bonnet, m. c'est, v.

N. B. The pronoun *that*, either in the singular or plural, is often suppressed in English, and supplied by

an apostrophe and an *s*, thus (*'s*), at the end of the noun substantive as above, but it must be expressed in French by the above pronouns *celui*, *celle*, and according to the gender and number of the object to which it refers: ex.

Il a pris mon chapeau et celui de mon père, He has taken my hat and my father's, *that is*, and *that* of my father.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

You have torn my gown and my sister's. - -
déchiré, p.p. robe, f.
 I have found my hat and my brother's in the
trouvé, p.p.
 room. - - - The thieves came by night
chambre, f. voleur, m. entrèrent, v. de nuit, adv.
 into my father's house, they broke open my room
ouvrirent, v.
 and my mother's, and stole my watch and
volèrent, v.
 my sister's. - - You may, if you please, take
pouvez, v. voulez, v. prendre, v.
 your grammar and your brother's, but leave
laissez, v.
 mine and my friend's. - - - Our oranges and Mr.
orange, f.
 Savage's are the best that you can
Sauvage, on, pro. puisse, v.
 find.
trouver, v.

Sometimes the particles *ci*, *là*, here, there, are also joined to the substantive following the pronouns, *ce*, *cette*, *ces*, to distinguish with more precision the objects to which they are applied: ex.

Ce chapeau-ci, this hat; *cette ville-là*, that town, &c.

N. B. The two following expressions, *the former*, *celui-là, m. celle-là, f. ceux-là, m. celles-là, f.*; *the latter*, *celui-ci, m. celle-ci, f. ceux-ci, m. celles-ci, f.* referring to substantives mentioned in a preceding sentence, are

which; and *ceci, cela*, this, that, are only used when speaking of things, the word *thing* being always understood: ex.

Je sais ce qui est arrivé, I know what has happened.

Savez-vous ce que je pense? Do you know what I think?

Ceci me plait, This pleases, me; i. e. this thing, &c.

Cela me fait peur, That frightens me; i. e. that thing, &c.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

May I know what causes your grief
Puis, v. savoir, v. cause, v. chagrin, m.
 and sadness? - - - Your father has (a good deal)
tristesse, f. beaucoup, adv.
 of friendship for you; for, he ¹never⁴
car, c. ne jamais, adv.
 refuses³ you² what you ask of him. - - -
refuse, v. demandez, v. ∞
 You seem much dejected, tell me what
paraissez, v. bien, adv. abattu, adj. dites-moi
 vexes you. - - - Go and tell my father what
fâche, v. Allez, v. ∞ dire à, v.
 has passed here and do not forget what you
s'est passé, v. ici, adv. ∞ oubliez, v.
 have seen, and what you have heard. - - - Give
entendu, p.p.
 me this, and take that. - - - I prefer this to
prenez, v. préfère, v.
 that.

OF PRONOUNS RELATIVE.

These pronouns are called *relative*, because they have always a reference to some other noun or pronoun in the discourse, either expressed or implied. They are declined as follows:

SINGULAR and PLURAL.

Both Genders.

Nom.	<i>qui,</i>	who, which, that.
Gen.	<i>de qui, or dont,</i>	of whom, whose,* of which.
Dat.	<i>à qui,</i>	to whom, to which,
Acc.	<i>que, qui,†</i>	whom, which, that.
Abl.	<i>de, qui, dont,</i>	from whom, from which.
Acc.	<i>quoi, que,</i>	what.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de quoi, or dont,</i>	of or from what.
Dat.	<i>à quoi,</i>	to what.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>lequel,</i>	<i>laquelle,</i> which.
Gen. Abl.	<i>duquel, or dont,</i>	<i>de laquelle,</i> of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>auquel,</i>	<i>à laquelle,</i> to which.

PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>lesquels,</i>	<i>lesquelles,</i> which.
Gen. Abl.	<i>desquels, or dont,</i>	<i>desquelles,</i> of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>auxquels,</i>	<i>auxquelles,</i> to which.

The noun, or pronoun, to which the pronoun relative has a reference, is called the *antecedent*, with which it must agree in gender and number: ex.

Je connois un homme qui doit aller voir le camp, I know a man who is to go and see the camp.

In this sentence *qui* has a reference to *homme*, man, because I can say, *lequel homme*, which man, &c.

J'ai lu la lettre que vous m'avez envoyée, I have read the letter (that) you sent me.

In this last sentence *que* has a reference to *lettre*, letter, because it may be said, *laquelle lettre*, which letter, &c.

* *Whose*, being used interrogatively, must be rendered in French by *à qui*: ex.

A qui est ce livre?

Whose book is this?

† *Qui*, whom, is never used in the accusative but when it is governed by some of the prepositions: ex.

Avec qui, With whom.

Pour qui, For whom.

or when it signifies *what person*: ex.

Amenez qui vous voudrez,

Bring whom you please.

Quat est, what person you please.

The relative *que*, whom, which, or that, is sometimes understood in English, but it must always be expressed in French : ex.

La dame que vous connoissez The lady you know is arrived.
est arrivée,

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The man who sold me these pens is very
a vendu, v.
cunning. - - - The lady of whom you speak
rusé, adj. dame, f. parlez, v.
is not handsome. - - Miss D***, whom you love
aimez, v.
so much, is very ill. - - - The person to
tant, adv. malade, adj. personne, f.
whom I wrote last year has answered
ai écrit, v. passé, p.p. année, f. répondu, p.p.
me this morning. - - He who was with you, related
matin, m. étoit, v. a raconté, v.
to me (every thing) that had passed. - - -
tout ce s'étoit, v. passé, p.p.
She will not hear of the lady whom
veut, v. entendre parler, v.
he (is going) to marry. - - - Shun vice, and
va, v. épouser, v. Evitez, v. vice, m.
love what is good. - - - Who was with
aimez, v. bon, adj. étoit, v. avec, p.
you? - - - It was a gentleman, whose¹ name⁶ I²
Ce monsieur, m. nom, m.
know⁴ ³not⁵. - - Men generally² love¹ him
sais, v. généralement, adv.
who flatters them. - - The man I sent you was
flatte, v. ai envoyé, v.
honest. - - Whose¹ sword⁴ is² this³? - - You speak
purlez, v.
of the lady whose husband has been so ill.
mari, m. été, p.p.

These pronouns, like the personal and conjunctive, when governed by two or more verbs, must be repeated (in French) before each governing verb, though most

has touched me to the quick. - - The town to
touché, p.p. au vif, m. ville, f.
 which he is gone is precisely the same
allé, p.p. précisément, adv. même, adj.
 place through which we went in (coming up)
place, f. par, p. où passumes, v. en, p. venant, p. act.
 to London. - - (This is) the door through which
Voici, adv.
 the thieves went into the house. - - The pri-
voleur, m. entrèrent, v.
 son in which they used to shut up
on, pro. avoit coutume, v. de renfermer, v.
 the prisoners, has been demolished.
prisonnier, m. détruite, p.p.

Quoi, what, and sometimes that or which, is never used in the nominative case: in the other cases it is generally used in an indeterminate signification, and is never expressed except in speaking of inanimate things, and especially when it has for its antecedent, *ce* or *rien*: ex.

C'est à quoi je vous conseille de penser, It is what I advise you to think of.
Il n'y a rien à quoi il ne soit disposé, There is nothing for which he is not disposed.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Of what does your² sister³ complain¹? - - - What!
se plaint, v.
 you dare answer me thus! - - For what do
osez, v. répondre, v. ainsi, adv. Pour, p.
 you call me? - - Why did you
appelez, v. Pourquoi, adv. avez, v.
 bring that man before me? what is he
amené, p.p. devant, p.
 guilty of? - - What is your brother sorry
coupable, adj. fâché, adj.
 for? - - At what were¹ you² playing¹, when I came
de à jouiez, v. suis

in ? - To what shall² we¹ apply² ourselves ? - -
entré, v. *appliquerons, v.* *nous, pro.*
 (1 There³ is⁴) ² nothing⁵ for which he is not
Il y a, v. *ne rien, adv.* *à* *soit, v.* *ne*
 fit. - - - In what do you intend to spend
propre, adj. *A* *proposez-vous, v.* *de passer, v.*
 your holidays ?
vacance, f.

When we speak of irrational beings or inanimate things in the genitive, dative, or ablative cases, we make use of *lequel*, *laquelle*, which, &c. instead of *qui*; also after a preposition, and when who, whom, or which, refer to one or more objects on which the choice is to be formed: ex.

Le cheval auquel vous donnez à boire, The horse to which you give some drink.
La fenêtre sur laquelle vous vous appuyez, The window upon which you lean.
Apportez lequel vous voudrez, Bring whom you please.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

The trade to which you apply,
commerce, m. *vous vous appliquez, v.*
 and the profession to which you are devoted,
profession, f. *dévoué, p.p.*
 are very honorable. - - (Is that) the horse for
Est-ce là, v.
 which you gave a hundred guineas ? - - Lying
Mensonge, m.
 is a vice for which young people ought to
gens, pl. *doivent, v.* *∞*
 have the greatest horror. - - - The table, upon
horreur, f. *table, f.* *sur, p.*
 which you write, is broken. - - - The reasons
écrivez, v. *cassé, p.p.*
 upon which you ground your system are
appuyez, v. *système, m.*
 satisfactory. - - - (There are) four drawings, which
satisfaisant, adj. *Voilà, adv.* *dessein, m.*

do you choose? - - (Here are) two pears, which
 ∞ choisissez, v. Voici, adv. poire, f.
 will you have? - - They are two sisters, which
 voulez, v. ∞ sont, v.
 do you like the best?
 ∞ aimez, v. le mieux, adv.

OF PRONOUNS INTERROGATIVE.

They are called *interrogative*, because they are used only in asking questions, and have no antecedent: they are declined with the article indefinite.

SINGULAR and PLURAL.

Both Genders.

Nom. Acc. *qui*, who, whom.
 Gen. Abl. *de qui*, of or from whom.
 Dat. *à qui*, to whom, whose.
 Nom. Acc. *quoi*, or *que*, what;*
 Or, *qu'est-ce qui*, *qu'est-ce que*.
 Gen. Abl. *de quoi*, of or from what.
 Dat. *à quoi*, to what.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Feminine.

N.A. *quel*, or *lequel*, *quelle*, or *laquelle*, what, which.
 G.A. *de quel*, &c. *de quelle*, &c. of or from, &c.
 Dat. *à quel*, &c. *à quelle*, &c. to what, which.

PLURAL.

Masculine.

Feminine.

N.A. *quels*, or *lesquels*, *quelles*, or *lesquelles*, what, which.
 G.A. *de quels*, &c. *de quelles*, &c. of or from, &c.
 Dat. *à quels*, &c. *à quelles*, &c. to what, which.

Qui, who, whom, as an interrogative pronoun, always refers to persons, and never to things; and it may be expressed by *quelle personne?* what person? *Quoi*

* When *what*, in English, signifies *How much*, it must be expressed in French by *combien*.

and *que*, what, have always a reference to things and never to persons, and may be expressed by *quelle chose*? what thing? According to the French idiom, *quoi* can never be put before a verb as its accusative, it is always *que*: ex.

Qui est-là?

Who is there?

De quoi parlez-vous?

What are you speaking of?

Que voulez-vous? or, qu'est-ce que vous voulez?

What do you want?

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Who was the first king of France? - - Who can
fut, v. *peut, v.*
 give credit to a young man who does not speak
ajouter, v. *foi, f.* *dit, v.*
 the truth? - - Of whom were¹ you² speaking¹, when
vérité, f. *parliez, v.*
 I came? - - To whom did you lend my
vins, v. *avez, v.* *prêté, p.p.*
 slate? - - Whom do you seek? - - Who told
ardoise, f. *cherchez, v.* *a dit, v.*
 it to you? - - From whom do you know it? - - What¹
savez, v.
 are² you³ doing²? - - What do you say? - - What
faites, v. *dites, v.*
 do you ask of me? - - Who is the man
demandez, v.
 who can boast of being without defect? - -
peut, v. *se vanter, v.* *de être, v.* *sans, p.* *défaut, m.*
 What is the name of your father? - - What is his
nom, m.
 occupation? - - What are his amusements? - - What
occupation, f. *sont, v.* *plaisir, m.*
 is his business? - - In what city does he² live¹? - -
affaires, pl. *ville, f.* *demeure, v.*
 What is the country in which he was born?
pays, m. *a pris naissance.*

In the last instances it may easily be seen, that *quel*, or *quelle*, what, is always joined to some substantive with which it must agree in gender and number.

In order to avoid repetition, *lequel*, *laquelle*, which are elegantly used as substantives for *quel*, or *quelle*, and the substantive to which it is joined; and then *lequel* must always be followed by a genitive, either expressed or understood: ex.

<i>Une de mes sœurs est mariée,</i>	One of my sisters is married.
<i>Laquelle est-ce?</i>	that is, Which is it?
<i>laquelle de vos sœurs est-ce?</i>	that is, which of your sisters is it?

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

One of your cousins is arrived from the continent; which is it? - - An aunt of yours was ill last week; which was *malade*, adj. *dernière*, adj. *semaine*, f. it? - - I have heard that two horses of yours were lost: tell me which. - - My brother wrote to me, that two of your sisters (are going) to learn French; which are they? - - They (were speaking) of a relation of his, and of one of my friends; which were they?

OF PRONOUNS INDEFINITE.

These pronouns are called *indefinite* or *indeterminate*, because they generally are substituted for the name of

a vague and indeterminate object. Among them some are used as nouns adjective, being always joined to a noun substantive; others are sometimes used as pronouns without a substantive, and sometimes as adjectives with a substantive.

Aucun, aucune,

Autre,

Autrui,

Chacun, chacune,

Chaque,

L'un l'autre,

Les uns—les autres,

L'un et l'autre,

L'un ou l'autre,

Ni l'un ni l'autre,

Nul, nulle,

Pas un, pas une,

Personne,

La plupart de, des,

Plusieurs,

Quelconque,

Quelque,

Quelque chose,

Quelque—que,

Quel—que,

Quelle—que,

Quelque chose qui or que,

Quoi que,

Quoi que ce soit que,

Tout ce qui, or que,

Quelqu'un, quelqu'une,

Quiconque,

None, no one, not one, not any.

Other, any other.

Other, other people.

Each, every one, every body.

Every, each.

One another, each other.

Some—others.

Some—some.

Both.

Either.

Neither.

None.

No one, not one.

Nobody, none, no one, any one, any body.

Most.

Many, several.

Whatever.

Some, any.

Something, any thing.

Whosoever, whatsoever, whatever, however, howsoever, though, &c.

Whatever, whatsoever.

Some, some one, somebody, any body.

Whoever, any body.

Qui que ce soit, or fût,

Whoever, nobody in the world, nobody at all, any body whatever, no man living, let him be who he will, or be who he may, &c.

Quoique ce soit, or fût,

Whatever, nothing in the world, nothing whatever.

Rien,

Nothing, any thing.

Tel, telle,

Such a one, such.

Tel qui,

}
}

Such as he, she, they, who, that, &c.

Telle qui,

Tout,

Every, every thing.

Tout le monde,

Every body, any body.

Tout——que,

As—as, for all, although, however, &c.

OBSERVATIONS on some of the above PRONOUNS.

Aucun, aucune, is never used but in the singular, and always negatively ; it relates to a person or thing mentioned before ; but in some sentences, and when it expresses a doubt, it is used without a negation : ex.

<i>Aucun ne s'est encore avisé</i>	No one has yet thought of
<i>de vous contredire,</i>	contradicting you.
<i>Y a-t-il aucun (ou aucune)</i>	Is there any of you who
<i>de vous qui le souffrît ?</i>	would suffer it ?

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Not one of the books which you saw	me
	<i>avez vu, v.</i>
buying,	pleases me. - - - Of all the apples
<i>acheter, v.</i>	<i>plait, v.</i>
which you	<i>pomme, f.</i>
	gave me, none is yet
	<i>avez donné, p.p.</i>
fit	<i>encore, adv.</i>
	to eat. - - - Is there any of you who
<i>bon, adj.</i>	<i>à manger, v.</i>
	<i>Y a-t-il,</i>

applies to study as much as he can? - - Among
s'applique, v. étude, f. peut, v.
 all the ladies you know, is there any one who
dame, f. connoissez, v.
 would have married him? - - Philip is cer-
eût voulu, v. épouser, v. Philippe, m. cer-
 tainly a very wicked man, for none
tainement, adv. méchant, adj. car, c.
 of his friends speak well of him. - - - - Do you
parle, v.
 know any news? No, sir, I know
savez, v. nouvelle, f. monsieur, sais, v.
 none. - - I was in trouble, and none of
étois, v. dans, p. embarras, m.
 my friends have relieved me.
secouru, p.p.

Nul, pas un, are always accompanied by a negation, and can only be used as a nominative to the verb: *Personne* is likewise attended with a negation, except in sentences of doubt, admiration, or interrogation: ex.

<i>Nul ne peut se flatter d'être</i>	No one can flatter himself
<i>agréable à dieu,</i>	to be agreeable to God.
<i>Pas un ne le croit,</i>	Not one believes it.
<i>Personne s'est-il jamais ex-</i>	Did ever any body express
<i>primé avec plus de grâce</i>	himself with more grace
<i>que Sheridan?</i>	than Sheridan?

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

No one in this world is free from
en, p. monde, m. exempt, adj.
 fault. - - - No one can pretend to be per-
défaut, m. prétendre, v. être, v. par-
 fectly happy in this land of mi-
faitement, adv. dans, p. terre, f.
 sery. - - All the sailors perished at sea,
matelot, m. ont péri, v. sur, p. mer, f.

not one escaped. - - - The soldiers are all re-
a échappé, v. *soldat, m.* re-
 turned, not one has remained behind. - - -
venu, p.p. *est, v.* *resté, p.p.* *derrière, adv.*
 Nobody can boast of being without im-
se vanter, v. *être, v.* *sans, p.*
 perfections. - - As nobody speaks to you,
Comme, adv. *parle, v.*
 you ought not to speak to any body. - - Did
devez, v. *parler, v.* *A-t-il*
 ever any body know in what happiness
connu, p.p. *en, p.* *bonheur, m.*
 consists ?
consiste, v.

Autre refers to persons and things, but *autrui* refers to persons only ; the latter has neither gender nor number, and can only be used in the genitive or dative case : ex.

Cette plume n'est pas bonne, This pen is not good, give
donnez lui en une autre, him another.
Ne prenez pas le bien d'au- Do not take other people's
trui, goods.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Your brother has lost his books, shall I
perdu, p.p.
 give him others ? - - - As you broke my
donnerai, v. *avez cassé, v.*
 penknife, you will give me another. - - Other peo-
canif, m. *donnerez, v.*
 ple's opinions are not the rule of mine. - - -
sentiment, m. *règle, f.*
 Do not speak ill of other people, if you
parlez, v. *mal, adv.*
 will have nobody speak ill of you. - - -
voulez, v. que *parle, v.*
 Always² remember¹ that principle of na-
souvenez-vous de ce principe, m. *na-*

tural law, do not to others what you
turel, adj. loi, f. faites, v.

would not wish that (they should do) to you. - -
voudriez, v. on fît, v.

What are other people's troubles, if (they be com-
peine, f. si, c. on les com-
 pared) with ours.
pare, v. aux

Chaque and *chacun* are used indifferently : *chaque*
 always requires a substantive after it, and *chacun* is used
 substantively in a general or limited sense, both men-
 tioning persons or things.

Chaque langue a ses idiomes Each language has its pe-
particuliers, culiar idioms.
Chacun à son tour, Every one in his turn.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Every thing in its time. - - Every virtue has
chose, f. dans, p. tems, m.

its reward, and each vice has its punishment. - -
récompense, f. châtimement, m.

Let every soldier keep his post to
Que se tiennent, v. à poste, m. pour, p.

avoid any surprise from the enemy. - -
éviter, v. tout, adj. surprise, f. de la part de l'ennemi, m.

Every one thinks and acts for himself. - - Do not
pense, v. agit, c. soi,

speak all at once, but each in your turn. - -
à la fois, adv. à

England expects every man will do his duty
attend, v. fera, v. devoir, m.

in case of danger. - - Trees bear their fruits
en Arbre, m. portent, v.

each in their season. - - Let us give to every
dans, p. rendons, v.

one what belongs to him. - - Let every one
appartient, v. Que

meddle with his own business.
se mêle, v. de propre, adj. affaires, pl.

L'un l'autre express a reciprocity in the action, and may be applied to persons or things; and if there be a preposition in English, it must be placed between them: ex.

Ils se haïssent l'un l'autre, They hate each other.
Ils parlent mal l'un de l'autre, They speak ill of one another.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Fire and water destroy one another. -- My
 se détruisent, v.
 sisters can not bear each other. --
 peuvent, v. *se souffrir, v.*
 Love one another, said our Lord
Aimez-vous, v. *dit, v.* *Seigneur, m.*
 to his disciples. - - - The seasons follow each
 disciple, m. *saison, f.* *se suivent, v.*
 other without interruption. - - - Thieves always²
 sans, p. *Voleur, m.*
 mistrust¹ one another. - - They do just-
se défient, de, v. *se rendent, v.*
 tice to one another. - - It is rare to hear
 rare, adj. *de entendre, v.*
 two authors speak well of one another. - - -
 auteur, m. *dire, v.* *du bien, m.*
 Multiplication teaches to multiply two
Multiplication, f. *enseigne, v.* *à multiplier, v.*
 numbers by each other. - - - - The columns
nombre, m. *par, p.* *colonne, f.*
 were close against one another.
étoient, v. *serré, adj.* *contre, p.*

L'un et l'autre always require the verb in the plural, and may likewise be applied to persons or things; *ni l'un ni l'autre* require the verb to be put in the singular, if that pronoun be placed before the verb, and in the plural, if it come after it; but in both cases the verb must be preceded by the negation *ne*: ex.

L'un et l'autre ont raison, Both are in the right.
Ni l'un ni l'autre ne répond, Neither of them answer.
or ils ne répondent ni l'un
ni l'autre,

N. B. The preposition must be placed between them, and *both* is not expressed in French when it precedes two nouns or pronouns united by the conjunction *and*: ex.

Son frère et sa sœur sont Both his brother and sis-
morts, ter are dead.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Both serve to the same purpose. - - - I
servent, v. même, adj. usage, m.
called on your cousins, and I heard
ai passé, v. chez cousine, f. ai appris, v.
that both had been married a week be-
que avoient, v. marié, p.p. semaine, f. au-
fore. - - - Honor your father and mother
paravant, adv. Respectez, v.
and endeavour to please both. - Do you speak
tâchez, v. de plaire, v. à parlez, v.
of my brother or sister? I speak of both. - Apples
parle, v. Pomme, f.
and pears are good fruits, but peaches are pre-
poire, f. pêche, f. pré-
ferable to both. - I wrote to both, but neither of
férable, adj. ai écrit, v.
them answered my letters. - Yesterday I expected
a répondu, v. attendois, v.
my two best friends, but neither of them came. - - I
vinrent, v.
will give it to neither of them. - - Do you prefer
donnerai, v.
currants to cherries? - - I like neither (of them.) -
groseille, f. cerise, f. aime, v.
Both religion and virtue are the bonds of civil
lien, m.
society.

Quelque—que. *Quelque* immediately joined to a noun followed by *que*, expresses an indeterminate quality or quantity; it is declinable before a substantive and indeclinable before an adjective, and requires the verb to be put in the subjunctive mood: ex.

Quelques fautes que vous ayez faites, on vous pardonnera, Whatever faults you may have committed, they will forgive you.

Quelque grandes que soient vos fautes, on vous pardonnera, However great your faults be, they will forgive you.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Whatever efforts people make to hide
effort, m. on, pro. fasse, v. pour, p. voiler, v.
 truth, it (is discovered) sooner or later. - What-
se découvre, v. tôt, adv. tard, adv.

ever services you may have done to your
service, m. ayez, v. rendus, p.p.

country, it will reward you for them. - - What-
patrie, f. récompensera, v.

ever capacity a man may have, he ought not to
puisse, v. doit, v. se

boast. - - However equitable your² offers³ be¹,
vanter, v. offre, f. soient, v.

I do not believe they will be accepted. - - ¹Though³
crois, v. soient, v. acceptée, p.p.

kings⁵ be⁴ ever so powerful² they die
soient, v. puissant, adj. meurent, v.

as well as the meanest of their subjects. - - However
vil, adj. sujet, m.

learned those ladies may be, they sometimes²
savant, adj. quelquefois, adv.

mistake¹.
se trompent, v.

Quel que, quelle que must be thus divided, when it is immediately followed by a verb or a personal pronoun, and agree in gender and number with the noun to which it relates; it likewise requires the verb to be put in the subjunctive mood: ex.

Quelle que soit votre faute,
on vous pardonnera,

Whatever your fault may
be, they will forgive you.

Whatever the enemy be, whose malice³ you¹
ennemi, m. malice, f.
dread,² you ought to rely on your
appréhendez, v. devez, v. vous reposer, v. sur, p.
innocence. - - Laws condemn all criminals,
condamnent, v. criminel, m.
whoever they may be. - Whatever your inten-
puissent, v. inten-
tions may be, I think that you (are in the wrong).
tion, f. avez tort.

Whatever the reasons be, which you may allege,
raison, f. *alléguiez, v.*
they are not sufficient. - - Whatever these books
suffisant, adj. *livre, m.*
be, send them to me. - Whatever her fortune be,
fortune, f.

he says he never will marry her.
dit, v. épousera, v.

Quelque chose *qui* or *que*, *quoi que*, *quoi que ce soit que*, tout ce *qui* or *que*, always relate to things, and never to persons; with this difference, that, in French, we generally begin the sentence with either *quelque chose que* or *qui*, *quoi que*, or *quoique ce soit que*, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood :
ex.

<i>Quelque chose qu'on vous</i>	Whatever may be said to
<i>dise, ne le croyez pas,</i>	you, do not believe it.
<i>Quoi que ce soit qu'on vous</i>	Whatever they may say to
<i>dise, ne le croyez pas,</i>	you, do not believe it.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Whatever may happen to you in this world,
puisse, v. arriver, v. monde, m.
 never murmur against divine providence, for
murmurez, v. contre, p. car, c.

whatever we may suffer, we deserve it. - - What-
souffrons, v. méritons, v.

ever I may do, you always blame me. - - Who is
fasse, v. blâmez, v.

the man who has stolen his money? I know not;
volé, p.p. sais, v.

but whoever he may be, and whatever he may say,
dise, v.

if my father catch him, he shall be punished. - -
attrappe, v.

In whatever your master employs you, do it
à emploie, v. faites, v.

heartily. - - - - Whatever you may say, your
de bon cœur, adv. disiez, v.

brothers shall be punished, if they deserve it.
seront, v. méritent, v.

On the contrary, we always make use of *tout ce qui* or *que*, when *whatever* can be turned into *all that which*, or *every thing which*; and may be placed either at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence, according to its situation in English, with the following verb in the indicative mood: ex.

Il fera toujours tout ce qu'il vous plaira, He will always do what-
 ever, or every thing, you
 please.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

In whatever you do, be guided by ho-
faites, v. guidé, p.p. hon-

nesty and probity; and in whatever you say,
néteté, f. dites, v.

never deviate from the path of truth. - -
vous écartez, v. sentier, m.

Whatever is pleasing is not always useful. - - -
agréable, adj. utile, adj.

Tell me whatever you think of me, and I will
Dites, v. pensez, v. di-

tell you whatever I think of you. - Never speak
rai, v.

of whatever has passed between us both. - - She is
s'est passé, v. entre, p. deux.
 so curious, that she will know whatever I
curieux, adj. veut, v. savoir, v.
 do. - - Whatever glitters is not gold. - - I will pay
fais, v. lui, v. payerai, v.
 you to-morrow whatever I owe you.
dois, v.

Quelque always expresses an indeterminate signification, and is generally joined to a substantive with which it agrees in number; and *quelqu'un, quelqu'une*, make *quelques-uns, quelques-unes*, in the plural.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

When he comes to see us, he has
Quand, adv. vient, v. voir, v.
 always some tale to tell us. - - He promised
conte, m. à faire, v. a promis, v.
 to bring me some filberts and chesnuts. - - - Have
de aveline, f. châtaigne, f.
 you heard any news? - - Somebody knocks
appris, p.p. nouvelle, f. frappe, v.
 at the door, go and open it. - - Is there
allez, v. ouvrir, v. Y a-t-il, v.
 any of these ladies who has found my colour-box?
dame, f. ait, v. couleur, f.
 - Have you any (raspberry trees) in your garden? I have
framboisier, m.
 some. - - Has he any vines? Yes he has some.
A-t-il, vigne, f. Oui, adv.

Qui que ce soit, speaking of persons only, may be Englished different ways; but when by *whoever, what person soever*, it must always be followed by the pronouns *il, elle* or *qui*, and sometimes by both, unless it be governed by a verb or proposition: ex.

Qui que ce soit qui me trompe, Whoever deceives me
il sera puni, shall be punished.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Whoever despises the poor, is himself des-
méprise, v. *lui-même mé-*
 picable. - - Whoever speaks to you, do not answer. - -
prisable, adj. *répondez, v.*
 Whoever may presume to ask you any question
osera, v. *question, f.*
 concerning that affair, pretend not to know any
touchant, p. *feignez, v.* *de savoir, v.*
 thing about it. - - Of whomsoever you speak,
parliez, v.
 always speak the truth. - - - To whomsoever you
dites, v. *vous*
 apply, every body will tell you the
adressiez, v. *tout le monde, m.* *dira, v.*
 same thing. - - - With whomsoever you be
chose, f. *Avec, p.* *soyez, v.*
 always behave well.
comportez-vous, v.

When the above pronoun is Englished by *nobody* in
the world, no man living, &c.; it must be attended
 with the negation *ne* before the verb; and when
 speaking in the past tense, *qui que ce fût* must be
 used: ex.

Je n'en ai parlé à qui que ce soit, I mentioned it to no man
 living; to no one.
César ne vouloit se fier à qui que ce fût, Cæsar would trust to no-
 body whatever.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

I spoke to nobody whatever; for I saw
ai parlé, v. *ai vu, v.*
 neither father, mother, nor children. - Charity bids
ordonne, v.
 us to (speak ill) of nobody whatever, and to do
de médire, v. *de faire, v.*
 harm to no man living. - - Never speak to any
de mal, m. *parlez, v.*

body whatever of what I told you. - - He acquainted
fit part à, v.
 nobody in the world with his projects. - - My brother
de projet, m.
 was so honest, that he mistrusted nobody at
étoit, v. se défioit, de, v.
 all. - - Cromwell would trust his life to nobody
voulut, v. confier, v. vie, f.
 whatever.

The above observation is to be made with respect to
quoi que ce soit, quoi que ce fût, only used in speaking
 of inanimate objects. *Quiconque* is indeclinable, and
 always used in the singular.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My brother enjoys ^{so²} good³ a¹ health⁴, that
jouit de, v. si
 (for these) three years he never complained
depuis, p. s'est plaint, v.
 of any thing whatever. - - - He is so lazy, that
 he applies to nothing whatever. - - - You
s'applique, v.
 may go and take a walk in the garden,
pouvez, v. aller, v. vous promener, v.
 but do not touch any thing whatever. - - Who-
touchez à, v.
 ever believes every thing which (he is told,) is
croit, v. on lui dit, v.
 often deceived. - - - He (is ordered) to stop
trompé, p.p. à ordre, v. de arrêter, v.
 every one that shall go that way.
passera, v. par-là.

It must be observed, that the numeral adjective *one*,
 used as a pronoun indefinite, and admitting of a plural
 termination, is not to be expressed in French, when it
 immediately follows an adjective of colour, or any other
 expressing the shape or size of the object which it im-
 plies; but the adjective must be put in the same number

and gender as the substantive which is understood in English: ex. -

Quel habit achetez-vous ? What coat shall you buy ?
un bleu ou un vert ? a blue one or a green one ?

J'ai trouvé deux nids d'oiseaux ; dans l'un il y avoit des œufs, et des petits dans l'autre, I have found two birds' nests ; there were eggs in one, and young ones in the other.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

What kind of a hat will you have ? a black
espèce, f. *noir, adj.*
 one, or a white one ? a round one, or a
blanc, adj. *rond, adj.*

cocked one ? - - My father has sold
retroussé, adj. *vendu, p.p.*

one of his horses ; which is it ? the black one or
ce

the gray one ? - - Were there many flowers in
gris, adj. *Y avoit-il*

his garden ? Yes, there were very fine ones,
très, adv.

which my father had sent him from Hol-
envoyé, p.p.

land. - - Here are several pair of shoes, which
Voici, adv. *soulier, m.*

will you have ? the red ones, or the white
rouge, adj.

ones ? I prefer the black ones.
préfère, v.

Tout—que. *Tout*, preceding a noun immediately followed by *que*, is indeclinable in the masculine and declinable in the feminine, before nouns beginning with a consonant, and must be repeated before every noun in the sentence : ex.

Tout savant qu'il est, il se trompe quelquefois, As learned as he is, he sometimes mistakes.

Toute savante qu'elle est, For all she is learned, she
elle se trompe quelque- sometimes mistakes.
fois,

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

For all my sister is ugly, she gets friends
laid, adj. *se fait, v.*
every-where. - - As amiable as she is, she
par-tout, adv. *aimable, adj.*
does not please me at all. - - - For all they are
en *plait, v.* *du tout, adv.*
rich, they give nothing to the poor. - - -
donnent, v. *pauvre, adj.*
Your mother, although she is young, appears
parôît, v.
old. - - - As generous as he is he has not given
âgé, adj. *a, v.* *donné, p.p.*
me one farthing. - - His aunt, for all she is angry
liard, m. *tante, f.* *fâché, adj.*
with him, will forgive him his faults, as great
contre, p. *pardonna, v.* *faute, f.*
as they are. - - - As young, amiable, handsome,
soient, subj. pr. *beau, adj.*
and rich, as my friend's sisters are, they were
étoient, v.
not yet married the last time I saw
encore, adv. *fois, f.* *vis, v.*
them.

N. B. This will be seen again among the conjunctions.

To the above pronouns may be added the three following expressions, which are generally used in an indefinite or indeterminate manner :

Je ne sais qui, I know not who, whom.
Je ne sais quoi, I know not what.
Je ne sais quel, quelle, &c. I know not which or what.

Je ne sais qui is only said of persons, and signifies a person we do not know. *Je ne sais quoi* is only said of

things, and signifies an object which cannot precisely be named or defined: *Je ne sais quel* is said speaking of both persons and things; lastly, we sometimes put *un* before *Je ne sais qui*, and indifferently *un* or *le* before *Je ne sais quoi*: ex.

Je ne sais qui me parle,

I know not who speaks to me.

Il parle de je ne sais quoi,

He speaks of I know not what.

Je vis je ne sais quel homme,

I saw I know not what man.

Il parle d'un je ne sais qui,

He speaks of I know not whom.

J'ai lu une comédie intitulée, le je ne sais quoi,

I have read a play which has for its title I know not what.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

When I paid a visit to my friend, I addressed
rendis, v. *adressai, v.*
 myself to I know not whom. - - He (keeps company
fréquente, v.
 with) I know not whom, and that displeases her. - -
déplait, v.

Whilst she was speaking to him, she was
Pendant que, c. *parloit, v.*

accosted by I know not whom. - - There is
abordé, p.p. *par, p.* *Il y a, v.*

I know not what mean in that behaviour. - - -
de bas, adj. *conduite, f.*

He complains of I know not what. - - When I
se plaint, v.

went in, I saw I know not what man, what wo-
entraî, v.

man, what pictures, what figures. - - She speak
portrait, m. *figure, f.*

to I know not whom. - - There is in that I
là-dedans, adv.

know not what that pleases me.
plait, v.

RECAPITULATORY or promiscuous EXERCISES upon all the PRONOUNS.

I speak French. - - You speak English. - -
parle, v. *parlez, v.*
 We do not understand what they say to us. - -
comprendons, v. *disent, v.*
 She speaks to you, and robs you (at the same)
parle, v. *vole, v.* *en même*
 time. - - We have not seen them. - - Your
tems, m. *avons, v.* *vus, p.p.*
 mother came to see me yesterday, and I
vint, v. *voir, v.* *hier, adv.*
 will go to see her to-morrow. - - Is there any body
irai, v. *demain, adv.* *Est-il, v.*
 that esteems her more than I do? - - Attention,
estime, v.
 cares, credit, money, I have put every thing
soin, m. *mis, p.p.*
 in use. - - They are happy, but we are
en, p. *usage, m.* *heureux, adj.*
 not so. - - Every body thinks I am the mother of
croit, v.
 that child; I assure you I am not. - - - Ladies,
Mesdames, pl.
 are you the companions of Miss le Noir? Yes,
êtes, v. *compagne, f.*
 we are. - - That dictionary costs me three guineas,
coûte, v.
 but I owe much to it. - - Whatever may be
dois, v. *beaucoup, adv.* *soient, v.*
 your troubles, you ought to write to me more
peine, f. *devriez, v.* *écrire, v.*
 frequently. - - I will lend you the book which she
souvent, adv. *prêterai, v.*
 has sent me. - - Believe me, he is very
envoyé, p.p. *Croyez, v.*
 ill. - - - I shall be very glad to go
malade, adj. *serai, v.* *aise, adj.* *de aller, v.*

there with you; for I have something to tell
avec, p. car, c. à dire, v.
 him. - - I love your sister, and I owe her re-
aime, v. res-
 spect. - - Give me my hat and cloak. - -
pect, m. chapeau, m. mantelet, m.
 I have dined with your father and mother. - -
diné, p. p.
 They¹ often⁴ procure³ me² that plea-
souvent, adv. procurent, v.
 sure. - - If it be not an indiscretion on my part,
ce est, v. de
 pray tell me what passed between you
de grâce, s'est passé, v. entre, p.
 and them. - - They have sent you good apples :
pomme, f.
 Yes, there were some good ones and some bad
Il y avoit, v. mauvais, adj.
 ones. - - Write to me, do not write to her. - -
Ecrivez, v.
 Carry some to your sister. - - I will do whatever
Portez, v. ferai, v.
 you please. - - - The Thames is a very fine
plaira, v. Tamise, f.
 river; it divides London into two parts. - -
rivière, f. divise, v. en, p. partie, f.
 London is the capital of England, as Paris is that
capitale, f.
 of France; it is a fine city, but some of its streets
rue, f.
 are very inconvenient and narrow. - - Brest
incommode, adj. étroit, adj.
 is a fine sea - port, in France, but its entrance
mer, f. port, m. entrée, f.
 is difficult and dangerous. - - Brother, these
difficile, adj.
 books are mine, and not yours. - - Your
non pas, adv.
 exercise is better than mine, but it is not so
thème, m.

good as your sister's. - - Do you think of
bien, adv. *pensez, v.* à
 me? Yes, I do. - - You do not know what vexes
pense, v. *fâche, v.*
 me. - - I will not accept of any of the
veux, v. *accepter, v.*
 terms which they offer me. - - Whom ought
condition, f. *offrent, v.* *devons, v.*
 we to worship? God, who is the father of
adorer, v. *Dieu, m.*
 them that love him, and the protector of those
aiment, v.
 that fear him. - - Of all those who contend
craignent, v. *disputent, v.*
 against religion, some do it because it per-
contre, p. *font, v.* *parceque, c.* *em-*
 plexes them; others, because they wish to
barrasse, v. *veulent, v.*
 have the glory of perplexing its defenders. - -
embarrasser, v. *défenseur, m.*
 Those trees are well exposed to the sun,
arbre, m. *exposé, p.p.* *soleil, m.*
 nevertheless their fruits are not good. - - I believe
cependant, adv. *crois, v.*
 your uncle is arrived. - - His ability is not so
oncle, m. *arrivé, p.p.* *habileté, f.*
 great as yours. - - Two rivals are generally
grand, adj. *rival, m.*
 enemies of one another. - - Sister, who gave you
a donné, v.
 that letter? Our uncle's servant. - - - What does
lettre, f. *domestique, m.*
 he write to you? That his library is at our
écrit, v. *bibliothèque, f.*
 service; and I assure you that he has a very good
très, adv.
 one. - - His letters please me so much, that I
plaisent, v.
 wish to increase their number. - - Both my
veux, v. *augmenter, v.*

father and aunt are now at Rome ; the former
à présent

writes once a week, the latter scarcely writes
écrit, v. une fois, f. à peine

to me twice a year. - - - He that wants
deux fois manque de, v.

virtue wants (all things). - - - That lady pleases
tout, m. dame, f. plait, v.

you, for you¹ are³ always⁴ speaking³ of her². - - -
car, c.

The beauty of the mind creates admira-
beauté, f. esprit, m. donne, v.

tion ; that of the soul gains esteem, and that
âme, f. donne, v. estime, f.

of the body love. - - - Most friends are more
corps, m. amour, m.

attached to our fortune, than they are
attaché, p.p. que-ne, c.

to our person. - - - Whoever is without virtue,
sans, p.

seldom² values¹ men ; and whoever is
rarement, adv. estime, v.

too good, values them (too much). - - - It
trop, adv. trop, adv. Ce

is she who told me that this house is not
a dit, v. maison, f.

yours. - - You believe that Mrs. D. is in your interests,
croyez, v. intérêt, m.

and I believe nothing of it. - - - Ambition
crois, v. ne-rien, adv.

(tramples upon) wisdom, honor, probity, and on
foule aux pieds sur, p.

their ruins, it lays the foundation of its great-
ruine, f. élève, v. fondement, m. gran-

ness. - - Whatever her intention may be, I¹ do
leur, f. soit, v. ∞

²not⁶ love⁵ her³ the less⁷ for it⁴. - - I assure you that
aime, v. ∞

I have answered both her letter and her brother's. - - -
Nobody in the world has complained of your com-
s'est, v. plaint, p.p.

duct. - - When you read the history of the Roman

Quand, c. lirez, v. histoire, f. Romain, adj.
emperors, you will find one (of them) whose name
empereur, m. trouverez, v.

was Nero. - - - The study of geography is absolute-
géographie, f. absolu-

ly necessary to him who has a taste for his-
ment, adv. du goût, m.

tory. - - - He that sold us this clock did not
a veudu, v. pendule, f. a

cheat us. - - - What do you think of it? - - -
trompé, p.p. pensez, v.

Whoever cheats me shall repent (of it). - - -
trompe, v. se repentira, v.

Every body thinks we shall have peace. - - When I
croit, v. aurons, v. paix, f.

went in, the members of the assembly were
entrai, v. étoient, v.

seated every one in his place. - - - I, who did not
assis, p.p. à

know that they were reconciled, was much
savois, v. que, e. réconciliés, p.p. fus, v. fort, adv.

surprised to see them together. - - - England owes
de voir, v. ensemble, adv. doit, v.

her riches to her naval strength and the encourage-
forces, f. pl.

ment she gives to her commerce. - - We speak
donne, v. parlons, v.

of what has happened to him. - - Well! if he
est, v. arrivé, p.p. Eh bien, int.

spend other people's money, he does not spend
dépense, v.

yours. - - - My house is like others, it has its
maison, f. a, v.

beauties as well as its inconveniences. - - - She who
beauté, f. incommodité, f.

(was speaking) to you is not yet mar-
parloit, v. encore, adv.

ried. - - Her father, mother, brothers, sisters, uncles,
oncle, m.

and aunts, in short, all her relations, are dead,
tante, f. enfin, c. parent, m. & f.

and have left her a considerable fortune. - -
ont, v. laissé, p. p.

Those gentlemen have fine horses, but mine are
cheval, m.

finer than theirs. - - Do you know any of
connoissez, v.

those ladies? Yes, I know some of them. - - -
connois, v.

For all they are young and handsome, they have a
ont, v.

great deal of modesty and virtue. - - Yes, niece, but
nièce, f.

they are both rich and proud. - - - - - Desire
orgueilleux, adj. Priez, v.

him to bring them here. - - - Is that the gown
de amener, v. Est-ce robe, f.

for which you gave five guineas? - - If I
pour, p. avez donné, v.

had been in your place, I (would have)
eusse, v. été, p. p. à aurois, v.

preferred the white one to the black one. - - -
préfééré, p. p.

How many books are there in that library? There
y a-t-il bibliothèque, f.

are three thousand seven hundred and twenty-seven
 in the library, fifty-two upon the table, and nineteen
 in my room. - - Whose house is this? It belongs

appartient, v.
 to I know not whom. - - There is I know not what

Il y a, v.
 in the colour, which pleases much. - - To what

dans, p. plait, v.
 (does he apply himself)? - - This apple, and that he

s'applique-t-il, v.
 gave you, are very good. - - - Give me either

donna, v. Donnez, v.
 of them. - - I will send you some thither. - - -

enverrai, v.

"I cannot sell it to you for so² small³ a¹
ne peux pas, v. vendre, v. pour, p.
 sum⁴. - - I prefer the beauty of the mind to that
somme, f. préfère, v.
 of the body. - - Some love one thing, some another.
aiment, v.
 - - She says she hates that man; many think she
dit, v. hait, v.
 loves him. - - He whom nobody pleases, is more
aime, v. à plait, v.
 unhappy than he who pleases nobody. - - I
malheureux, adj. à
 was near your sister when that happened
étais, v. auprès de, p. quand, c. arriva, v.
 to her. - - Both his father and mother died
moururent, v.
 on the same day. - - - As covetous as he is, he
avare, adj.
 gave me a guinea. - - - There are many people
a donné, v. Il y a
 whom we esteem, because we do not know them. - -
parceque, c.
 Whatever has happened to you, I am very sorry
soit, v. fâché, adj.
 for it. - - He would do it in spite of any
voulut, v. faire, v. en, p. dépit, m.
 body whatever. - - Learning is preferable to riches,
Science, f.
 and virtue to both. - - - Some philosophers have
philosophe, m. ont, v.
 thought that the fixed stars were so many
cru, p.p. fixe, adj. étoile, f. étoient, v.
 suns. - - See with what care, attention, and per-
Voyez, v.
 severance, every animal (rears up) its young ones.
élève, v. petit, adj.
 - - Here are two grammars, which do you pre-
Voici, adv.
 fer? I prefer this to that. - - - Both are very
 good. - - - He believes nothing of what you
croit, v. ne rien, adv.

told him. - - You blame him who does
avez dit, v. blâmez, v.
 not deserve it. - - - Friend, to whom did you
mérite, v. avez, v.
 speak ? I spoke to nobody ; for I saw
parlé, p.p. ai parlé, v. car, c. ai vu, v.
 neither of them. - - Each country has its peculiar
particulier, adj.
 customs ; in France, they eat with the fork, in England,
coutume, f.
 we eat with the knife ; in France, they eat the meat
 well done ; in England, we eat it half raw.
cuit, p.p. à moitié cru, adj.

SECT. IV.

OF VERBS AND THEIR DIFFERENT SORTS.

Verbs are usually divided into seven sorts, viz.

1. *Les verbes auxiliaires,* auxiliary.
2. *Les verbes actifs,* active.
3. *Les verbes passifs,* passive.
4. *Les verbes neutres,* neuter.
5. *Les verbes réfléchis,* reflective.
6. *Les verbes personnels,* personal.
7. *Les verbes impersonnels,* impersonal.

Some of them are regular, that is to say, they follow the general rule of the conjugation to which they belong ; others do not, and are called *irregular*.

The *auxiliary verbs* are, *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be. These two auxiliaries are used to conjugate all the compound tenses of the other verbs.

The *active verbs*.—In this class, the action is transitive, that is, it passes from the subject to the object : ex.

Le maître punit les écoliers paresseux, The master punishes the lazy scholars.

The active verb sometimes governs two cases : one

to which the action directly refers, or which is the direct object of the action, and is therefore called the *direct* or *absolute case* ; the other, to which the action refers but indirectly, and it is called the *indirect* or *relative case* : ex.

Votre sœur a écrit une Your sister wrote a long
longue lettre à mon frère, letter to my brother.

A long letter is the direct or absolute case, and *to my brother*, the indirect or relative case, of the verb *wrote*. The direct case can be no other but the *accusative* of a noun or pronoun, but the indirect is either the *genitive*, *dative*, or *ablative*.

In the *passive verbs*, the action is received or suffered by the subject : ex.

Les écoliers paresseux seront Lazy scholars shall be
punis, punished.

In the *neuter verbs*, the action is intransitive, that is, it remains in the agent : ex.

<i>Je dors,</i>	I sleep.		<i>Vous voyagez,</i>	You travel.
<i>Nous étudions,</i>	We study.		<i>Elle soupire,</i>	She sighs.

In the *reflected verbs*, the action returns upon the agent that produces it : ex.

<i>Il se repent,</i>	He repents himself.
<i>Elle se loue,</i>	She praises herself.

These verbs have always *se* before their infinitive, and are conjugated with a double pronoun.

The *personal verbs* are those which are conjugated with three persons, in the singular and plural, throughout all their tenses.

The *impersonal verbs* have but the third person of the singular number.

N. B. There is a kind of verbs which may be distinguished by the name of *reduplicative*, always expressing a repetition of the action : ex.

<i>Recommencer,</i>	To begin again,
<i>Refaire,</i>	To do again, &c.

In these verbs, the English word *again* is to be

rendered in French by the syllable *re* prefixed to the radix of the verb, and not by *encore*.

All the above verbs may be *simple* or *compound*.

A verb is *simple* which cannot be divided without losing its meaning : as,

<i>Appeler,</i>	To call ;		<i>Voir,</i>	To see ;
<i>Bâtir,</i>	To build ;		<i>Prendre,</i>	To take ;
<i>Mentir,</i>	To lie ;		<i>Vivre,</i>	To live ;

which would mean nothing, if they were divided.

A verb is *compound* when it is preceded by one or more syllables, as,

<i>Rappeler,</i>	To recall.		<i>Prévoir,</i>	To foresee.
<i>Rebâtir,</i>	To rebuild.		<i>Entreprendre,</i>	To undertake.
<i>Démentir,</i>	To belie.		<i>Survivre,</i>	To outlive, &c.

These last verbs are generally formed by prefixing to them part or the whole of a preposition.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

To conjugate verbs is to give them different inflections or terminations, according to their *moods*, *tenses*, *persons*, and *numbers*.

MOODS.

Mood or *mode*, in the sense it is taken here, is a grammatical term, which means the *manner* of affirming, or denoting, in the verbs, by different inflections.

There are, in the French language, four moods, absolutely distinct from each other, by the several inflections, or by some other difference. They are :

<i>L'infinitif,</i>	The infinitive.
<i>L'indicatif,</i>	The indicative.
<i>L'impératif,</i>	The imperative.
<i>Le subjonctif, ou</i>	The subjunctive, or con-
<i>conjonctif,</i>	junctive.

Of the INFINITIVE MOOD.

This mood is so called, because it only expresses the action or signification of the verb in an *indefinite* and *indeterminate* manner, that is, without affirmation,

and without any relation as to time, number, or person :

ex.

<i>Parler,</i>	To speak.
<i>Chanter,</i>	To sing.
<i>Danser,</i>	To dance.

Of the INDICATIVE MOOD.

This mood is thus called, because it not only *indicates* the affirmation in the different tenses of the verbs, but likewise the time, number, and person ; without being preceded or governed by either conjunction or verb :

<i>J'écris une lettre,</i>	I write a letter.
<i>Il chante une chanson,</i>	He sings a song.

Ecris and *chante* are two verbs in the indicative mood, because they do not require to be preceded by a conjunction* or another verb to make a complete sense. The definition of this mood will be better understood, by comparing the little that has been said with what is going to be said with respect to the subjunctive mood.

Of the IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The name which has been given to this mood, is derived from a Latin word which signifies to *command* ; and the imperative is in fact but a manner of denoting in the verbs the action of *commanding*, *entreating*, *praying*, *exhorting*, and sometimes *forbidding* : ex.

<i>Ne méprisez pas les avis</i>	Do not despise the advice
<i>que je vous donne,</i>	which I give you.

It is easy to perceive that this manner of speaking is but an exhortation, as if I had said,

<i>Je vous exhorte, je vous prie,</i>	I exhort, I entreat you, not
<i>de ne pas mépriser mes</i>	to despise my advice.
<i>avis,</i>	

This mood has no first person in the singular, because

* Among the conjunctions, some govern the indicative, others the subjunctive : this will be explained hereafter.

it is impossible for a man to command himself ; and if it have the first person plural, it is because we speak as much to others as to ourselves ; as when we say,

Evitons tout ce qui pourroit *Let us avoid* every thing
offenser les autres, that might offend others.

The second person singular and the first and second plural admit of no pronouns before them ; as to the third, in both numbers, it is always preceded by the pronoun *il* or *elle*, &c. and the conjunction *que*.

Of the SUBJUNCTIVE, or CONJUNCTIVE.

The name of subjunctive, or conjunctive, sufficiently conveys what its use is in a sentence. It may be defined thus ; a manner of expressing the different tenses of the verbs without any affirmation. In fact, the subjunctive never affirms ; it is always preceded by, or subject to some conjunction ; and if it should be met with in a sentence containing an affirmation, that affirmation can only be expressed by the verb that precedes the subjunctive, which is used but to modify that affirmation. In the subsequent sentence,

Je travaille afin que vous I work that you may rest
vous reposiez, yourself,

the affirmation is only expressed by *je travaille*, I work, and what follows only expresses the end which I propose by working, viz. to procure you some rest. Again,

Je désire que vous fassiez I wish that you may do
votre devoir, your duty ;

I affirm that I wish ; but it is clear there is no affirmation in these words, *that you may do your duty*, since I do not say that you do, that you have done, that you will do your duty ; but only that I wish you may do it. My wish is not doubtful ; but it is very doubtful whether you will or may do your duty.

TENSES.

There are, strictly speaking, but three natural and proper *tenses* in the verbs : viz.

<i>Le passé,</i>	The past.
<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le futur,</i>	The future.

In the French language, the tenses are divided in the following manner, viz. five in the infinitive mood ; three of them are simple, the two others compound.

In the simple tenses, the verb is expressed in one word : ex.

<i>Parler,</i>	To speak.
<i>Chantant,</i>	Singing.
<i>Dansé,</i>	Danced.

The compound tenses are conjugated with some one of the auxiliary verbs, *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be; joined to a participle passive : ex.

<i>Avoir parlé,</i>	To have spoken.
<i>Ayant chanté,</i>	Having sung.
<i>Etre aimé,</i>	To be loved.
<i>Etant aimé,</i>	Being loved.

SIMPLE TENSES.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le participe actif,</i>	The participle active.
<i>Le participe passif,</i>	The participle passive.

COMPOUND.

<i>Le prétérît,</i>	The preterite.
<i>Le participe passé ou composé,</i>	The participle past or compound.

There are ten tenses in the indicative mood, viz. five simple and five compound : they are,

SIMPLE.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>L'imparfait,</i>	The imperfect.
<i>Le prétérît,</i>	The preterite.

<i>Le futur,</i>	The future.
<i>Le conditionnel,</i>	The conditional.

COMPOUND.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>L'imparfait,</i>	The imperfect.
<i>Le prétérít,</i>	The preterite.
<i>Le futur,</i>	The future.
<i>Le conditionnel,</i>	The conditional.

N. B. The imperative admits of no tense but the present.

The subjunctive mood has four tenses; two simple and two compound.

SIMPLE.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le prétérít,</i>	The preterite.

COMPOUND.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le prétérít,</i>	The preterite.

Before we proceed any further on the conjugations, it has been thought proper to explain the different uses of the above tenses, as one of the most important articles in a language, the precision of which partly depends on the difference which custom sets between one tense and another with regard to the sense of the sentence. We shall endeavour to be short and concise, and say nothing but what is useful, in hopes that the following explanation will be sufficient to remove a difficulty which constantly puzzles the learner.

TENSES of the INDICATIVE MOOD.

SIMPLE.

PRESENT.

This tense is used when the state, action, or im-

pression, mentioned by the verb, *is existing, doing, or happening*, at the very time we are speaking: ex.

<i>Je me porte bien,</i>	<i>I am well.</i>
<i>Votre sœur est malade,</i>	<i>Your sister is ill.</i>
<i>Nous nous promenons,</i>	<i>We are walking.</i>
<i>Vous écrivez,</i>	<i>You are writing.</i>
<i>Ils jouent,</i>	<i>They are playing, &c.</i>

The present is also used,

1. When speaking of actions or things which we *habitually do, are accustomed to do, or can do*: ex.

<i>Nous dinons toujours à deux heures,</i>	<i>We always dine at two o'clock.</i>
<i>Elle étudie l'histoire,</i>	<i>She studies history.</i>
<i>Vous parlez François,</i>	<i>You speak French.</i>
<i>Lit-il l'Anglois?</i>	<i>Does he read English?</i>

2. When speaking of actions which are to be done in a very short time, we generally use this tense instead of the future: ex.

<i>Je pars ce soir pour la campagne,</i>	<i>I set out this evening for the country.</i>
<i>Que faites-vous demain?</i>	<i>What do you do to-morrow?</i>
Instead of	
<i>Je partirai ce soir pour la campagne,</i>	<i>I shall set out this evening for the country.</i>
<i>Que ferez-vous demain?</i>	<i>What will you do to-morrow?</i>

3. This tense is also constantly used in French instead of the preterite and compound of the *preterite*, especially in *orations* or *set discourses*, and in *poetry*, in order to represent a past action or event as present to the mind of the hearers or readers.

IMPERFECT.

This tense has two uses; *in the first*, which probably is the origin of its name, it expresses an action *present or doing* at the time of an action *that is past*: as when I say,

Mon frère apprenoit sa leçon quand vous arrivâtes, *My brother was learning his lesson when you arrived.*

In the above sentence, the act of learning, though past with respect to my narration, was present at the moment your arrival took place; therefore this tense is but imperfectly preterite and imperfectly present.

In the second, the imperfect is employed every time we speak of *actions of habit*, or *actions reiterated* at a time which is not *defined*: ex.

Quand j'étois à Londres, j'allois souvent voir mes amis, *When I was in London, I often went to see my friends;*

that is, I often *used* to go, or I frequently *went*, &c.

The imperfect is likewise used when we speak of the *character*, or some *inherent* and *distinctive quality*, of persons or things no longer existing; and after the English conjunction *if*, though the verb be preceded by *should*, *could*, *would*: ex.

Philippe, père d'Alexandre le Grand, étoit le plus fin politique de son temps, *Phillip, the father of Alexander the Great, was the deepest politician of his time.*

César avoit je ne sais quoi de grand dans la physionomie, *Cæsar had I know not what of great in his physiognomy.*

Carthage faisoit un prodigieux commerce par le moyen de ses vaisseaux, qui alloient jus qu' aux Indes, *Carthage carried on a prodigious trade by the means of her ships, which went as far as the Indies.*

Palmire et Persépolis étoient de grandes et belles villes, S'il venoit, je le payerois, *Palmyra and Persepolis were large and fine cities. If he would come, or came, I would pay him.*

George II. étoit d'une taille plutôt petite que moyenne ; il avoit les yeux très-saillans, le nez grand, et une belle complexion ; il étoit doux, modéré et humain ; sobre et régulier dans sa manière de vivre : il se plaisoit dans la pompe et dans l'appareil militaire, et étoit naturellement brave ; il aimoit la guerre comme soldat, l'étudioit comme une science, et avoit, sur ce sujet, une correspondance établie avec quelques-uns des plus grands généraux que l'Allemagne ait produit.

George II. was, in his person, rather lower than the middle size ; he had remarkable prominent eyes, a high nose, and a fair complexion ; he was mild, moderate and human ; in his way of living, sober and regular : he delighted in military pomp and parade, and was naturally brave : he loved war as a soldier, studied it as a science, and had, on this account, a settled correspondence with some of the greatest generals that Germany had produced.

From the above instances it might confidently be believed, that every difficulty attending the use of this tense will be entirely removed ; I shall however add, as a farther illustration, that whenever the verb, which in English is in the preterite, can be rendered by the past tense of the verb *to be*, and that preterite changed into the participle active, or when that preterite can be turned into the verb in the infinitive mood preceded by *used*, that past tense must be made in French by the imperfect.

PRETERITE.

This tense is so called because it always expresses an action done at a time *determined* or *specified* by an adverb, or some circumstance in the speech, and so entirely elapsed, that nothing more remains of the time when that action was doing: ex.

Je fus malade hier pendant deux heures, *I was ill yesterday for two hours.*

<i>La dernière fois que nous al-</i>	<i>The last time we went to</i>
<i>lâmes le voir, nous eûmes</i>	<i>see him, we had a kind</i>
<i>un accueil favorable,</i>	<i>reception.</i>
<i>Vous écrivîtes à votre frère</i>	<i>You wrote to your brother</i>
<i>il y a huit jours,</i>	<i>eight days ago.</i>
<i>Ils essuyèrent de grandes</i>	<i>They underwent great</i>
<i>pertes l'année passée,</i>	<i>losses last year.</i>

FUTURE.

This tense simply expresses that an action will be done at a time that is not yet come : ex.

<i>Je vous verrai demain à</i>	<i>I will see you to-morrow in</i>
<i>Londres,</i>	<i>London.</i>
<i>Mon frère vous écrira la</i>	<i>My brother will write to you</i>
<i>semaine prochaine,</i>	<i>next week.</i>

In French, as well as in English, we sometimes express an action that is to be done instantly, by the verb *aller*, or *s'en aller*, to go, immediately followed by an infinitive : ex.

<i>Je vais, or je m'en vais</i>	<i>I am going to write to my</i>
<i>écrire à ma tante,</i>	<i>aunt.</i>
<i>Je vais, or je m'en vais</i>	<i>I am going to set out.</i>
<i>partir,</i>	

Which signify,

<i>Je lui écrirai tout présen-</i>	<i>I will write to her immedi-</i>
<i>tement,</i>	<i>ately.</i>
<i>Je partirai dans l'instant,</i>	<i>I will set out instantly.</i>

To express an uncertainty in a future tense, that is, to express that it is not decided that such a thing will be done, we make use of the verb *devoir* immediately followed by a verb in the infinitive mood, and that is the only instance wherein *devoir* does not imply obligation, necessity, &c. : ex.

<i>Le roi doit partir pour</i>	<i>The king is to set out for</i>
<i>Cheltenham vers le mi-</i>	<i>Cheltenham about the</i>
<i>lieu du mois de Juillet,</i>	<i>middle of July, and is</i>
<i>et ne doit revenir qu'à</i>	<i>not to return till the lat-</i>
<i>la fin du mois d'Août,</i>	<i>ter end of August.</i>

That is,

On suppose que le roi partira, &c. et qu'il ne reviendra, &c.

It is supposed that the king will set out, &c. and will not return till, &c.

CONDITIONAL.

The name of this tense is a true definition of it: in fact, it is always used to express some *condition* or *supposition*, and has always a reference to the *present*, because, by supposing the condition effected, the action, mentioned by the conditional, becomes present: ex.

Je lirois, si j'avois des livres, I would read, if I had books.

Vous auriez la fièvre, si vous mangiez de ce fruit, You would have a fever, if you ate of that fruit.

Je serois mortifié, s'il perdait son procès, I should be mortified, if he should lose his law-suit.

It is sometimes used, instead of the future, after the conjunction *que*: ex.

Il a promis qu'il viendrait, He has promised to come, or that he will come.

This tense is often called the *uncertain tense*, because it expresses an action made uncertain by the conditional that follows it; and some grammarians place it among the tenses of the subjunctive mood, though it is very certain that it never is governed by any of the conjunctions which require a subjunctive mood after them.

COMPOUND TENSES.

COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.

The compound of the present is employed in two different manners,

1. It expresses an action past in an indeterminate

time, but not very far distant from the time we speak: thus we must say,

<i>J'ai vu mademoiselle votre</i>	<i>I have seen your sister, and</i>
<i>sœur, et lui ai parlé,</i>	<i>spoken to her.</i>
<i>Le roi de Prusse a conquis</i>	<i>The king of Prussia has</i>
<i>la Silésie,</i>	<i>conquered Silesia.</i>
<i>Cela s'est passé avanta-</i>	<i>That has passed advanta-</i>
<i>geusement pour votre</i>	<i>geously for your cousin.</i>
<i>cousin,</i>	

In the above sentence, the action is certainly past, but the time when it passed is neither determined nor specified.

2. It expresses a time definite and determinate, but of which there yet remains some part to elapse: ex.

<i>Les fruits ont très-bien</i>	<i>Fruits have very well suc-</i>
<i>réussi cette année,</i>	<i>ceeded this year.</i>
<i>Nous n'avons pas eu beau-</i>	<i>We have not had much</i>
<i>coup de neige cet hiver,</i>	<i>snow this winter.</i>
<i>Il a plu toute cette semaine,</i>	<i>It has rained all this week,</i>
<i>tout ce mois,</i>	<i>all this month.</i>
<i>Nous avons vu d'étranges</i>	<i>We have seen strange</i>
<i>choses dans ce siècle,</i>	<i>things in this century.</i>

In the above sentences, *this year, this week, this winter, &c.* are times which still last, and are not yet elapsed.

To express an action recently past, we sometimes make use of the verb *venir* immediately followed by *de*, and the verb in the infinitive mood: ex.

<i>Je viens de le voir passer,</i>	<i>I have just seen him go by.</i>
<i>Le roi vient d'arriver,</i>	<i>The king is but just arrived.</i>
<i>Elle vient d'expirer,</i>	<i>She is but just dead.</i>

The same tense may be expressed by the verb *faire*, preceded by the negation *ne* and followed by the conjunction *que*, with an infinitive preceded by *de*: ex.

<i>Il ne fait que d'arriver,</i>	<i>He is but just arrived.</i>
<i>Je ne fais que de sortir,</i>	<i>I have but just gone out.</i>

N. B. This particle *de* is here indispensable, because, without it, the expression would have quite another sense, and would express a continuation or a frequent reiteration in the action : ex.

Vous ne faites que sortir, You *do* nothing *but* go out.
Elle ne fait que jouer et danser, She *does* nothing *but* play
 and dance.

COMPOUND OF THE IMPERFECT.

This tense expresses an action past before another which is past also, but with this difference, that the action expressed by this tense is the principal object of the person who speaks, and the following sentence is subordinate to that expressed by the compound of the imperfect. So that, though the time of that subordinate sentence be defined, that of the principal sentence is not the less indeterminate, because the former has no influence on the latter. As when we say,

Nous avions dîné lorsqu'il arriva, We *had dined* when he
 arrived,

our principal object is to express the action of dining as past, without determining at what time, but only before an action which is past also, without, however, the latter being a consequence of the former; for, we do not mean to say, that he stayed, or waited, till we had dined, to arrive.

COMPOUND OF THE PRETERITE.

This tense also expresses an action past or done before another which is likewise past; and it is determined by the following sentence, which is the principal object of the attention. Thus when we say,

Quand ils eurent achevé de jouer, ils se mirent à chanter, When they *had done* play-
 ing, they began singing;

we mean at first to convey that they *began singing*, and that it was not till they *had done playing*: in which case, the action of having done playing is subordinate to this, *they began singing*, and consequently the latter determines the time of the other.

The following observation is very plain, and will in some manner fix the use of the above tense, viz. that it is hardly ever used except after the conjunctions

<i>Aussitôt que,</i>	} As soon as ;	<i>Après que,</i>	After ;
<i>D'abord que,</i>		<i>Lorsque,</i>	} When ;
<i>Dès que,</i>		<i>Quand,</i>	

which never precede a compound of the imperfect, unless the verb express a custom or habit.

Lastly, we must use the compound of the preterite when the adverb *bientôt*, soon, precedes or follows the verb *was* or *had*, to express an action or thing as done and accomplished : ex.

<i>L'affaire fut bientôt faite,</i>	The business was <i>soon</i> over.
<i>J'eus bientôt fini de manger,</i>	I had <i>soon</i> done eating.

COMPOUND OF THE FUTURE.

The name of this tense seems at first to convey a contradiction : what is meant by it is, not that an action can be future and past at the same time, but only that the action, which is to come, will be past when another action happens, or even before it happens : ex.

<i>Je serai parti quand vous reviendrez,</i>	I shall be gone when you come back.
<i>Quand vous aurez fini vos affaires, vous viendrez me trouver,</i>	When you have done your business, you shall come to me.

In the first sentence, *I shall be gone*, which is a future time with respect to the present we speak

in, will be a past time by the time you will or purpose to arrive, &c.

COMPOUND of the CONDITIONAL.

This tense generally supposes a condition, as the conditional present, with this difference, that the condition taking place, the action expressed by the verb in the conditional is accomplished and consequently in a past time : ex.

Je vous aurois écrit il y a un mois, si j'eusse su votre adresse, I would have written to you a month ago, if I had known your direction.

The *indicative* mood has another tense, formed by the compound of the present of the verb *avoir*, joined to a participle passive, which has not been inserted in the preceding tenses, on account of its being seldom used : ex.

Quand j'ai eu dîné, je suis parti, When I had dined, I set out.

But it is more elegant and natural to say,

Après avoir dîné, je suis parti, After I had dined, I set out.

TENSES of the SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The subjunctive or conjunctive has no future distinguished from the *present*, because the present of the subjunctive likewise expresses a future tense : ex.

Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne, I do not think he will come.

Add the following observations to the latter :

1. When the verb which precedes the conjunction is in the present or future of the indicative, and when we do not mean to express an action passed in the second verb, we must put this last verb in the present of the subjunctive mood : ex.

Je souhaite que vous réussissiez dans votre entreprise, I wish you may succeed in your undertaking.
J'attendrai qu'il vienne, I will wait till he come.

2. When the verb which is before the conjunction is in some of the past tenses, or conditional, and we wish not to designate by the second verb a past time more distant than that of the first verb, we must put this second verb in the preterite of the subjunctive :

<i>Alexandre ordonna que tous ses sujets l'adorassent comme un dieu,</i>	Alexander ordered, that all his subjects <i>should worship</i> him like a god.
<i>Je voulois que vous écrivissiez à votre sœur,</i>	I wished you to <i>write</i> to your sister.
<i>Il souhaiteroit que vous prissiez des mesures plus convenables,</i>	He would wish you to <i>take</i> more becoming measures.

3. The compound of the present of the subjunctive mood is used when we speak of an action past and accomplished, with regard to the tense of the verb which precedes the conjunction; and this tense is generally the present, compound of the present, or future of the indicative : ex.

<i>Je doute qu'aucun philosophe ait jamais bien connu l'union de l'âme avec le corps,</i>	I doubt whether any philosopher <i>have</i> ever well <i>understood</i> the union of the soul with the body.
<i>Il a fallu que j'aie consulté tous les médecins,</i>	I was obliged to <i>consult</i> all the physicians.
<i>Je n'aurai garde d'y aller, que je n'aie reçu quelque assurance d'être bien accueilli,</i>	I shall by no means go thither, till I <i>have received</i> some assurance of being welcome.

4. After the imperfect, preterite, compound of the imperfect, of the indicative, or one of the two conditionals, we use the compound of the preterite of the subjunctive mood; likewise after the conjunction *if*, when preceding a compound tense : ex.

<i>J'ignorais que vous eussiez embrassé cette profession-là,</i>	I did not know you <i>had embraced</i> that profession.
--	---

<i>Vous n'avez pas cru que je</i>	You did not believe I
<i>fusse arrivée avant vous,</i>	<i>should have arrived before</i>
	<i>you.</i>
<i>Nous aurions été fâchés</i>	We should have been sorry
<i>que vous vous fussiez</i>	<i>if you had applied to any</i>
<i>adressé à d'autres qu'à</i>	<i>others but us.</i>
<i>nous,</i>	

NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

A tense is composed of numbers ; that is, the singular and the plural.

That there are three persons, has already been observed under the personal pronouns ; we have only to remark, that some of these three persons are always joined to the verb as its nominative case, therefore the verb must agree with that nominative in number and person : ex.

Je fais, I do.

Tu fais, Thou dost.

Il fait, He does.

Nous faisons, We do.

Vous faites, You or ye do.

Ils font, They do.

The pronoun *vous*, you, denotes the second person singular and plural, with this difference, that when we speak to a person only, the attribute, or qualifying noun, must be put in the singular : ex.

Vous êtes marié, and not *You are married.*
mariés,

Vous étiez général de l'ar- *You were general of the*
mée and not *généraux,* *army.*

But we must say *mariés* and *généraux*, if we speak to many.

When the verb has two or three nouns or pronouns as it nominatives, it must be put in the plural, though all these nominatives be in the singular ; because two or more nouns in the singular are equivalent to a plural, with regard to verbs as well as to adjectives : ex.

Mon frère et ma sœur sont *My brother and sister are*
partis, *gone.*

This has already been mentioned in the adjectives.

If, among these nominatives, one is of the first person and the other of the second, or one is of the second and the other of the third, the verb must agree with the first in preference to the second, and with the second in preference to the third; observing that, in French, the person spoken to, must be named first; and the person speaking is to be mentioned the last: we must therefore say,

<i>C'est vous et moi qui avons découvert tout ce complot,</i>	It is you and I who <i>have</i> discovered all that plot.
<i>Ce n'est ni vous ni ma sœur qui avez ouvert la porte,</i>	It is neither you nor my sister who <i>have</i> opened the door, &c.
<i>Vous, mon père, et moi, partirons demain,</i>	You, my father, and I, <i>will</i> set out to-morrow.

The pronoun relative *qui*, in these and the like sentences, always takes place of the first or second person, and only agrees with the others in number; it is for this reason we must say,

<i>C'est moi qui suis cause de ce malheur,</i>	It is I who <i>am</i> the cause of that misfortune.
<i>C'est vous qui avez révélé ce secret,</i>	It is you who <i>have</i> reveal- ed that secret.
<i>Ce n'est ni lui ni moi qui l'avons fait,</i>	It is neither he nor I who <i>have</i> done it.

There are four conjugations in the French language. Each is distinguished by the termination of the verb in the infinitive mood.

The first makes	<i>er,</i>	as <i>donner</i> , to give.
The second	<i>ir,</i>	as <i>punir</i> , to punish.
The third	<i>avoir,</i>	as <i>recevoir</i> , to receive.
The fourth	<i>re,</i>	as <i>rendre</i> , to render.

N. B. It is necessary that the learner should be well acquainted with the manner of conjugating the two following verbs, because of the frequency of their occurrence in sentences, and in forming the compound tenses of all other verbs.

CONJUGATION of the AUXILIARY VERB *AVOIR*, TO HAVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Compound of the present.
<i>Avoir</i> , to have.	<i>Avoir eu</i> , to have had.
Participle active.	Compound of the past.
<i>Ayant</i> , having.	<i>Ayant eu</i> , having had.
Participle passive.	
<i>Eu</i> , had.	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.	Plural.
<i>J'ai</i> , I have.	<i>Nous avons</i> , we have.
<i>Tu as</i> , thou hast.	<i>Vous avez</i> , you or ye have.
<i>Il a</i> , he has.	<i>Ils ont</i> , } they have.
<i>Elle a</i> , she has.	<i>Elles ont</i> , }
Imperfect. Sing.	Plural.
<i>J'avois</i> , I had.	<i>Nous avions</i> , we had.
<i>Tu avois</i> , thou hadst.	<i>Vous aviez</i> , you had.
<i>Il avoit</i> , he had.	<i>Ils avoient</i> , they had.
Preterite. Sing.	Plural.
<i>J'eus</i> , I had.	<i>Nous eûmes</i> , we had.
<i>Tu eus</i> , thou hadst.	<i>Vous eûtes</i> , you had.
<i>Il eut</i> , he had.	<i>Ils eurent</i> , they had.

Future. Singular.

J'aurai, I shall or will have.
Tu auras, thou wilt &c. have.
Il aura, he will, &c. have.

Plural.

Nous aurons, we shall, &c. have.
Vous aurez, you will, &c. have.
Ils auront, they will, &c. have.

Conditional. Singular.

J'aurois, I should, could, would, or might have.
Tu aurois, thou wouldst, &c. have.
Il auroit, he would, &c. have.

Plural.

Nous aurions, we should, &c. have.

Vous auriez, you would, &c. have.

Ils auroient, they would, &c. have.

COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive, *eu*, had, to the preceding : ex.

Compound of the Present.

J'ai eu, &c. I have had, &c.

Compound of the Imperfect.

J'avois eu, &c. I had had, &c.

Compound of the Preterite.

J'eus eu, &c. I had had, &c.

Compound of the Future.

J'aurai eu, &c. I will or shall have had, &c.

Compound of the Conditional.

J'aurois eu, &c. I would, should, could, or might have had, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Aie, have thou.

Qu'il ait, let him have.

Qu'elle ait, let her have.

Plural.

Ayons, let us have.

Ayez, have ye or you.

Qu'ils or elles aient, let them have.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que j'aie, that I have, or may have.

tu aies, thou mayest have.

il ait, he may have.

Plural.

Que nous ayons, that we may have.
vous ayez, you may have.
ils aient, they may have.

Preterite.

Singular.

Que j'eusse, that I might have or had.
tu eusses, thou mightest have.
il eût, he might have.

Plural.

Que nous eussions, that we might have.
vous eussiez, you might have.
ils eussent, they might have.

COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive *eu*, had, to the two preceding : ex.

Compound of the Present.

Que j'aie eu, &c. that I may have had.

Compound of the Preterite.

Que j'eusse eu, &c. that I might have had.

The learner ought to conjugate the preceding verb with a negation : ex.

Je n'ai pas, I have not ;
Nous n'avons pas, We have not ;

always placing *ne* before the verb, and *pas* after it.

CONJUGATION of the AUXILIARY VERB

ETRE, TO BE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.

Être, to be.

Participle active.

Êtant, being.

Participle passive.

Êté been.

Compound of the Present.

Avoir été, to have been.

Compound of the Past.

Ayant été, having been.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Je suis, I am.*Tu es*, thou art.*Il est*, he is.

Plural.

Nous sommes, we are.*Vous êtes*, you are.*Ils sont*, they are.

Imperfect. Sing.

J'étois, I was.*Tu étois*, thou wast.*Il étoit*, he was.

Plural.

Nous étions, we were.*Vous étiez*, you were.*Ils étoient*, they were.

Pret. Sing.

Je fus, I was.*Tu fus*, thou wast.*Il fut*, he was.

Plural.

Nous fûmes, we were.*Vous fûtes*, you were.*Ils furent*, they were.

Future. Singular.

Je serai, I shall or will be.*Tu seras*, thou wilt, &c. be.*Il sera*, he will, &c. be.

Plural.

Nous serons, we shall, &c. be.*Vous serez*, you will, &c. be.*Ils seront*, they will, &c. be.

Conditional. Singular.

Je serois, I would, could, should, or might be.*Tu serois*, thou wouldst, &c. be.*Il seroit*, he would, &c. be.

Plural.

Nous serions, we should, &c. be.*Vous seriez*, you would, &c. be.*Ils seroient*, they would, &c. be.

COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive of this verb, *été*, been, to the simple tenses of the indicative mood of the verb *avoir* : ex.

Compound of the Present.

J'ai été, &c. I have been, &c.

Compound of the Imperfect.

J'avois été, &c. I had been, &c.

Compound of the Preterite.

J'eus été, &c. I had been, &c.

Compound of the Future.

J'aurai été, &c. I shall or will have been, &c.

Compound of the Conditional.

J'aurois été, &c. I should, could, would, or might have been, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Sois, be thou.**Qu'il soit, let him be.*

Plural.

*Soyons, let us be.**Soyez, be ye.**Qu'ils soient, let them be.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Que je sois, that I be, or may be.**tu sois, thou mayest be.**il soit, he may be.*

Plural.

*Que nous soyons, that we may be.**vous soyez, you may be.**ils soient, they may be.*

Preterite. Singular.

*Que je fusse, that I might be, or were.**tu fusses, thou mightest be.**il fût, he might be.*

Plural.

*Que nous fussions, that we might be.**vous fussiez, you might be.**ils fussent, they might be.*

COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle past of this verb, *été, been*, to the two simple tenses of the subjunctive mood of the verb *avoir*: ex.

Compound of the Present.

Que j'aie été, that I may have been, &c.

Compound of the Preterite.

Que j'eusse été, &c. that I might have been, &c.

This verb; as well as the preceding, is to be conjugated with the negation: ex.

Je ne suis pas,

I am not.

Nous ne sommes pas,

We are not.

N. B. Here it is peculiarly necessary to observe, that the two above verbs, *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be, are only auxiliaries when they are joined with some participle passive of another verb; otherwise, *être* may properly be called a *substantive verb*; that is, a verb which only expresses the affirmation, without any inherent quality; and the verb *avoir* is an *active one*, which signifies *to possess*.

EXERCISES on the two AUXILIARY VERBS.

GENERAL OBSERVATION.

Every verb must agree with its nominative case in *person* and *number*; but after collective nouns, such as *amas, foule, infinité, nombre, la plûpart, &c.* followed by a genitive, the verb must agree with that genitive in *number*: ex.

La plûpart de ses amis l'ont abandonné, Most of his friends have forsaken him.

In order to ease the learner, the different simple tenses are marked in the following exercises as far as the irregular verbs, when it is hoped every difficulty will be removed by practice and attention. The second person singular, being seldom or never used in conversation, has been omitted throughout the exercises on the verbs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I have a book. - - I am happy. - - He has
heureux, adj.

a hat which is too big. - - - We have no
trop, adv. grand, adj.

money. - - - We are not ambitious. - - - You have
argent, m. ambitieux, adj.

a sword. - - You are very proud. - - - Those girls
orgueilleux, adj.

have modesty ; they are virtuous.

modestie, f.

vertueux, adj.

IMP. I had a friend. - - I was grateful. - - - My
reconnoissant, adj.

sister had no work, she was lazy. - - - We had
ouvrage, m. paresseux, adj.

a holiday, we were very glad of it. - - - You had
congé, m. aise, adj.

company, but you were not ready. - - Your brothers
compagnie, f. mais, c. prêt, adj.

had learning, they were loved by every body.
savoir, m. aimé, p.p. de

PRET. (As soon as) I had a fine horse I was

Dès que, c.

de bonne

merry. - - - My cousin had a little garden, he
humeur. cousin, m.

was ingenious. - - As soon as we had bread we
adroit, adj. pain, m.

were satisfied. - - You had fine weather, you were
rassasié, p.p. tems, m.

pleased. - - - Your friends had beautiful flowers ;
content, adj.

they were very careful of them.
soigneux, adj.

FUT. I shall have discretion ; I shall be prudent.
discretion, f.

- - Miss White shall have a bird that will be very
oiseau, m.

tame. - - - We shall have no books, we shall not
apprivoisé, adj.

be learned. - - You shall have pens and paper ; you
savant, adj.

will be busy. - - - - The English will have a good
occupé, adj.

admiral ; they will be victorious.

amiral, m.

victorieux, adj.

COND. I could have a pretty dog. - - - I would
joli, adj. chien, m.

not be troublesome. - - - Mr. Thomas would have
importun,adj.
 good wine: it would be a delicious thing. - - We
ce délicieux,adj. *chose*,f.
 would have a dictionary: we would not be negligent.
 - - - You would have good officers; you would be
 invincible. - - - These ladies should have a better
invincible,adj.
 reception; they would be thankful.
accueil,m. *reconnoissant*,adj.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Have patience and be indulgent. - - Let her have a
 gown; let her be happy. - - Let us have at least
au moins,adv.
 some gratitude; let us be diligent. - - Let them
reconnoissance,f.
 have partridges; let them be merry.
perdrix,f. *joyeux*,adj.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may have riches. That I may
 be charitable. - - - That he may have scholars. - - -
 That he may be attentive. - - - That we may have a
attentif,adj.
 good house. - - - That we may be well lodged. - -
bien,adv. *logé*,p.p.
 That you may have your money; that you may
argent,m.
 be paid. - - - - That they may have apples: that
payé,p.p.
 they may be ripe.
mûr,adj.

PRET. That I might have generosity. - - - That I
générosité,f.
 might not be poor. - - - - That he might have no
pauvre,adj.
 pleasure. - - - That he might be uneasy. - - - That
plaisir,m. *inquiet*,adj.
 we might have our share. - - - - That we might not
part,f.

be deceived. - - - That you might have a couple
trompé, p.p. *couple, f.*
 of fowls. - - - That you might be pleased. - - - That
content, adj.
 they might have no pension. - - - That they might
 not be rewarded.
récompensé, p.p.

Promiscuous EXERCISES upon the COMPOUND TENSES.

I have had (a great deal) of trouble; I have not
peine, f.
 been rewarded. - - - Your brother would have had
 leave, if he had been diligent. - - - If you had
permission, f.
 married him, you would have had a tyrant
épousé, p.p. *tyran, m.*
 instead of a husband; you never could have been
au lieu, p. *mari, m.* *ne jamais*
 happy. - - - If we had fought, we could not
combattu, p.p.
 have been conquered. - - - Thomas has had two
vaincu, p.p.
 holidays, because he has been very active. - - -
congé, m. *parceque, c.* *actif, adj.*
 Your friend could have had a better watch, he
montre, f.
 would not have been cheated. - - - Your uncle and
trompé, p.p.
 my brother have been wet. - - - You could have
mouillé, p.p.
 killed a hare, if you had had a gun.
tué, p.p. *lièvre, m.* *fusil, m.*

After these exercises, the learner ought to conjugate the two foregoing verbs, throughout the several tenses of the indicative mood only, first with an interrogation affirmative, and then with an interrogation negative :
 ex.

SINGULAR.

Affirmatively.

<i>Ai-je ?</i>	have I ?		<i>Suis-je ?</i>	am I ?
<i>A-t-il ?</i>	has he ?		<i>Est-il ?</i>	is he ?
<i>Mon frère a-t-il ?</i>			has my brother ?	
<i>Sa fille est-elle ?</i>			is her daughter ?	

Negatively.

<i>N'ai-je pas ?</i>	have I not ?		<i>Ne suis-je pas ?</i>	am I not ?
<i>N'a-t-il pas ?</i>	has he not ?		<i>N'est-il pas ?</i>	is he not ?
<i>Ma sœur n'a-t-elle pas ?</i>			has not my sister ?	
<i>Votre cousin n'est-il pas ?</i>			is not your cousin ?	

PLURAL.

Affirmatively.

<i>Avons-nous ?</i>	have we ?		<i>Sommes-nous ?</i>	are we ?
<i>Avez-vous ?</i>	have you ?		<i>Etes-vous ?</i>	are you ?
<i>Ont-ils ?</i>	have they ?		<i>Sont-ils ?</i>	are they ?
<i>Vos frères ont-ils ?</i>			have your brothers ?	&c.
<i>Ses filles sont-elles ?</i>			are his daughters ?	&c.

Negatively.

<i>N'avons-nous pas ?</i>	have we not ?
<i>N'avez-vous pas ?</i>	have you not ?
<i>N'ont-ils pas ?</i>	have they not ?
<i>Ses enfans n'ont-ils pas ?</i>	have not his children ?
<i>Ne sommes-nous pas ?</i>	are we not ?
<i>N'êtes-vous pas ?</i>	are you not ?
<i>Ne sont-ils pas ?</i>	are they not ?
<i>Mes sœurs ne sont-elles pas ?</i>	are not my sisters ? &c.

N. B. In the interrogations, it must be observed, that when there is a noun standing as a nominative to the verb, the pronouns *il*, *elle*, *nous*, *vous*, *ils*, *elles*, though not expressed in English, must be expressed in French immediately after the verb, according to the person and number; and when the verb terminates with a vowel, a - *t* - is to be added in

the third person singular between the verb and the pronoun, the noun beginning the phrase : ex.

Votre oncle a-t-il des en- Has your uncle any chil-
fans? dren?

that is, Your uncle, has *he* any children?

Mon cousin aura-t-il congé? Will my cousin have a
holiday?

that is, My cousin, will *he* have a holiday?

The same rule must be observed in the conjugation of the other verbs : ex.

Votre frère joue-t-il du Does your brother play on
violon? the violin?

Sa sœur dinera-t-elle ici Will her sister dine here
aujourd'hui? to-day?

But if the sentence begin with *que* interrogative, or an *adverb* followed by a noun, the pronoun is not to be expressed, and that *noun* is to be put after the verb ; ex.

Que fait votre sœur? What is your sister doing?

Comment se porte votre How does your brother?
frère?

When, in French, we make a general interrogation concerning a sudden *pain, misfortune, accident, &c.* we say,

Qu'est-ce que c'est? What is the matter?

But if speaking *to* or *of* a person, we must use the verb *avoir*, and follow the above rule : ex.

Qu'avez-vous? What is the matter with
you?

Qu'a-t-il? What is the matter with
him?

Qu'aviez-vous? What was the matter with
you?

Qu'avoit votre sœur ce What was the matter with
matin? your sister this morning?

The learner will have no trouble in going through the other simple tenses of the indicative mood ; and as

for the compounds, it needs only to be remarked, that *eu*, had, or *été*, been, is to be added to the simple tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have : ex.

Ai-je eu? have I *had*?

N'ai-je pas eu? have I not *had*? &c.

Ai-je été? have I *been*?

N'ai-je pas été? have I not *been*? &c.

Promiscuous EXERCISES on the preceding RULES.

Have I my books? - - Am I not unhappy to
 have lost his friendship? - - Has he no money? *malheureux, adj. de*
perdu, p.p. amitié, f.
 Is my sister arrived? - - Has not your father a great
arrivé, p.p.
 deal of friendship for you? - - What is the matter
 with you? - - Have not your parents sent you
envoyé, p.p.
 all the money which you wanted? - - - - Have we
avoir, v. besoin de
 not a garden? - - Are we not very happy? - - -
 Have you a good gun? - - - Are you dexterous? - -
adroit, adj.
 Have not my brother and sister a beautiful coach? - -
 Are not Paul and Thomas two pretty children? - -
joli, adj.
 Are your brothers arrived? - - Are you not glad
 to see them? - - What is the matter with him?
de voir, v.
 Have they not spoken to him? - - Had you not a
parlé, p.p.
 little dog? - - Was not your paper very good? - - Are not
 the English ladies generally handsomer than
généralement, adv.
 the French? - - Shall you have occasion for your dic-
besoin, m. de
 tionary? - - Shall I not have the pleasure to see
de

you to-morrow ? - - - Were you not in the room ? - - -

demain, adv.

chambre, f.

Shall we not have leave ? - - - Will they not be angry ? - - Could you not have had a better watch ?

fâché, adj.

- - - If France were as rich as England, would

Si, c.

it not be the best* country in the world ? - - -

Will you not be ashamed ? - - - Has not your

honteux, adj.

friend had bad weather ? - - - What was the

mauvais, adj. tems, m.

matter with him this morning ? - - - Had not our admiral better seamen than yours ? - - Has he been

matelot, m.

victorious ? - - Would not your hat be too big ? - - -

victorieux, adj.

grand, adj.

Is not your sister older than mine ? - - Are you

âgé, adj.

not happier than if you were married ? - - - Shall

marié, p.p.

not John have a holiday, if he be diligent ? - - Has not

Jean

your cousin more money than you ? - - - Was not your wine very dear ?

The learner will soon be convinced how necessary it is to know these two verbs perfectly well ; because, independently of being constantly used, the compound tenses of all the others are formed with them. When he is well acquainted with their usage, he will only have to add the participle passive to any of their tenses :
ex.

J'ai aimé, I have loved, or did love.

Je n'ai pas chanté, I have not sung, or did not sing.

* See the Degrees of Comparison, page 60.

Ai-je parlé ? have I spoken ? or did I speak ?
N'ai-je pas étudié ? have I not studied ? or did I not study ?
Avez-vous dansé ? have you danced ? or did you dance ?
N'avez-vous pas écrit ? have you not written ? or did you not write ?
Je suis puni, I am punished.
Je ne suis pas attendu, I am not expected.
Suis-je aimé ? am I loved ?
Ne suis-je pas perdu ? am I not undone ?
Etes-vous marié ? are you married ?
N'êtes-vous pas convaincu ? are you not convinced ?

REMARK on the Verb *ETRE*, TO BE.

In English, when this verb immediately precedes any noun, signifying *old, hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, or afraid*, it should be rendered in French by *avoir*, to have, and the adjective must be changed into its substantive : ex.

<i>Quel âge avez-vous ?</i>	How <i>old</i> are you ?
<i>J'ai sept ans,</i>	I am seven years old ?
<i>Avez-vous faim ?</i>	<i>Are you hungry ?</i>
<i>Non, mais j'ai soif,</i>	No, but I am <i>thirsty</i> , &c.

EXERCISES.

How old is your daughter ? She is seven
Quel, pro. fille, f.
 years old. - - - My son will be eleven years old
an, m. fils, m.
 (in the) month of April. - - - - I was very
au mois, m. Avril, m. grand, adj.
 hungry when I arrived. - - - - Were you not
quand, c. suis arrivé, v.
 very thirsty ? - - He is not afraid. - - You will
grand, adj. peur, f.
 soon be warm. - - - Are you not cold ? - - -
bientôt, adv. chaud, m. froid, m.
 How old are these two young children ? The
enfant, m.

one is three years old, and the other is not yet
encore, adv.
 four. - - - Was not my sister more than ten years old
 when she died ?
quand, adv. mourut, v.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Parl-er, to speak.
Participle active.	*ant, speaking.
Participle passive.	é, m. ée, f. spoken.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.	<i>Avoir parlé</i> , to have spoken.
Past.	<i>Ayant parlé</i> , having spoken.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Je parl-e, I speak, or I do speak, or, I am speaking.†
Tu es, thou speakest.
Il e, he speaks.

Plural.

*Nous *ons*, we speak.
Vous ez, you speak.
Ils ent, they speak.

* Verbs in this conjugation, the root of which terminates in *g* or *c*, immediately succeeded by *A* or *O*, require, for the softening of their sound, that an *E* be added to the *g*, and a cedilla to the *c*. Stars are placed where these alterations are required.

† When in English, a participle active is joined to any of the tenses of the auxiliary verb *to be*, to express the continuation of the action, the auxiliary must be left out in French, and the participle put in the same tense, &c. with the auxiliary that is suppressed :

<i>Je parle</i> , I am speaking ;	<i>Je priois</i> , I was desiring ;
<i>Vous parlez</i> , you are speaking ;	<i>Nous chantions</i> , we were singing ;
<i>Nous danserons</i> , we shall be dancing ;	<i>Ils écrivoient</i> , they should be writing ;

and not *Je suis parlant*, *vous êtes parlant*, *j'étois priant*, &c. *nous serons dansant*, *ils seroient écrivant*, &c.

Imperfect. Singular.

Je parl-ois, I was speaking, spoke, or did speak.*Tu -ois*, thou wast speaking, &c.*Il -oit*, he was speaking, &c.

Plural.

Nous -ions, we were speaking, &c.*Vous -iez*, you were speaking, &c.*Ils -oient*, they were speaking, &c.

Preterite. Singular.

Je parl-ai, I spoke, or did speak.*Tu -as*, thou spokest.*Il -a*, he spoke.

Plural.

Nous -âmes, we spoke.*Vous -âtes*, you spoke.*Ils -èrent*, they spoke.

Future. Singular.

Je parl-erai, I shall or will speak.*Tu -eras*, thou shalt or wilt speak.*Il -era*, he shall or will speak.

Plural.

Nous -erons, we shall or will speak.*Vous -erez*, you shall or will speak.*Ils -eront*, they shall or will speak.

Conditional. Singular.

Je parl-erois, I should, would, or might speak.*Tu -erois*, thou shouldst, &c. speak.*Il -eroit*, he should, &c. speak.

Plural.

Nous -erions, we should, &c. speak.*Vous -eriez*, you should, &c. speak.*Ils -eroient*, they should, &c. speak.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *J'ai parlé*, I have spoken.Imperfect. *J'avois parlé*, I had spoken.Preterite. *J'eus parlé*, I had spoken.

Future. *J'aurai parlé*, I shall or will have spoken.
 Conditional. *J'aurais parlé*, I should, would, could, have-spoken.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Parl-e, speak thou.

Qu'il e, let him speak.

Plural.

**ons*, let us speak.

ez, speak ye.

Qu'ils ent, let them speak.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je parl-e, that I may speak, or I speak.

tu es, thou mayest speak.

il e, he may speak.

Plural.

nous ions, that we may speak.

vous iez, you may speak.

ils ent, they may speak.

Preterite. Singular.

*Que je parl-*asse*, that I might speak, or I spoke.

tu *asses, thou mightest speak.

il *ât, he might speak.

Plural.

nous *assions, that we might speak.

vous *assiez, you might speak.

ils *assent, they might speak.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Que j'aie parlé*, that I may have spoken.

Preterite. *Que j'eusse parlé*, that I might have spoken.

After the same manner are conjugated about 2700 regular verbs. The following are excepted: viz.

Aller, being very irregular, will be seen among the irregular verbs.

Envoyer is only irregular in the future and conditional present ; as, instead of saying, *j'envoyerais*, I will send, &c. *s'envoyerois*, I would send, &c. according to this conjugation, we say,

Future.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>J'enverrai</i> , I will send.	<i>Nous enverrons</i> .
<i>Tu enverras</i> ,	<i>Vous enverrez</i> .
<i>Il enverra</i> ;	<i>Ils enverront</i> .

Conditional.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>J'enverrois</i> , I would send.	<i>Nous enverrions</i> .
<i>Tu enverrois</i> ,	<i>Vous enverriez</i> .
<i>Il enverroit</i> ,	<i>Ils enverroient</i> .

PUER (*sentir mauvais*). This verb is only used in the infinitive mood, present tense, imperfect, future of the indicative, and conditional. Formerly this verb was irregular in the three persons of the present tense of the indicative mood ; as *je pus*, *tu pus*, *il put* ; custom has, however, reformed the abuse, and will have it, *Je pue*, *tu pues*, *il pue*.

Verbs ending in **AYER** and **OYER**, as *essayer*, to try, *envoyer*, to send, change the *y* into *i* wherever the letter *y* is immediately followed by an *e* mute : ex. *j'essaie*, *tu essaies*, *il essaie*, *j'envoie*, *tu envoies*, *il envoie*, &c.

The learner, having conjugated a verb affirmatively and negatively, ought to conjugate two others, with an interrogation affirmative and negative, in the indicative mood only, and so on through the other conjugations, before he attempts the exercises : ex.

Affirmatively.

Manges-tu ? dost thou eat ?

Mange-t-il ? does he eat ?

Parlons-nous ? do we speak, &c.

Negatively.

Ne parlé-je pas ? do I not speak ?

Ma sœur ne chante-t-elle pas ? does not my sister sing.

N. B. In many verbs, common usage does not admit an interrogation in the first person singular, present, of

the indicative mood.—Instead of saying, *Mangé-je ?* Do I eat ? *Punis-je ?* Do I punish ? &c. we say,

Est-ce que je mange ? Est-ce que je punis ? &c.

Some verbs, ending in *e* mute, in the first person singular, present, in the indicative mood, change the *e* mute into *é* with an acute accent, and *je* after it ; as *parlé-je*.

It has before been observed, that the compound tenses are easily formed, by adding the participle passive of the verb to any of the tenses of the auxiliaries *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be, as they have been conjugated, either affirmatively, negatively, or interrogatively : ex.

Affirmatively.

J'ai dansé, I have danced, or I did dance.

Negatively.

Je n'ai pas parlé, I have not spoken, or I did not speak.

Interrogatively-affirmatively.

Avez-vous chanté ? Have you sung, or did you sing ?

Interrogatively-negatively.

N'a-t-il pas mangé ? Has he not eaten, or did he not eat ?

Observe, that we make use of

Mener,

To take, to carry,

Amener,

To bring,

Emmener,

To carry, or take away,

and all the compound verbs of *mener*, whenever we speak of rational or irrational beings to which nature has given the faculty of walking, if they be not deprived of it through illness or accident : in all other cases we make use of

Porter,

To carry, to take,

Apporter,

To bring,

Emporter,

To carry, or take away,

and all the compounds of *porter*.

N. B. It must be necessarily observed here, previously to the learner's translating the following exercises, that the *English auxiliary verbs*, *have*, *am*, *do*, *did*, *will*, *shall*, *can*, *let*, *may*, *would*, *could*, *should*, *might*, and often *ought*, are most commonly used, in that language, to

avoid that repetition of a preceding verb, or in answer to a question or foregoing sentence ; to avoid the repetition of that verb, and often of one or more pronouns ; but in French, the verb, expressed in the first member, or part of the sentence, must always be repeated, as well as the pronouns which it may govern : ex.

Je vous prie de porter demain cette lettre à Monsieur D. I beg of you to carry that letter to-morrow to Mr. D.

Je la lui porterai avec plaisir, I will, with pleasure, (*carry it to him,*) understood.

Vous ne pourriez pas apprendre cette leçon en dix jours, You could not learn that lesson in ten days.

Il me semble que je pourrois l'apprendre, It seems to me as if I could (*learn it,*) understood.

Attendez-vous vos sœurs aujourd'hui ? Do you expect your sisters to-day ?

Oui, nous les attendons, Yes, we do, (*expect them,*) understood.

Voire frère écrit-il à M. votre père ? Is your brother writing to your father ?

Oui, il lui écrit à présent, Yes, he is now, (*writing to him,*) understood.

Apprenez-vous le François ? Are you learning French ?

Oui, je l'apprends, Yes, I am (*learning it,*) understood.

Avez-vous acheté les livres dont vous m'avez parlé ? Have you bought the books which you mentioned to me ?

Non, je ne les ai pas encore achetés, No, I have not yet, (*bought them,*) understood.

Ne devraient-ils pas faire savoir à leur père que leur frère est dans la détresse ? Ought they not to let their father know that their brother is in distress ?

Certainement, ils devraient le lui faire savoir, Certainly, they ought, (*to let him know it,*) understood.

EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I play sometimes, but I never
jou-er, v. quelquefois, adv. mais, c. ne ja-
 ver win. - - - How much does your brother
mais, adv. gagn-er, v. Combien, adv. ∞
 give for his board? - - We do not command;
donn-er, v. pension, f. ∞ command-er, v.
 we entreat. - - You always borrow; you
pri-er, v. toujours, adv. emprunt-er, v.
 never lend. - - - You are always speaking when
prêt-er, v. quand, adv.
 I write. - - - Why do you not grant
écri-er, v. Pourquoi, adv. ∞ accord-er, v.
 him that favour? - - - What do they ask
grâce, f. demander, v.
 you?

IMP. I was desiring them to sing a song. - -
pri-er, v. de chant-er, v. chanson, f.
 She was not speaking to you. - - Were we not jok-
badin-
 ing? - - Were you not scolding them when I came?
er, v. grond-er, v. vins, v.
 Yes, I was. - - - They were eating fish.
mang-er, v. poisson, m.

PRET. I spoke to them (a long while). - - - Did
long-tems, adv.
 not the king forgive them? - - No, he did not.
roi, m. pardonn-er, v.
 We wept for joy when we found her. - - -
pleur-er, v. de joie, f. trouv-er, v.
 Why did you not play on Friday last? - - They
∞ Vendredi, m. dernier, adj.
 fastened the man to a tree, and then
li-er, v. arbre, m. ensuite, adv.
 robbed him of his watch, gold ring, and all the
vol-er, v. ∞ montre, f. bague, f.
 money he had in his pocket. - - The soldiers first
poche, f.

pillaged the town, and then slaughtered without
pill-er, v. *égorg-er, v.*
 pity the old men, women, and children.
pitié, f. *vieillard, m.*

FUT. I will buy a watch the first time I
achet-er, v. *fois, f.*
 go to London. - - Will not your father send
irai, v. *envoy-er, v.*
 you to school this winter? - - - What shall we give
école, f. *hiver, m.*
 him? - - - Will you not carry the children to the
men-er, v. *enfant, m.*
 play? - - - They will empty the bottle if you
comédie, f. *vid-er, v.* *bouteille, f.*
 do not take it away.
emport-er, v.

COND. I would lend them money if
prêt-er, v.
 they were not so idle. - - - Would not your
 paresseux, adj.
 mother despise such a conduct? - - Why should
mépris-er, v. *tel, adj. conduite, f.*
 we send them thither? - - - I am sure you would
sûr, adj.
 marry her, if she were rich. - - - Would they
épous-er, v. *riche, adj.*
 not pay us, if they had money?
pay-er, v.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Bridle my horse, and bring him to
Brid-er, v. *cheval, m.* *amen-er, v.*
 me. - - - Give a chair to that lady. - - Let her not
chaise, f. *dame, f.*
 (come up,) for I am engaged. - - - Let us carry those
mont-er, v. *engagé, p.p.*
 peaches to Mrs. D***. - - - Do not neglect your
pêche, f. *néglig-er, v.*

affairs. - - I promise that I will not. - - Let them hunt.
affaire, f. promets, v. chasser, v.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may help you. - - Though* he
aid-er, v. Quoique, c.
do not approve of my plan. - - - - Provided*
approuv-er, v. plan, m. Pourvû que, c.
we avoid their company. - - - That you may
évit-er, v. compagnie, f.
try that gun. - - - That they may not com-
éprouv-er, v.
mand.

PRET. That I might change my opinion. - - -
chang-er, opinion, f.
That he might eat an apple. - - - That we might not
pomme, f.
fall into their hands. - - - That you might
tomb-er, v. dans, p. main, f.
encourage the industrious. - - - That they might
encourag-er, v. industrieux, adj.
exercise their talents,
exerc-er, v. talent, m.

Promiscuous EXERCISES on the COMPOUND
TENSES.

I have forgotten to bring your penknife. - - -
oubl-er, v. de canif, m.
He has not yet spoken to us. - - Has she brought
encore, adv. ~
her work with her? Yes, she has. - - Have we not gain-
gagn-
ed our cause? - - Why have you not yet begun
er, v. commenc-er, v.
your exercise? - - You had taken the mustard
thème, m. moutarde, f.

* Conjunctions which require the subjunctive mood, as will be seen hereafter.

away. - - - You would have judged more favour-
jüger, v. *favor-*
ably of him. - - Stay here till*
ablement, adv. *Rester, v. ici, adv. jusqu' à ce que, c.*
we have dined. - - - Could we not have assisted
din-er, v. *aid-er, v.*
that family? - - They have broken all the panes
famille, f. *cass-er, v.* *carreau, m.*
of glass in their windows, because they had
vitre, f. de, p. *fenêtre, f. parceque, c.*
not illuminated as it had been ordered. - - -
illumin-er, v. comme, adv. *ordonn-er, v.*
I shall have dined soon. - - - We would have
bientôt, adv.
sent them to prison, if they had resisted. - -
envoy-er, v. *en prison, f.* *résist-er, v.*
That we may have denied the fact. - - - Had you
ni-er, v. *fait, m.*
not imitated their manners? - - They had not exe-
imit-er, v. *manière, f.* *exé-*
cuted his commands. - - - Had I not light-
cut-er, v. *commandement, m.* *allum-*
ed the fire? - - They would have carried him to
er, v. *feu, m.*
the concert if I had not hindered them
empêch-er, v.
(from it). - - We might have accepted of his
en *accept-er, v.* *on*
offers. - - Why did you not?
offre, f.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Pun-ir, to punish.
Participle active.	<i>issant, punishing.</i>
Participle passive.	<i>i, m. ie, f. punished.</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.	<i>Avoir puni, to have punished.</i>
Past.	<i>Ayant puni, having punished,</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Je pun-*is*, I punish, I do punish, or I am punishing.

Tu *is*,

Il *it*,

Plural.

Nous *issons*, we punish, &c.

Vous *issez*,

Ils *issent*,

Imperfect. Singular.

Je pun-*issois*, I did punish, or I was punishing, &c.

Tu *issois*,

Il *issoit*,

Plural.

Nous *issions*, we did punish, &c.

Vous *issiez*,

Ils *issoient*,

Preterite. Singular.

Je pun-*is*, I punished, or I did punish.

Tu *is*,

Il *it*,

Plural.

Nous *îmes*, we punished, &c.

Vous *îtes*,

Ils *irent*,

Future. Singular.

Je pun-*irai*, I shall or will punish.

Tu *iras*,

Il *ira*,

Plural.

Nous *irons*, we shall or will punish.

Vous *irez*,

Ils *iront*,

Conditional. Singular.

Je pun-irois, I should, would, could, or might punish.
Tu irois,
Il iroit,

Plural.

Nous irions, we should, &c. punish.
Vous iriez,
Ils iroient,

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *J'ai puni*, I have punished.
 Imperfect. *J'avois puni*, I had punished.
 Preterite. *J'eus puni*, I had punished.
 Future. *J'aurai puni*, I shall, &c. have punished.
 Conditional. *J'aurois puni*, I should, &c. have punished.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Pun-is, punish thou.
Qu'il isse, let him punish.

Plural.

issons, let us punish.
 issez, punish ye.
Qu'ils issent, let them punish.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je pun-isse, that I may punish, or I punish.
tu isses,
il isse,

Plural.

nous issions, that we may punish.
vous issiez,
ils issent,

Preterite. Singular.

Que je pun-isse, that I might punish, or I punished.
tu isses,
il ît,

Plural.

nous issions, that we might punish.
vous issiez,
ils issent,

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Que j'aie puni*, that I may have punished.
 Preterite. *Que j'eusse puni*, that I might have punished.

After the same manner are conjugated about two hundred regular verbs; the following are excepted, as being irregular:

Acquérir, to acquire.
Assaillir, to assault.
Bouillir, to boil.
Courir, to run.
Cueillir, to gather.
Dormir, to sleep.
Faillir, to fail.
Fuir, to flee, to avoid.
Mentir, to lie.
Mourir, to die.
Offrir, to offer.

Ouvrir, to open.
Partir, to set out.
Se repentir, to repent.
Sentir, to smell.
Servir, to serve.
Sortir, to go out.
Souffrir, to suffer.
Tenir, to hold.
Venir, to come.
Vêtir, to clothe.
 And their compounds.

EXERCISES UPON THIS CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I always finish my work
toujours, adv. fin-ir, v. ouvrage, m.
 before the others. - - Your friend does not succeed
avant, p. ami, m. réuss-ir, v.
 in his undertaking. - - Do we not furnish arms
dans, p. entreprise, f. fourn-ir, v. arme, f.
 against ourselves? - - Why do you hate him? - -
contre, p. ha-ir, v.

They cure the diseases of the body, and
guér-ir, v. maladie, f. corps, m.
 not those of the mind.

IMP. I was building my house when
bât-ir, v. maison, f. quand, adv.
 you demolished yours. - - Was he not enjoying
démol-ir, v. jou-ir de, v.
 a good estate? - - We hated him, because he did
bien, m. parceque, c.
 not act kindly towards us. - - On
ag-ir, v. honnêtement, adv. envers, p. Sur, p.
 what were you reflecting? - - The mountains were
réfléch-ir, v. montagne, f.
 resounding with their cries.
retent-ir, v. de cri, m.

PRET. I warranted them very good. - - Did not
garant-ir, v.
 your master accomplish his promise? - - We (leap-
accompl-ir, v. promesse, f. fran-
 ed over) the ditch, and seized the guilty. - - -
chir, v. fossé, m. sais-ir, v. coupable, adj.
 Why did you not applaud that pretty act-
applaud-ir, v. à joli, adj. act-
 ress? I did, with all my might. - - - Did not the sol-
rice, f. de, p. forces, f. pl. sol-
 diers obey the commands of their gene-
dat, m. obé-ir, v. aux commandement, m.
 ral?

FUT. When shall I banish all these
bann-ir, v. tout, adj.
 thoughts from my mind? - - This plant will soon
pensée, f. plante, f.
 blossom, if you water it often. - - - We shall
fleur-ir, v. arroser, v. souvent, adv.
 warn your relations of it. - - - Shall you not
avert-ir, v. parent, m.
 enjoy, as we do, the pure plea-
jouir comme, adv. en des pur, adj.

shures of the country ? - - Her children will bless
bén-ir, v.
 her for it.

COND. I would choose this cloth, if I
chois-ir, v. drap, m.
 were in your place. - - Would he not blush, if he
roug-ir, v.
 acted so ? - - - We would not punish them, if they
ainsi, adv.
 were diligent. - - Would you not act with less
avec, p. moins, adv.
 severity ? - - They could furnish us with arms and
sévérité, f.
 troops, if we wanted any.
troupe, f. avoir besoin, v.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Do not fill the glasses. - - - Let him enjoy
rempl-ir, v. verre, m.
 the fruit of his labours. - - Well ! let him, I do not
travail, m. Eh bien, int.
 hinder him from it. - - - Let us reflect on what we
empêch-er, v.
 have to do. - - Let them define the question.
à faire, v. défin-ir, v.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may not perish. - - - I wish
pér-ir, v. souhait-er, v.
 he may succeed. - - - That we may not (bear hard-
réuss-ir, v. pât-ir, v.
 ships). - That you may not hate us. - - Provided they
 do not (grow tall.)
grand-ir, v.

PRET. That I might refresh my memory. - -
rafraîch-ir, v. mémoire, f.

That she might not roast the meat. - - That we might
rôt-ir, v.
 (become younger). - - That you might punish the
rajeun-ir, v.
 idle. - - That they might not (grow old).
vieill-ir, v.

COMPOUND TENSES.

I have filled my cellar with good wine., - -
rempl-ir, v. cave, f. de
 Has he not leaped over the ditch ? - - We had finished
 our work. - - - They would have seized him. - - -
ouvrage, m.
 We should have perished without any assistance. - -
sans, p. secours, m.
 When shall I have built my house ? - - I have
bât-ir, v.
 (very much) weakened his courage. - - Though
beaucoup, adv. affoibl-ir, v. Quoique, c.
 they have adorned their gardens to dazzle
embell-ir, v. jardin, m. pour éblou-ir, v.
 the vulgar, they have not succeeded, because
vulgaire, m. parceque, c.
 they have disobeyed their father and mother.
désobé-ir, v. à.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Rec-evoir, to receive.
 Part. active. *evant*, receiving.
 Part. pass. **u, m. ue, f.* received.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Avoir reçu*, to have received.
 Past. *Ayant reçu*, having received.

* Verbs of this conjugation, the root of which terminates in c, require for the softening of their sound, that a cedilla be added to the
 • (ç), whenever it is followed by a or u.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Je reç-*ois*, I receive, I do receive, or I am receiving.

Tu *ois*,

Il *oit*,

Plural.

Nous *evons*, we receive, &c.

Vous *eviez*,

Ils *oivent*,

Imperfect. Singular.

Je rec-*evois*, I did receive, or I was receiving.

Tu *evois*,

Il *evoit*,

Plural.

Nous *evions*, we did receive, &c.

Vous *eviez*,

Ils *evoient*,

Preterite. Singular.

Je reç-*us*, I received, or I did receive.

Tu *us*,

Il *ut*,

Plural.

Nous *âmes*, we received, &c.

Vous *âtes*,

Ils *urent*,

Future. Singular.

Je rec-*evrai*, I shall or will receive.

Tu *evras*,

Il *evra*,

Plural.

Nous *evrons*, we shall or will receive.

Vous *evrez*,

Ils *evront*,

Conditional. Singular.

Je rec-evrois, I should, would, could, or might receive.

Tu evrois,

Il evroit,

Plural.

Nous evrions, we should, &c. receive.

Vous evriez,

Ils evroient,

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *J'ai reçu*, I have received.

Imperfect. *J'avois reçu*, I had received.

Preterite. *J'eus reçu*, I had received.

Future. *J'aurai reçu*, I shall, &c. have received.

Conditional. *J'aurois reçu*, I should, &c. have received

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Reç-ois, receive thou.

Qu'il oive, let him receive.

Plural.

evons, let us receive.

evéz, receive ye.

Qu'ils oivent, let them receive.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je reç-oive, that I may receive or I receive.

tu oives,

il oive,

Plural.

nous evions, that we may receive.

vous eviez,

ils oivent,

Preterite. Singular.

Que je reç-usse, that I might receive, or I received.

tu usses,

ilût,

Plural.

nous ussions, that we might receive.

vous ussiez,

ils ussent,

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Que j'aie reçu*, that I may have received.

Preterite. *Que j'eusse reçu*, that I might have received.

Recevoir des nouvelles de To hear from somebody.
quelqu'un,

After the same manner are conjugated seven verbs only: the following are excepted, being irregulars:

Asseoir, to sit down.

Déchoir, to decay.

Falloir, (verb impersonal,) to be needful.

Mouvoir, to move.

Pleuvoir, (v. imp.) to rain.

Pouvoir, to be able.

Savoir, to know.

Valoir, to be worth.

Voir, to see.

Vouloir, to be willing.

And their compounds.

EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I entertain great hopes from his
conc-evoir, v. *espérance*, f.
conduct. - - I am to write to your brother to-
conduite, f. * *écrire*, v.
morrow, to let him know that your father is
pour faire, v. *savoir*, v.
arrived. - - A commander ought to be intrepid
commandant, m. *d-evoir*, v.

* When the verb *to be* is used in the present or imperfect tenses of the indicative mood, and precedes another verb in the infinitive mood, denoting a futurity in the action, it is to be rendered in French by the same tenses of the verb *devoir*, and not by *être*: ex.

Je dois aller au parc,

Nous devons lui écrire,

I am to go to the park.

We were to write to him.

in the midst of dangers. - - He is to go
au milieu, m. aller, v.
 and breakfast at my uncle's next Sunday,
déjeuner, v. chez, p.
 and he is to come and sup with us. - - We
venir, v. souper, v.
 sometimes entertain a hatred for persons who
quelquefois, adv. de la haine, f.
 deserve our friendship. - - Do you not per-
mériter, v. amitié, f. ap-
 ceive a mountain beyond that tree? - - Yes,
perc-evoir, v. derrière, p.
 I do. - - We are to remit him the value in
remettre, v. valeur, f. en, p.
 goods or in money. - - Are you not to dine
marchandise, f.
 with my father and mother to-morrow? - - Men com-
demain, adv.
 monly owe their virtues or their vices to edu-
d-evoir, v.
 cation (as much as) to nature. - - Are these young
autant que, c.
 ladies to go to the ball? - - No, they are not. - -
aller, v. bal, m.
 A young man ought to love the society of those who
société, f.
 are the most learned and modest.

IMP. I owed four guineas to your aunt when she
guinée, f.
 died. - - Was not your brother to receive that mo-
mourut, v.
 ney last Thursday? - - We received his tiresome
Jeudi, m. ennuyant, adj.
 visits, because we were obliged to it. - - Were you
obliger, v.
 not to let them know it sooner? - - They were
faire, v. savoir, v.
 not to stay above six weeks.
rester, v. plus de, adv.

PRES. I received yesterday, with (a great deal) *bien, adv.*
 of pleasure, the books you sent me. - - As soon
envoyer, v.

as we perceived the danger, we warned him of it.
avertir, v.

- - - They heard yesterday from your brother.

FUT. I shall entertain a bad opinion of
mauvais, adj.
 you if you do not avoid Mr. R****'s company. - -
éviter, v.

We shall owe him nothing more after this
après, p.

month. - - - I hope you will receive all my letters dur-
pen-
 ing my absence, and they will hear from their
dant, p.

father in (a short) time.
dans, p. peu, adv.

COND. I should answer your brother's
 * *répondre, v. à*
 letter, but I have not time. - - - Ought not
tems, m.

your sister to give your mother an account
rendre, v. en comple, m.
 of all her actions? - - - She would soon per-
bientôt, adv.

* When the word *should* expresses a duty or necessity, or can with propriety be turned into *ought*, it is rendered in French by the conditional present of the verb *devoir*: ex.

<i>Je devrois aller le voir,</i>	<i>I should, or ought to go and see him.</i>
<i>Vous devriez le secourir dans sa misère, &c.</i>	<i>You should, or ought to help him in his misery, &c.</i>

The word *should*, or *ought*, when joined to the verb *to have*, immediately followed by a participle passive, must be rendered by the conditional past of the above verb, with the participle passive turned into the present of the infinitive mood; ex.

<i>J'aurois dû l'obliger à rester ici,</i>	<i>I should, or ought to have obliged him to stay here.</i>
<i>Nous aurions dû revenir plutôt,</i>	<i>We should, or ought to have come back sooner.</i>

ceive the danger, if she knew the consequences
savoit, v.
 of it. - - Children should every day learn
apprendre, v.
 something by heart. - - You should not despise
cœur, m. *mépriser, v.*
 the advice that he gives you. - - Should they,
avis, m.
 after what they have done, expect to
après, p. *fait, p.p.* *s'attendre, v.* à
 receive favours? - - Grammar, geography, history,
 music, are sciences and arts which ladies should
 never neglect.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Receive this small present as a token of my
marque, f.
 friendship.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. and PRET. Though I perceive ships
Quoique, c. *vaisseau, m.*
 (afar off,) I cannot distinguish them. - - He
de loin, adv. *ne saurois, v.*
 wrote to us by the first post, that we might
écrivit, v. *ordinaire, m.*
 receive his orders (in proper time.)
à tems, adv.

COMPOUND TENSES.

I have not yet received his answer. - - -
encore, adv. *réponse, f.*
 You should have (been making) your theme this
 * *faire, v.*
 morning instead of playing. - - He has entertained
matin, m. *au lieu, p.*
 the hope of living here all his life. - - She ought
vivre, v. *ici, adv.* *vie, f.*
 to have thanked him for the good advice he
remercier, v. *de, p.*

gave her. - - - When did you hear from your sister ?
 We have not heard from her since her de-
depuis, p. dé
 parture. - - - Your uncle should not have obliged
part, m. oncle, m.
 him to pay half the expenses. - - - We should
à moitié, f. frais, m. pl.
 have owed him one hundred livres. - - - I beg
livre, f. demander, v.
 your pardon, I ought not to have made you
faire, v.
 wait so long. - - - Ought not we to have
attendre, v. long-tems, adv.
 employed our time better than (we did)
employer, v. nous n'avons fait,
 the last three months we were in France ?

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Vend- <i>re</i> , to sell.
Part. active.	<i>ant</i> , selling.
Part. passive.	<i>u, m. ue, f. sold.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Je vend-s, I sell, I do sell, *or* am selling.
Tu vend-s,
Il vend,

Plural.

Nous *ons,* we sell, &c.
Vous *ez,*
Ils *ent,*

Imperfect. Singular.

Je vend-ois, I did sell, or was selling.
Tu ois,
Il oit,

Plural.

Nous vend-ions, we did sell, &c.*Vous* iez,*Ils* oient,

Preterite. Singular.

Je vend-is, I sold, or did sell.*Tu* is,*Il* it,

Plural.

Nous îmes, we sold, &c.*Vous* îtes,*Ils* irent,

Future. Singular.

Je vend-rai, I shall, or will sell.*Tu* ras,*Il* ra,

Plural.

Nous rons, we shall, or will sell.*Vous* rez,*Ils* ront,

Conditional. Singular.

Je vend-rois, I should, could, would, or might sell.*Tu* rois,*Il* roit,

Plural.

Nous rions, we should, &c.*Vous* riez,*Ils* roient,

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *J'ai* vendu, I have sold.Imperfect. *J'avois* vendu, I had sold.Preterite. *J'eus* vendu, I had sold.Future. *J'aurai* vendu, I shall, &c. have sold.Conditional. *J'aurois* vendu, I should, &c. have sold.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Vend-s, sell thou.

Qu'il e, let him sell.

Plural.

ons, let us sell.

ez, sell ye.

Qu'ils ent, let them sell.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je vend-e, that I may sell, or I sell.*tu* es,*il* e,

Plural.

nous ions, that we may sell.*vous* iez,*ils* ent,

Preterite. Singular.

Que je vend-isse, that I might sell, or I sold.*tu* isses,*il* ît,

Plural.

nous issions, that we might sell.*vous* issiez,*ils* issent,

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Que j'aie vendu*, that I may have sold.Preterite. *Que j'eusse vendu*, that I might have sold.

After the same manner are conjugated about forty verbs. The following are excepted as being irregular.

Absoudre, to absolve.*Battre*, to beat.*Boire*, to drink.*Circoncire*, to circumcise.

Conclure, to conclude.
 Conduire, to conduct.
 And all the verbs ending
 in *uire*.

Confire, to preserve.
 Connoître, to know.
 And all those ending in
ôître.

Coudre, to sew.
 Craindre, to fear.
 And all those ending in
indre.

Croire, to believe.
 Dire, to tell.
 Ecrire, to write.
 Faire, to make, to do.
 Frire, to fry.

Lire, to read.
 Mettre, to put.
 Moudre, to grind.
 Naître, to be born.
 Paitre, to graze, to feed.
 Plaire, to please.
 Prendre, to take.
 Rire, to laugh.
 Suffire, to suffice, to be suf-
 ficient.
 Suivre, to follow.
 Se taire, to hold one's
 tongue.
 Traire, to milk.
 Vaincre, to conquer.
 Vivre, to live.
 And their compounds.

N. B. Verbs of this conjugation, the root of which terminates in *p*, as *romp-re*, *corromp-re*, &c. take a *t* in the third person singular of the present tense indicative mood : ex. *je romps*, *tu romps*, *il rompt* : the rest are conjugated as *vendre*.

EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I do not mean to wrong
prétend-re, v. *faire tort, v.*
 him. - - - Is your mother coming down? - - - We
lui, pro. *descend-re, v.*
 expect our friend, Mr. A***. - - - Do not you
attend-re, v.
 forbid her to go there? - - - They sell
défend-re, v. *de aller, v.*
 bad fruit.
mauvais, adj.

IMP. Did I not interrupt him, while
interromp-re, v. *pendant que, c.*

he was answering them ? - - - She was melting into
répond-re, v. *fond-re, v. en, p.*
 tears, when you arrived. - - ? Were we not losing
larme, f. *arriver, v.* *perdre, v.*
 our time ? - - You were not spreading your nets. - -
tems, m. *étend-re, v.* *filet, m.*
 Did they corrupt our manners ?
corromp-re, v. *mœurs, f. pl.*

PRET. (As soon as) I had received my money, I
Dès que, c.
 returned them what they had lent me. - - - Did
rend-re, v. *prêter, v.*
 he not hear you ? - - - We (waited for) them a
entend-re, v. *attend-re, v.*
 month. - - (For how much) did you sell it to them ? - -
mois, m. *Combien, adv.*
 They spilled all the wine.
répand-re, v.

FUT. I shall shear my flock (in the)
tond-re, v. *troupeau, m.* *au*
 month of May. - - - If you do not take care,
Mai, m. *prenez, v.* *garde, f.*
 the dog will bite you. - - Shall we not lose, if
mord-re, v.
 we play ? - - You will melt it, if you put
fond-re, v. *mettez, v.*
 it into the fire. No, I will not. - - They¹ shall³ not²
dans, p.
 hear³ ⁵ of⁶ me⁷ (any⁴ more).
entend-re parler, v. *plus, adv.*

COND. Should I not do him the jus-
rend-re, v.
 tice he deserves ? - - Would he not interrupt you ? - -
mériter, v.
 We would defend them if we could. - - - Why
défend-re, v. *pouvions, v.*
 would you not answer, if I were speaking to
répond-re, v.

you ? - - - Your hens would (lay eggs) every day, if
poule, f. pond-re, v.
 they were not so fat.
gras, adj.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Give¹ God³ thanks². - - - Let her not come
Rend-re, v. Dieu, m. grâce, f.
 down. - - Let us (give in) our accounts faith-
rend-re, v. compte, m. fidèle-
 fully. - - - Do not lose my book. - - - Let them hear
ment, adv.
 the voice of the Lord.
voix, f. Seigneur, m.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. and PRET. Speak loud, that I may hear
haut, adv.
 what you say. - - She plays (upon the) harpsichord,
dites, v. du clavecin, m.
 though you forbid her to do it. - - -
quoique, c. de faire, v.
 He wrote to us, that we might not expect him.
écrivit, v.

COMPOUND TENSES.

I have lost my book ; have you found
perd-re, v. trouver, v.
 it ? - - - She has broken her fan. - - - Have you
romp-re, v. éventail, m.
 not interrupted me several times ? - - - I had not
 then answered his letter. - - - If they (had
alors, adv. étoient
 gone) there, would they not have lost their time ?
allés, v.
 Yes, they would. - - He says he would have sold us
dit, v.
 very good wine. - - - Had you not forbidden her to
de
 speak ? - - That they might have waited for us,

Recapitulatory EXERCISES on the regular verbs of
the four CONJUGATIONS.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I love attentive scholars, but I punish
attentif, adj. écolier, m. mais, c.
 severely laziness and inattention. - - Your
sévèrement, adv. paresse, f.
 brother does not receive this news with plea-
nouvelle, f.
 sure. - - Do we not expect your mother to-day? - -
mère, f.
 We hope (that) you will succeed in your un-
espérer, v.
 dertaking. - - Why do you not fulfil
Pourquoi, adv. accomplir, v.
 your promise? - - Are you to expect the least
promesse, f.
 favour from your parents and friends? - - They per-
grâce, f.
 ceive the danger, and they do not endeavour
percevoir, v. tâcher, v.
 to shun it.
de éviter, v.

IMP. I was speaking of your aunt when you
tante, f.
 (came in), and was doing her the justice she
entrer, v. rendre, v.
 deserves. - - Mr. N. did not act towards your
mériter, v. agir, v.
 son with much tenderness. - - Mr. P. and I were
fils, m. tendresse, f.
 answering your letters when you arrived. - - You
arriver, v.
 undoubtedly entertained great hopes from his
sans doute, adv.
 last voyage. - - They were spending their
dernier, adj. dépenser, v.

money in trifles, instead of buying
en, p. bagatelle, f. au lieu de, adv. acheter, v.
 books.

PRET. I built this house in one thousand seven
maison, f.
 hundred and seventy-nine. - - Your father yesterday
hier, adv.
 received agreeable news. - - She burst into tears
fondre, v.
 after your cousin was gone. - - We sent him
après que, c. parti, p. p.
 a great deal of money unknown to your mo-
à l'inçu, p. de
 ther. - - Why did you not finish your work soon-
ouvrage, m.
 er ? - - (As soon as) they perceived us, they (ran
Dès que, c. prirent la
 away.)
fuite.

FUT. I will (give in) my accounts (at the) be-
au
 ginning of next week. - - My friend,
prochain, adj. semaine, f.
 Mrs. R. will dine with me next Wednesday. - - We
Mercredi, m.
 shall seize the first opportunity to thank him
saisir, v. occasion, f. pour remercier, v.
 for his kindness. - - You will soon entertain
de bonté, f. bientôt, adv.
 a better opinion of him. - - Will not your sister
sœur, f.
 (come down stairs) to day ?
descendre, v.

COND. I would lay two guineas, your
gager, v.
 uncle is not yet arrived. - - If my father were rich, he
arriver, v.

would rebuild his country-house. - - Should we not
rebâtir, v. *Devoir, v.*
 express our gratitude toward those who
exprimer, v. *reconnoissance, f.*
 do us good? - - If you would, you could ren-
font, v. *bien, m.* *vouliez, v.* *ren-*
 der great services to your country. - - I am cer-
dre, v. *pays, m.*
 tain (that) they would reward you, if you
récompenser, v.
 deserved it.
mériter, v.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Discharge with equity the duties of your
Remplir, v. *équité, f.* *devoir, m.*
 office. - - Let him receive the punishment due
charge, f. *punition, f.* *dû, p.p.*
 to his crime. - - Let us give God thanks for the
rendre, v. *grâce, f.* *de*
 good news we received yesterday. - - Imitate the great
hier, adv.
 actions of your ancestors. - - Let them enjoy the
ancêtres, m. *jouir, v. de*
 fruit of their labours.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. Write to me by the first post,
Ecrivez, v. *ordinaire, m.*
 that I may receive your letter before my de-
afin que, c. *avant, p.* *dé-*
 parture from London. - - Though he hear
part, m. *Quoique, c.* *entendre, v.*
 what you say, yet he does not understand you. - -
dites, v. *comprendre, v.*
 She is never pleased, though we obey her in
content, adj. *en, p.*
 (every thing). - - - I will tell it to you, pro-
tout *dirai, v.* *pour-*

vided you do not speak of it to your sister. - -
vû que, c.

He will pay them, provided they wait a
attendre, v.

little longer.
long-tems, adv.

PRET. I wrote to your father (some time ago),
écrivis, v. il y a quelque tems

that he might engage Mr. W. to come and
afin' que, c.

spend the holidays with us. - - That she might
passer, v. vacance, f.

reflect on her own conduct, and not on that of
propre, adj.

others. - - He would not come to see us, lest
voulut, v. de peur que, c.

we should perceive his bad designs. - - Your uncle
oncle, m.

desired that you might sell his two horses to
ordonner, v.

Mr. B. - - I should be very sorry if they fell
que, c. tomber, v.

into bad hands.
en

Promiscuous EXERCISES on the COMPOUND TENSES.

I have spoken to my father of it, but he has not
yet given me any answer. - - Have I not faith-
encore, adv.

fully executed your orders? - - Has your sister suc-
ceeded in her undertaking? - - Yes, she has, and I
have congratulated her upon it. - - We have not yet re-

féliciter, v. de
ceived any remittance from America. - - Mrs. N. told
remise, f.

me you had already sold the half of you
déjà, adv. moitié, f.

goods. - - - Why did you not pay those poor
marchandise, f.

people? - - He would have been punished, if
gens, m. et, f. pl.

I had not defended his right. - - They have sold
droit, m.

him four dozen of handkerchiefs at an exorbitant
mouchoir, m. à

price, but they have warranted them fine and
fin

prix, m. *garantir, v.*

well worked. - - We thought you would have
travailler, v. *croyions, v.*

brought your brother with you. - - Have we not
 been obliged to (wait for) Miss A.? - - If you had
de attendre, v.

trusted them with your goods, they would have
confier, v. leur

stolen the greatest part of them. - - It is for
partie, f. *Ce, pro.*

that reason my father has not (thought fit)
juger, v. à-propos

to send them to you. - - Mr. D. had represented to
 him all the danger of it. - - Mrs. F. has gained her
gagner, v.

cause, but she has lost all her wealth. - - Had I
perdre, v. bien, m.

not finished my work when she came in? - -
ouvrage, m. entrer, v.

You would have received your money (a month ago),
il y a un mois

if the mail had not been robbed. - - Mrs. P. told me
malle, f. voler, v.

she would have paid you some time ago, if she had
 sold her goods.

CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VERBS.

Verbs passive are very easily conjugated ; it requires only that the participle passive of the verb, which is to be conjugated, be joined to the auxiliary verb *être*, to be, through all its moods, tenses, numbers, and persons. It is to be observed, that in French the participle passive varies according to the gender and number of the noun or pronoun, which stands as the nominative to the verb : ex.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>être</i>	aim-é,	<i>ée</i> , to be loved.
<i>être</i>	pun-i,	<i>ie</i> , to be punished.
<i>étant</i>	aim-é,	<i>ée</i> , being loved.
<i>étant</i>	pun-i,	<i>ie</i> , being punished.
<i>avoir été</i>	aim-é,	<i>ée</i> , to have been loved.
<i>avoir été</i>	pun-i,	<i>ie</i> , to have been punished.
<i>ayant été</i>	aim-é,	<i>ée</i> , having been loved.
<i>ayant été</i>	pun-i,	<i>ie</i> , having been punished.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Singular. M. F.

<i>Je suis</i>	aim-é, <i>ée</i> , &c.	I am loved.
<i>Je suis</i>	pun-i, <i>ie</i> , &c.	I am punished.

Plural.

<i>Nous sommes</i>	aim-és, <i>ées</i> , &c.	we are loved.
<i>Nous sommes</i>	pun-is, <i>ies</i> , &c.	we are punished.

COMPOUND TENSES.

M. F.

<i>J'ai été</i> , pardonn-é,	<i>éc</i> , I have been forgiven.
<i>J'ai été</i> , pun-i,	<i>ie</i> , I have been punished.
<i>Nous avons été</i> aim-és,	<i>ées</i> , We have been loved, &c.

OF NEUTER VERES.

The conjugations of the above verbs are, like all others, distinguished by their terminations, and conjugated in the same manner.

Learners may easily know a neuter verb from an active one ; because the latter generally has, or can always have, a direct case after it ; whereas the neuter verb never has, nor can have, but an indirect case : for instance,

Dormir, to sleep,
Venir, to come,
Voyager, to travel,

are neuter verbs ; because we cannot say,

Dormir une maison, to sleep a house.
Venir un livre, to come a book.
Voyager la chambre, to travel the room, &c.

In the same manner,

Jouir, to enjoy,
Profiter, to profit by, to take advantage of,
Parvenir, to attain, to reach,

are neuter verbs, because they can only govern an indirect case : ex.

Jouir d'une grande réputation, To enjoy a great reputation.
Profiter du tems, To take advantage of the weather.
Parvenir à son but, To attain one's end.

As it is impossible for the neuter verbs to govern an absolute case, it follows that every verb of this kind, which governs an absolute case, can no longer be looked upon as a neuter : ex.

Pleurer, to weep, to bewail,
Sortir, to go out,
Monter, to go up, or come up,
Plaider, &c. to plead,

are neuter verbs, but become active when they govern any object in the absolute case, or accusative : ex.

Elle pleure ses péchés, She bewails her sins.
Sortez ce cheval, Bring out that horse.
Il plaida sa cause lui-même, He himself pleaded his cause.

But there are some neuter verbs which can never have an active signification, and which we are obliged to conjugate with the verb *faire*, when we wish to express an action passing from the subject who acts : ex.

<i>Ferai-je bouillir ou rôtir</i>	Shall I boil or roast that
<i>cette viande ?</i>	meat ?
<i>Faites-la bouillir,</i>	Boil it.

Some of the neuter verbs conjugate their compound tenses by the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have ; others by the verb *être*, to be.

The general rule to know what neuter verbs conjugate their compound tenses with the auxiliary *avoir*, and which are the others that are conjugated with the verb *être*, is to pay attention to the participle passive of the neuter verb which is conjugated.

If this participle be declinable, that is, if it can be applied to a man or a woman, or any other animated object, the compounds of its verbs are conjugated with the verb *être* : ex.

<i>Arriver</i> , to arrive,	<i>Tomber</i> , to fall,
<i>Mourir</i> , to die,	
<i>Naître</i> , to be born,	
	<i>Venir</i> , to come, &c.

take the auxiliary verb *être* ; because we can say,

<i>Un homme arrivé,</i>	a man arrived.
<i>Une femme morte,</i>	a woman dead.
<i>Un enfant né,</i>	a child born.
<i>Un cheval tombé, &c.</i>	a horse fallen.

If, on the contrary, the participle be indeclinable, that is, if it cannot be said of any animate object, the compound tenses of that verb must be conjugated with the verb *avoir* : ex.

<i>Dormir</i> , to sleep,	<i>Régner</i> , to reign,
<i>Languir</i> , to languish, to linger,	
	<i>Vivre</i> , to live, &c.

take the auxiliary verb *avoir* ; because we cannot say,

Un homme dormi, a man slept, (part. pass.)
Une femme languie, a woman languished, or lingered.
Un enfant régné, a child reigned.
Un cheval vécu, &c. a horse lived.

The verb *courir* is in the last class, when it signifies the rapid motion of the body, moving in a certain direction with all the swiftness of its legs; as we cannot, in this sense, say,

Un homme couru, a man run, (part. pass.)
Une femme courue, a woman run,

nor *je suis couru, j'étois couru, &c.* but *j'ai couru, j'avois couru, &c.*

When we say in French, *un homme couru, une femme courue*, we mean a man or woman much sought after, a person or thing we are very eager to see: ex.

Ce prédicateur est fort couru ;
Cette danseuse est fort courue ;

that is, people are very eager to hear that preacher, to see that dancer.

In the above general rule are not included some neuter verbs, which sometimes take the auxiliary *avoir*, and sometimes the auxiliary *être*; these are,

<i>Monter</i> , to go or come up.	<i>Demeurer</i> , to live, to remain.
<i>Descendre</i> , to go or come down.	<i>Périr</i> , to perish.
<i>Sortir</i> , to go out.	<i>Passer</i> , to pass, to go by.
<i>Rester</i> , to stay, to remain.	<i>Echapper</i> , to escape.

Monter and *descendre* often govern an absolute regimen; in which case they are considered as active verbs, and conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*: ex.

<i>J'ai monté les degrés,</i>	<i>I have ascended the stairs,</i> <i>or gone up the stairs.</i>
<i>Nous avons descendu la montagne,</i>	<i>We have come down the mountain.</i>

When the above verbs are employed without regimen, their compounds are conjugated with *être*, ex.

<i>Je suis descendu,</i>	<i>I am down.</i>
<i>Elle est déjà montée,</i>	<i>She is up already.</i>

Sortir is conjugated with the verb *être*, when it signifies to quit, to leave the place wherein one was dwelling, or living ; but it is conjugated with the verb *avoir*, when we wish to convey that we have been from home, and that we are come back again : ex.

<i>Il est sorti de prison,</i>	<i>He is out of prison.</i>
<i>J'ai sorti ce matin à dix heures,</i>	<i>I went out this-morning at ten o'clock.</i>
<i>Avez-vous sorti ce matin ?</i>	<i>Did you go out this morning ?</i>
<i>Nous n'avons pas sorti de tout le jour,</i>	<i>We have not been out all day.</i>
<i>Le roi n'a pas sorti de sa chambre,</i>	<i>The king has not been out of his room.</i>

Demeurer and *rester* take the auxiliary *avoir*, when we mean that we were, but are no longer, in a place : ex.

<i>J'ai demeuré deux ans à la campagne,</i>	<i>I lived two years in the country.</i>
<i>Il a resté vingt ans à Rome,</i>	<i>He resided twenty years at Rome.</i>

On the contrary, they take the auxiliary *être*, while the person or persons are still in a place : ex.

<i>Il est demeuré à Londres pour y solliciter un évêché,</i>	<i>He has remained in London to solicit a bishopric.</i>
<i>Nous sommes restés à York pour y finir nos affaires,</i>	<i>We have tarried at York to conclude our affairs.</i>

Périr indifferently takes either the auxiliary *avoir* or *être* : ex.

<i>Il est péri deux vaisseaux</i>	Two ships have been lost
<i>sur mer,</i>	at sea.
<i>Trois hommes ont péri par</i>	Three men have perished
<i>cette tempête,</i>	by that storm.
<i>La plûpart des équipages</i>	Most of the crew perish-
<i>sont périés dans les ondes,</i>	ed in the waves, the
<i>le reste est péri de mi-</i>	rest perished through
<i>sère,</i>	misery.

It seems, however, that the auxiliary *avoir* is more generally used.

Passer sometimes governs an indirect case, or is immediately followed by the preposition *par*, or some other, attended by a noun or pronoun; in which case its compounds are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, whether it be used in its proper signification or in a figurative sense: ex.

<i>Le roi a passé par Ken-</i>	The king went through
<i>sington pour aller à</i>	Kensington to go to
<i>Windsor,</i>	Windsor.
<i>Nous avons passé devant</i>	We went by the church.
<i>l'église,</i>	
<i>Elle a passé près du parc</i>	She went by St. James's
<i>de St. Jâques,</i>	Park.
<i>La couronne de Naples a</i>	The crown of Naples
<i>passé dans la maison de</i>	passed to the house of
<i>Bourbon,</i>	Bourbon.

In all other cases, *passer* takes the auxiliary *être*: ex.

<i>Le roi est passé, vous ne</i>	The king is gone by, you
<i>sauriez le voir,</i>	cannot see him.
<i>Le beau tems est passé,</i>	The fine weather is over.
<i>Vos chagrins sont passés,</i>	Your sorrows are over.

We sometimes say, *ce mot est passé*, when we mean that it is no longer in use; but when we say, *ce mot a passé*, we understand in the language, which signifies that it has been received or adopted,

Passer is often a reflected passive verb, when its compound tenses follow the rule of the reflective verbs.

Passer, in several cases, becomes an active verb, and governs an absolute case : ex.

<i>Passez cela sur le feu,</i>	Pass <i>that</i> over the fire.
<i>Les ennemis ont passé la</i> <i>rivière,</i>	The enemies have crossed the river.
<i>Passer l'épée au travers du</i> <i>corps,</i>	To run one through the body.

Echapper has two significations : sometimes it is used in the sense of *éviter*, to avoid, when it is conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*, and governs the dative case ; sometimes it signifies to come or go out by force or stratagem from a place in which one was confined or shut up ; in this case it takes the verb *être* for auxiliary : ex.

<i>Vous avez échappé-là à un</i> <i>grand danger,</i>	You have escaped a great danger.
<i>Il a échappé à la mort,</i>	He has escaped death.
<i>Ils sont échappés de leur</i> <i>prison, or,</i>	They have escaped from their prison, or, made
<i>Ils se sont échappés de leur</i> <i>prison,</i>	their escape.
<i>On la tenoit depuis quel-</i> <i>ques jours, mais elle est</i> <i>échappée, or, elle s'est</i> <i>échappée,</i>	They had her for some days, but she has es- caped, or, made her escape.

N. B. Exercises on the neuter verbs will be found among the irregular, whenever they occur.

REFLECTED VERBS.

We call *reflected*, or *reflective*, a verb whose subject and object are the same person or thing ; so that the subject that acts, acts upon itself, and is at the same time the agent and the object of the action : ex.

<i>Je me connois,</i>	I know myself,
<i>Tu te loues,</i>	Thou praisest thyself,
<i>Il se blesse,</i>	He wounds himself,
<i>Nous nous chauffons,</i>	We warm ourselves,

are reflected verbs, because it is I who know, and who am known; thou who praisest and who art praised; he who wounds and who is wounded, &c.

In order to express the relation of the nominative to the verb with its regimen or object, we always make use of the conjunctive pronouns, *me, te, se,* myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself, for the singular; *nous, vous, se,* ourselves, yourselves, themselves, for the plural. But it frequently happens, that in English, the second pronoun is implied, though it must be expressed in French: ex.

<i>Je me souviens,</i>	I remember.
<i>Elle ne veut pas se marier,</i>	She will not marry.
<i>Nous nous plaignons, &c.</i>	We complain, &c.

The reflected verbs may be divided in the following manner, viz.

<i>Verbes réfléchis par la signification,</i>	Verbs reflective by signification.
<i>Verbes réfléchis par l'expression,</i>	Verbs reflective by expression.
<i>Verbes réfléchis directs,</i>	Verbs reflective direct.
<i>Verbes réfléchis indirects,</i>	Verbs reflective indirect.
<i>Verbes réfléchis passifs,</i>	Verbs reflective passive.

A verb reflected by signification is properly a verb wherein the person or thing that acts is at the same time the object of the action: ex.

<i>Je me chauffe,</i>	I warm myself.
<i>Elle se blesse,</i>	She wounds herself, &c.

A verb is reflective by expression when we add to it the double pronoun, without the person or thing that acts being the object of the action: such as,

<i>Je me repens,</i>	I repent,
<i>Il s'en va,</i>	He is going away,
<i>Elle se meurt,</i>	She is dying,
<i>Nous nous appercevons de</i>	We perceive our error,
<i>notre erreur,</i>	

which merely signify *Je suis repentant, il va, elle meurt, nous appercevons notre erreur.*

When the conjunctive pronoun is the objective case of the verb reflective by expression, we say it is a *verb reflective direct*; when the same conjunctive pronoun is the indirect regimen, (that is, governed in the dative case), we call it *reflective indirect*: thus,

<i>Je me flatte,</i>	I flatter myself,
<i>Tu te vantes,</i>	Thou boastest,
<i>Il se félicite,</i>	He congratulates himself,
	&c.

are verbs *reflective direct*.—On the contrary,

<i>Il se donne des louanges,</i>	He gives himself praise,
<i>Nous nous promettons un</i>	We promise ourselves
<i>bon succès,</i>	good success,
<i>Vous vous arrachez une</i>	You draw one of your
<i>dent,</i>	teeth,

are verbs *reflective indirect*, because it is as if we said, *Il donne des louanges à soi, nous promettons un bon succès à nous, vous arrachez une dent à vous,* &c.

Verb reflective passive. This verb is so called, because it not only expresses a passive sense, but that sense can only be rendered by a passive verb: ex.

<i>Cela se voit tous les jours,</i>	That is seen every day.
<i>Cela ne se dit point,</i>	That is not said.
<i>Ce livre se vend bien,</i>	That book sells well.
<i>Ce bruit se répand,</i>	That rumour is spread.
<i>Ces fruits se mangent en</i>	These fruits are eaten in
<i>hiver,</i>	winter.

<i>Cet homme s'est trouvé innocent du crime dont on l'accusoit,</i>	That man has been found innocent of the crime with which he was accused.
---	--

It is as if there were *cela est vu tous les jours, cela n'est point dit, &c.* which exactly correspond with the idiom of the English language.

This last verb is of great use in the French language, because, as it has been observed before, there are properly no passive verbs in that language, and we are often obliged to supply the want of them by the above verb, or by the pronoun general *on*, to avoid ambiguity or false sense : if, for instance, instead of saying, *ces fruits se mangent en hiver*, ou, *on mange ces fruits en hiver*, I said, *ces fruits sont mangés en hiver*, one might understand that those fruits are already eaten ; whereas, I only wish to express the proper season for eating those fruits.

Some authors call *réci-proque*, reciprocal, all those reflected verbs ; but this denomination to me has appeared insufficient to determine accurately the nature and use of these verbs. Others limit the reciprocal verb to signify what two persons or two things reciprocally do to each other : thus,

<i>Pierre et Jean se battent,</i>	Peter and John are fighting, or beating each other,
<i>Paul et Robert s'aiment</i>	Paul and Robert love each other,
<i>Le feu et l'eau se détruisent,</i>	Fire and water destroy each other,

are reciprocal verbs, because it is as if we said, *Pierre et Jean se battent réciproquement l'un l'autre, Paul et Robert s'aiment réciproquement, &c.*

This distinction of the reciprocal verbs may be adopted, observing at the same time, that we often

prefix the preposition *entre* to the verb, the better to express the reciprocity : ex.

<i>Pierre et Jean s'entr'aiment,</i>	Peter and John love each other.
<i>Ils s'entrelouent,</i>	They praise each other.
<i>Elles s'entrehaïssent,</i>	They hate each other.
<i>Le feu et l'eau s'entredétruisent, &c.</i>	Fire and water destroy each other.

All the reflected and reciprocal verbs, without exception, are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *être* ; hence it may be supposed how much French people are shocked to hear any one, who has learned that language, say,

<i>Je m'ai acheté un cheval,</i>	I bought myself a horse ;
<i>Je m'avois blessé, or</i>	I had hurt myself ;
<i>Il s'a fait mal,</i>	He has hurt himself ;
<i>Elle s'avoit moqué de moi,</i>	She had laughed at me ;
<i>&c.</i>	

expressions too commonly made use of by many English people, who speak without knowledge of the principles of the language ; whereas we must say,

<i>Je me suis acheté un cheval,</i>	We have inquired.
<i>Je m'étois blessé, or</i>	They have walked.
<i>Il s'est fait mal,</i>	Strange things have happened since your departure.
<i>Elle s'étoit moquée de moi,</i>	
<i>Nous nous sommes informés,</i>	
<i>Ils se sont promenés,</i>	
<i>Il s'est passé d'étranges choses depuis votre départ,</i>	
<i>Il s'est passé bien des années depuis que j'ai ouï parler de cette affaire,</i>	Many years have elapsed since I heard of that affair.

It must be owned, that in the compounds of most part of these verbs, the verb *être* is but the substitute of the verb *avoir* ; but it is impossible to use *avoir* as auxiliary to a verb which has for its objective case a conjunctive pronoun that relates to the principle

of the action of that verb, and which precedes the auxiliary ; for, though we say,

Il a voulu se tuer, He would kill himself ;

yet, if we change the place of the pronoun, we must say, *Il s'est voulu tuer*, which is the idiom of the language.

CONJUGATION OF THE REFLECTED VERBS.

The conjugation of the following verb may serve as a model for all the reflected or reciprocal verbs.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Se promener*, to walk.

Part. act. *Se promenant*, walking.

M. Sing. F.

Part. pass. *promen-é, ée*, walked.

M. Plural. F.

Part. pass. *promen-és, ées*, walked.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Pres. *S'être promené*, to have walked.

Past. *S'étant promené*, having walked.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Je me promène, I walk, or do walk, or am walking.

Tu te promènes,

Il se promène,

Plural.

Nous nous promenons, we walk, &c.

Vous vous promenez,

Ils se promènent,

Imperfect. Singular.

Je me promenais, I did walk, or walked, or was walking.

Tu te promenais,

Il se promenoit,

Plural.

Nous nous promenions, we did walk, &c.

Vous vous promeniez,

Ils se promenoient,

Preterite. Singular.

Je me promenai, I did walk, or walked.

Tu te promenais,

Il se promena,

Plural.

Nous nous promenâmes, we did walk, &c.

Vous vous promenâtes,

Ils se promenèrent,

Future. Singular.

Je me promènerai, I shall, or will walk.

Tu te promèneras,

Il se promènera,

Plural.

Nous nous promènerons, we shall, or will walk.

Vous vous promèneriez,

Ils se promèneront,

Conditional. Singular.

Je me promènerois, I would, should, or could walk.

Tu te promènerois,

Il se promèneroit,

Plural.

Nous nous promènerions, we would, &c. walk.

Vous vous promèneriez,

Ils se promèneraient,

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Je me suis promen-é, ée*, I have walked.

Imperfect. *Je m'étois promen-é, ée*, I had walked.

Preterite. *Je me fus promen-é, ée*, I had walked.

Future. *Je me serai promen-é, ée*, I shall or will have walked.

Conditional. *Je me serois promen-é, ée*, I should, &c. have walked.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Promène-toi**, walk thou.*Qu'il se promène*, let him walk.

Plural.

*Promenons-nous**, let us walk.*Promenez-vous**, walk ye.*Qu'ils se promènent*, let them walk.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je me promène, that I may walk.*tu te promènes*,*il se promène*,

Plural.

nous nous promenions, that we may walk.*vous vous promeniez*,*ils se promènent*,

Preterite. Singular.

Que je me promenasse, that I might walk.*tu te promenasses*,*il se promenât*,

Plural.

nous nous promenassions, that we might walk.*vous vous promenassiez*,*Ils se promenassent*,

COMPOUND TENSES.

M. F.

Present.

Que je me sois promen-é ée, that I
may have walked.

Preterite.

Que je me fusse promen-é ée, that I
might have walked.

The learner may here be again reminded, that it is

* When the verb is conjugated with a negation, these three pronouns are put before the verb; ex. *ne vous promenez pas*, do not walk; and *toi* is changed into *te*: *ne te promène pas*.

necessary to conjugate this verb with a negation and interrogation : ex.

Je ne me promène pas, I do not walk.

Vous promenez-vous, do you walk ?

Ne se promène-t-il pas ? does he not walk ?

COMPOUND TENSES.

Me suis-je promené ? Have I walked ? or did I walk ?

Ne vous êtes-vous pas chauffé ? Have you not warmed yourself ? or did you not warm yourself ?

Mon cousin s'est-il informé ? Has my cousin inquired ? or did my cousin inquire ?

Votre frère ne s'est-il pas repenti ? Has not your brother repented ? or did not your brother repent ?

We say in French,
Se promener à cheval, en carrosse, To take a ride, an airing on horseback, in a coach.

Se promener sur l'eau, sur la rivière, To go upon the water, on the river.

EXERCISES UPON THE REFLECTED VERBS.

N. B. Verbs marked thus * are irregular : see the irregular verbs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES.	I rise	(early)	every
	<i>Se lever, v.</i>	<i>de bonne heure, adv.</i>	
morning.	- - Does not your brother	remember	
<i>matin, m.</i>		<i>se ressouvenir, v.*</i>	
to have seen	me ? - - My sister	is not well, she	
<i>vu, p.p.</i>		<i>sœur, f.†</i>	

† When we mean to express the state of a person's health, instead of the verb *être*, we must use the reflected one *se porter* :

Ma sœur ne se porte pas bien, My sister is not well.

applies herself (too much) to study. - - - We
s'appliquer, v. trop, adv.
 rejoice at the good news he has brought
se réjouir, v. de nouvelle, f. apporté, p.p.
 us. - - When do you intend to go and see
se proposer, v. de aller, v. ∞ voir, v.
 Mrs. H. ? - - Do you not repent of what you
se repentir, v. de*
 have done to her ? - - I believe your brothers
*fait, p.p. croire, v.**
 are not well ; for I have not seen them this
 † *car, c. vu, p.p.*
 week.
semaine, f.

IMP. I was riding on horseback in the park
parc, v.
 when I met him. - - Was he not warm-
quand, c. rencontrer, v. se chauff-
 ing himself when you (came in) ? - - We did not
fer, v. entrer, v.
 imagine he would succeed so well. - - You were
s'imaginer, v. réussir, v.
 boasting too much of what you have done for
se vanter, v. fait, p.p.
 him. - - They did not expect that they should
s'attendre, v.
 meet us.

PRET. I inquired after you yesterday. - - -
s'informer, v. de hier, adv.
 Did not my son behave well in the last
se comporter, v. dernier, adj.
 war ? - - Corn was sold yesterday for twelve shil-
guerre, f. se vendre, v. ∞
 lings a bushel. - - We saw ourselves surrounded by
se voir, v. entouré, p.p.*
 more than twenty persons in an instant. - - Did you
en, p.

not find yourselves obliged to go
se trouver, v. *obligé, p.p.* *de aller, v.*
 there? - - They did not stop one minute.
s'arrêter, v.

FUT. I will not complain of you, if you
*se plaindre, v.**
 promise me to behave better. - - Will your
*promettre, v.** *de* *mieux, adv.*
 bird (grow tame)? - - Shall we submit our-
oiseau, m. *s'apprivoiser, v.* *se soumettre, v.**
 selves to his judgment? - - You will ruin your-
jugement, m. *se ruiner, v.*
 selves if you continue (gaming). - - Will they not
continuer, v. *de jouer, v.*
 perceive it (as soon as) they come into the
s'apercevoir, v. *en* *dès que, c.* *entrer, v.*
 room?

COND. If I were in your place, I would
à
 not vex myself. - - - Would she not (make her
se chagriner, v. *s'échap-*
 escape)? - - We would embark (this day)
per, v. *s'embarquer, v.* *aujourd'hui, adv.*
 if the weather (would permit). - - Would you so
tems, m. *le permettoit, v.*
 soon? - - Why would you expose yourselves to their
tôt, adv. *s'exposer, v.*
 fury? - - They would agree very well,
fureur, f. *s'accorder, v.* *bien, adv.*
 if they were not so proud.
orgueilleux, adj.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

I give you leave to go out, but
donner, v. *permission, f.* *de sortir, v. mais, c.*
 do not overheat yourself. - - Let him amuse him-
s'échauffer, v. *s'amuser, v.*

sell a little in my garden. - - Let us remem-
un peu, adv. jardin, m. se ressou-
 ber what we are to do. - - Endeavour to
venir de, v. † faire, v. S'efforcer, v. de*
 please your master, and do not so often mis-
plaire, v. à maître, m. se trom-
 take in the tenses, numbers, and persons of the
per, v.
 verb. - - Let them (fall asleep).
s'endormir, v.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. I must apply myself to the
Il faut que s'appliquer, v.
 French language. - - I will hide it, lest
langue, f. cacher, v. de peur que, c.
 she should perceive it. - - Provided
s'appercevoir, v. en, pro. Pourvu que, c.
 we remember to ask him how his
de demander, v. comment, adv.
 mother does. - - (In order that) you may not
se porter, v. Afin que, c.
 boast (so much). - - I have told them who you
se vanter, v. tant, adv. dit, p.p.
 are, that they may behave better another time.
afin que, c. fois, f.

PRET. That I might not ruin myself. - - -
se ruiner, v.
 That he might not meddle with my affairs. - - -
se mêler, v. de
 That we might excuse ourselves. - - That you
s'excuser, v.
 might not go away. - - - That they might not
*s'en aller, v.**
 repent too late.
se repentir, v. trop tard, adv.*

† See the reference * in the exercises upon the third conjugation, page 193.

COMPOUND TENSES.

I have inquired after you and your sister. - - -
s'informer, v. de
 He says you have not been well while you
dit, v. pendant que, c.
 were in the country. - - - Has not your cousin
à campagne, f. cousin, m.
 laughed at me? - - Did we not get up at six
se moquer, v. de se lever, v. à
 (o'clock)? - - They have perceived the trick, but
heure, f. du détour, m.
 it was too late. - - Did you remember me?
se ressouvenir, v. de
 I had not applied myself enough. - - - Had
s'appliquer, v. assez, adv.
 not your sister imagined, that they would have
s'imaginer, v.
 found themselves obliged to go to France? - -
se trouver, v. obligé, p.p. de †
 Many things (have been said) of them which
se dire, v.
 are not true. - - - We had thought ourselves
*se croire, v.**
 able to resist them, but we have
capable, adj. de résister, v. leur mais, c.
 (been deceived). - - - Did you not hide your-
se tromper, v. se cacher, v.
 selves in order to surprise them? - - When
de surprendre, v. Quand, adv.
 I (shall) have walked five or six minutes in the gar-
jar-
 den, I will rest myself. - - - Why did you
din, m. se reposer, v.
 exhaust yourself as you have done? - - - Our
s'épuiser, v. fait, p.p.
 sailors would have behaved with more reso-
matelot, m.

† See the indefinite article, p. 41.

lution. - - Would you not have excused yourself. - -
s'excuser, v.
 When they have repented (of) their faults, I
se repentir, v.
 will forgive them. - - If I had been in your place, I
à
 would not have meddled with their affairs. - - -
se mêler, v. de
 Your friend would not have complained of you,
*se plaindre, v.**
 and you never would have fallen out for so
se brouiller, v.
 small a matter.
chose, f.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

These are called *irregulars* because their conjugation deviates from the general rule, either by their terminations, or the want of some of their moods, tenses, persons, or numbers.

VERB OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

ALLER, TO GO.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Aller</i> , to go.
Part. act.	<i>Allant</i> , going.
Part. pass.	<i>Allé, ée, gone</i> .

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Vais</i> , <i>vas</i> , <i>va</i> , I go, do go, or am going.
Plur.	<i>Allons</i> , <i>allez vont</i> ,

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Allois</i> , <i>allois</i> , <i>alloit</i> , I did go, or was going.
Plur.	<i>Allions</i> , <i>allicz</i> , <i>alloient</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Allai</i> , <i>ellas</i> , <i>alla</i> , I went, or did go.
Plur.	<i>Allâmes</i> , <i>allâtes</i> , <i>allèrent</i> ; or,

Sing. *Fus, fus, fut*, I went, or did go.

Plur. *Fûmes, fûtes, furent*,

Future.

Sing. *Irai, iras, ira*, I shall, or will go.

Plur. *Irons, irez, iront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Irois, irois, iroit*, I should, could, would, or

Plur. *Irions, iriez, iroient*, might go.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Va*, go thou ;

qu'il aille, let him go.

Plur. *Allons, allez, qu'ils aillent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que, que, que*,
Aille, ailles, aille, that I may go.

Plur. *Allions, alliez, aillent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Allasse, allasses, allât*, that I might go.

Plur. *Allassions, allassiez, allassent*,

Among the compound tenses of this verb, it is to be remarked, that those which are formed by the participle *allé*, signify that we are or were yet in the place mentioned at the time we are or were speaking. Whence it follows, that the first person of the compound of the present,

Je suis allé,

I have gone, &c.

Tu es allé, &c.

can seldom be used in discourse ; for we cannot naturally say that we are still in a place which can only be mentioned in a past time, after we have left it ; therefore we make use of the compound tenses of the verb *être*, as *j'ai été*, *tu as été*, *j'eus été*, *j'avois été*, *j'aurois été*, &c. for when we say,

Il est allé à Londres,

He is gone to London,

we give to understand, that he is still in London, or is on his way, going to London : on the contrary,

Il a été à Londres,

He has been, or gone to
London,

means, that he has gone to London, but is returned.

The above verb is also conjugated as a reflected one, with the particle *en* : ex.

S'en aller, to go away.

Je m'en vais, I go or am going away.

Tu t'en vas, thou goest or art going away.

Il s'en va, he goes or is going away.

Nous nous en allons, we go or are going away.

Vous vous en allez, you go or are going away.

Ils s'en vont, they go or are going away.

Negatively.

Je ne m'en vais pas, I am not going away.

Il ne s'en va pas, he is not going away.

Nous ne nous en allons pas, we are not going away.

Vous ne vous en allez pas, &c. you are not going away, &c.

Interrogatively.

S'en va-t-il ? Is he going away ?

Vous en allez-vous ? &c. are you going away ? &c.

Ne s'en vont-ils pas ? &c. are they not going away ? &c.

The imperative mood is thus conjugated :

Singular.

Va-t'en, go thou away.

Qu'il s'en aille, let him go away.

Plural.

Allons-nous en, let us go away.

Allez-vous en, go away.

Qu'ils s'en aillent, let them go away.

Its compound tenses are,

Je m'en suis allé, I have gone away.

Je m'en fus allé, I had gone away.

Je m'en étois allé, I had gone away.

Je m'en serai allé, I shall have gone away, &c.

VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACQUERIR, TO ACQUIRE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Acquérir</i> , to acquire.
Part. act.	<i>Acquérant</i> , acquiring.
Part. pass.	<i>Acquis</i> , acquired.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Acquiers</i> , <i>acquiers</i> , <i>acquiert</i> , I acquire, or am ac-	
Plur.	<i>Acquérons</i> , <i>acquérez</i> , <i>acquièrent</i> ,	quiring.

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Acquérois</i> , <i>acquérois</i> , <i>acquéroit</i> , I did acquire, or was	
Plur.	<i>Acquérions</i> , <i>acquériez</i> , <i>acquéroient</i> ,	acquiring.

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Acquis</i> , <i>acquis</i> , <i>acquit</i> , I acquired, or did ac-	
Plur.	<i>Acquîmes</i> , <i>acquîtes</i> , <i>acquirent</i> ,	quire.

Future.

Sing.	<i>Acquerrai</i> , <i>acquerras</i> , <i>acquerra</i> , I shall, or will ac-	
Plur.	<i>Acquerrons</i> , <i>acquerez</i> , <i>acquerront</i> ,	quire.

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Acquerrois</i> , <i>acquerrois</i> , <i>acquerroit</i> , I should, would,	
		or could acquire.
Plur.	<i>Acquerriions</i> , <i>acquerriez</i> , <i>acquerroient</i> ,	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Acquiers</i> , <i>acquièrre</i> , acquire thou.
Plur.	<i>Acquérons</i> , <i>acquérez</i> , <i>acquièrent</i> ,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Acquièrre</i> , <i>acquièrres</i> , <i>acquièrre</i> ,	that I may acquire.		
Plur.	<i>Acquérions</i> , <i>acquériez</i> , <i>acquièrent</i> ,	.		

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Acquisse</i> , <i>acquisses</i> , <i>acquit</i> , that I might ac-	
Plur.	<i>Acquissions</i> , <i>acquissiez</i> , <i>acquissent</i> ,	quire.

QUERIR, TO FETCH.

The primitive of the above verb is never used but in the present of the infinitive mood : ex.

Envoyez-moi quérir, Send for me.

CONQUERIR, TO CONQUER ; REQUERIR, TO REQUIRE ;
are conjugated like **ACQUERIR.**

BOUILLIR, TO BOIL:**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present.	<i>Bouillir,</i>	to boil.
Part. act.	<i>Bouillant,</i>	boiling.
Part. pass.	<i>Bouilli, ie,</i>	boiled.

INDICATIVE MOOD.**Present.**

Sing.	<i>Bous,</i>	<i>bous,</i>	<i>bout,</i>	I boil, or am boiling.
Plur.	<i>Bouillons,</i>	<i>bouillez,</i>	<i>bouillent,</i>	

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Bouillois,</i>	<i>bouillois,</i>	<i>bouilloit,</i>	I did boil, or was
Plur.	<i>Bouillions,</i>	<i>bouilliez,</i>	<i>bouilloient,</i>	boiling.

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Bouillis,</i>	<i>bouillis,</i>	<i>bouillit,</i>	I boiled, or did
Plur.	<i>Bouillîmes,</i>	<i>bouillîtes,</i>	<i>bouillirent,</i>	boil.

Future.

Sing.	<i>Bouillirai,</i>	<i>bouilliras,</i>	<i>bouillira,</i>	I shall or will boil.
Plur.	<i>Bouillirons,</i>	<i>bouillirez,</i>	<i>bouilliront,</i>	

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Bouillirois,</i>	<i>bouillirois,</i>	<i>bouilliroit,</i>	I should, would,
Plur.	<i>Bouillirions,</i>	<i>bouilliriez,</i>	<i>bouilliroient,</i>	or could boil.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Bous,</i>	<i>bouille,</i>	boil thou.
Plur.	<i>Bouillons,</i>	<i>bouillez,</i>	<i>bouillent,</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que Bouille, que bouilles, que bouille*, that I may boil.
 Plur. *Bouillions, bouilliez, bouillent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Bouillisse, bouillisses, bouillît*, that I might boil.
 Plur. *Bouillissions, bouillissiez, bouillissent*,

This verb, as well as its compound *rebouillir*, to boil again, is but seldom used, except in the third person singular or plural, and its infinitive mood, which is commonly joined to the verb *Faire* : ex.

Faites bouillir cette viande, Boil that meat.

COURIR, TO RUN.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Courir*, to run.
 Part. act. *Courant*, running.
 Part. pass. *Couru, ue*, run.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Cours, cours, court*, I run, or am running.
 Plur. *Courons, courez, courent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Courois, couroit, couroit*, I did run, or was
 Plur. *Courions, couriez, couraient*, running.

Preterite.

Sing. *Courus, courus, courut*, I ran, or did run.
 Plur. *Courûmes, courûtes, coururent*,

Future.

Sing. *Courrai, courras, courra*, I shall or will run.
 Plur. *Courrons, courrez, courront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Courrois, eourrois, courroit*, I should, would, or
 Plur. *Courrions, courriez, courroient*, could run.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Cours, coure*, run thou.
 Plur. *Courons, courez, courent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Coure, coures, coure*, that I may run.
 Plur. *Courions, couriez, courent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Courusse, courusses, courût*, that I might run.
 Plur. *Courussions, courussiez, courussent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Accourir</i> , to run to.	<i>Parcourir</i> , to run over.
<i>Concourir</i> , to concur.	<i>Recourir</i> , to have recourse
<i>Discourir</i> , to discourse.	to.
<i>Encourir</i> , to incur.	<i>Secourir</i> , to succour, to
	assist.

COUVRIR, TO COVER.

See OUVRIER, TO OPEN.

CUEILLIR, TO GATHER.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Cueillir*, to gather.
 Part. act. *Cueillant*, gathering.
 Part. pass. *Cueilli, ie*, gathered.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Cueille, cueilles, cueille*, I gather, or am gath-
 Plur. *Cueillons, cueillez, cueillent*, ering.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Cueillois, cueillois, cueilloit*, I did gather, or was
 Plur. *Cueillions, cueilliez, cueilloient*, gathering.

Preterite.

Sing. *Cueillis, cueillis, cueillit*, I gathered, or did
 Plur. *Cueillîmes, cueillîtes, cueillirent*, gather.

Future.

Sing. *Cueilleraï, cueilleras, cueillera*, I shall or will
 Plur. *Cueillerons, cueillerez, cueilleront*, gather.

Conditional.

Sing. *Cueillerois, cueillerois, cueilleroit*, I should, would,
 or could gather.
 Plur. *Cueillerions, cueilleriez, cueilleroient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Cueille, cueille*, gather thou.
 Plur. *Cueillons, cueillez, cueillent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Cueille, cueilles, cueille*, that I may gather.
 Plur. *Cueillions, cueilliez, cueillent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Cueillisse, cueillisses, cueillit*, that I might
 Plur. *Cueillissions, cueillissiez, cueillissent*, gather.

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Accueillir</i> , to make wel-		<i>Recueillir</i> , to gather to-
come.		gether.

DORMIR, TO SLEEP.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Dormir*, to sleep.
 Part. act. *Dormant*, sleeping.
 Part. pass. *Dormi*, slept.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Dors,* *dors,* *dort,* I sleep, or am sleeping.Plur. *Dormons,* *dormez,* *dorment,*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Dormois,* *dormois,* *dormoit,* I did sleep, or wasPlur. *Dormions,* *dormiez,* *dormoient,* sleeping.

Preterite.

Sing. *Dormis,* *dormis,* *dormit,* I slept, or did sleep.Plur. *Dormîmes,* *dormîtes,* *dormirent,*

Future.

Sing. *Dormirai,* *dormiras,* *dormira,* I shall or willPlur. *Dormirons,* *dormirez,* *dormiront,* sleep.

Conditional.

Sing. *Dormirois,* *dormirois,* *dormiroit,* I would, could orPlur. *Dormirions,* *dormiriez,* *dormiroient,* should sleep.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Dors,* *dorme,* sleep thou.Plur. *Dormons,* *dormez,* *dorment,*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Dorme,* *dormes,* *dorme,* that I may sleep.Plur. *Dormions,* *dormiez,* *dorment,*

Preterite.

Sing. *Dormisse,* *dormisses,* *dormît,* that I might sleep.Plur. *Dormissions,* *dormissiez,* *dormissent,*

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Endormir,</i> to make sleep.		<i>Se rendormir,</i> to fall asleep
<i>S'endormir,</i> to fall asleep.		again.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS

AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Where are you going? - - - I am going to the
Où, adv.

play. - - I would go with you, if I had time. - - Why
comédie, f.

are they going away so soon ? - - Will not your father
tôt, adv.

be angry, if you go there without him ? - - We were
fâché, adj.

going to Miss D——'s, when we met you.
chez, p. rencontré, v.

- - These men went yesterday from house to house. - -
en, p.

Believe me, sir, do not go to see them. - - Your fa-
Croire, v. voir, v.

ther told me, you will go to France and Italy as soon
dire, v.

as the war (is over). - - My sister and I went last
sera finie. dernier, adj.

Wednesday to Vauxhall. - - If you had gone thither
an hour sooner you would have heard fine music.

plutôt, adv. entendre, v.

- - Your uncle has acquired a great name in America.
nom, m.

- - My father went to pay your uncle a visit
rendre, v.

last week, and he did not welcome him (as a) friend.
en, p.

- - - Did he not ? I am sorry for it. - - - Mr. Dubois,
the king's silversmith, has brought the watch : it
argentier, m.

now goes very well. - - Go and fetch me
maintenant, adv.

the letter I left in my room. - - Boil this chicken,
laisser, v. poulet, m.

and roast that goose. - - At last we have conquered.
rôtir, v. oie, f. Enfin, adv.

- - This water will soon boil. - - Boil that meat
bientôt, adv.

again, it is not done enough. - - Do not run so
cuit, p.p.

fast, you will be tired. - - - They always run
vite, adv. fatigué, p.p.

when they go to see their aunt. - - Your brother
tante, f.
 runs faster than I. - - When he heard *that his*
apprendre, v.
 friend was in danger, he ran instantly to him. - -
aussitôt, adv.
 Let us not discourse any more on that subject. - - I
sujet, m.
 would assist him with all my heart, if I could. - - This
pouvoir,
 gentleman is a great traveller: he has run over all
voyageur, m.
 Europe. - - Let him go away, for I do not wish to
car, c. & veux, v.
 speak to him. - - If you do it, you will incur your
faire, v.
 father's displeasure. - - That would concur to the pub-
déplaisir, m.
 lic good. - - When children are guilty, they generally
bien, m. coupable, adj.
 have recourse to some falsehood. - - For whom are you
memoonge, m.
 gathering those charming flowers? - - I gather them for
fleur, f.
 my mother. - - Why do they not gather some roses? - -
rose, f.
 Mrs. P. would have gathered some, but the gardener
jardinier, m.
 told her he would gather them himself. - - Of all na-
 tions none has welcomed the poor French clergy bet-
clergé, m.
 ter than the English. - - Do not make any noise, for my
faire, v. car, c.
 sister (is asleep.) - - I hope she will sleep better to-night.
dormir. ce soir, m.
 She would sleep much better, if she were in her bed.
lit, m.
 If I do not walk a little, I shall fall asleep. - - My
se promener, v.
 mother, sister, brother, and I, went yesterday to

Croydon, to see Miss Keen. - - Did you go thither
 on foot? - - No, my mother and sister went in a
 coach, and my brother and I on horseback.
à cheval, m.

FUIR, TO RUN AWAY, TO SHUN, TO AVOID, TO FLEE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Fuir*, to flee.
 Part. act. *Fuyant*, fleeing.
 Part. pass. *Fui*, ie, fled.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Fuis*, *fus*, *fuit*, I flee.
 Plur. *Fuyons*, *fuyez*, *fuient*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Fuyois*, *fuyois*, *fuyoit*, I fled, or did flee.
 Plur. *Fuyions*, *fuyiez*, *fuyoient*,

Preterite.

This tense is conjugated with the verb *Prendre* and the substantive *fuite*: ex.

Je pris la fuite, I fled, or ran away.

Future.

Sing. *Fuirai*, *fuiras*, *fuirai*, I shall or will flee.
 Plur. *Fuirons*, *fuires*, *fuiront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Fuirois*, *fuirois*, *fuiroit*, I should, would, or could
 Plur. *Fuirions*, *fuiriez*, *fuiroient*, flee.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Fuis*, *fuie*, flee thou.
 Plur. *Fuyons*, *fuyez*, *fuient*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Fuie,</i>	<i>fuies,</i>	<i>fuie,</i>	that I may flee.
Plur.	<i>Fuyions,</i>	<i>fuyiez,</i>	<i>fuient,</i>	

Preterite.

Je prisse la fuite, &c. that I might flee.

MENTIR, TO LIE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Mentir,</i>	to lie.
Part. act.	<i>Menant,</i>	lying.
Part. pass.	<i>Menti,</i>	lied.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Mens,</i>	<i>mens,</i>	<i>ment,</i>	I lie.
Plur.	<i>Mentons,</i>	<i>mentez,</i>	<i>mentent,</i>	

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Mentois,</i>	<i>mentois,</i>	<i>mentoit,</i>	I did lie, or was lying.
Plur.	<i>Mentions,</i>	<i>mentiez,</i>	<i>mentaient,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Mentis,</i>	<i>mentis,</i>	<i>mentit,</i>	I lied, or did lie.
Plur.	<i>Mentîmes,</i>	<i>mentîtes,</i>	<i>mentirent,</i>	

Future.

Sing.	<i>Mentirai,</i>	<i>mentiras,</i>	<i>mentira,</i>	I shall or will lie.
Plur.	<i>Mentirons,</i>	<i>mentirez,</i>	<i>mentiront,</i>	

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Mentirois,</i>	<i>mentirois,</i>	<i>mentiroit,</i>	I would, could, or
Plur.	<i>Mentirions,</i>	<i>mentiriez,</i>	<i>mentiroient,</i>	should lie.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Mens,</i>	<i>mente,</i>	lie thou.
Plur.	<i>Mentons,</i>	<i>mentez,</i>	<i>mentent,</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Mente,</i>	<i>mentes,</i>	<i>mente,</i>	that I may lie.
Plur.	<i>Mentions,</i>	<i>mentiez,</i>	<i>mentent,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Mentisse,</i>	<i>mentisses,</i>	<i>mentît,</i>	that I might lie.
Plur.	<i>Mentissions,</i>	<i>mentissiez,</i>	<i>mentissent,</i>	

The compound of this verb is
Démentir, to give one the lie, to belie, to contradict.

MOURIR, TO DIE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Mourir,</i>	to die.
Part. act.	<i>Mourant,</i>	dying.
Part. past.	<i>Mort,</i>	died, or dead.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Meurs,</i>	<i>meurs,</i>	<i>meurt,</i>	I die, or am dying.
Plur.	<i>Mourons,</i>	<i>mourez,</i>	<i>meurent,</i>	

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Mourois,</i>	<i>mourois,</i>	<i>mouroit,</i>	I was dying.
Plur.	<i>Mourions,</i>	<i>mouriez,</i>	<i>mouroient,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Mourus,</i>	<i>mourus,</i>	<i>mourut,</i>	I died.
Plur.	<i>Mourûmes,</i>	<i>mourûtes,</i>	<i>moururent,</i>	

Future.

Sing.	<i>Mourrai,</i>	<i>mourras,</i>	<i>mourra,</i>	I shall, or will die.
Plur.	<i>Mourrons,</i>	<i>mourrez,</i>	<i>mourront,</i>	

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Mourrois,</i>	<i>mourrois,</i>	<i>mourroit,</i>	I should, could, or
Plur.	<i>Mourrions,</i>	<i>mourriez,</i>	<i>mourroient,</i>	would die.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Meurs,</i>	<i>meure,</i> die thou.
Plur.	<i>Mourons,</i>	<i>mourez,</i> <i>meurent,</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Meure,</i>	<i>meures,</i>	<i>meure,</i> that I may die.
Plur.	<i>Mourions,</i>	<i>mouriez,</i>	<i>meurent,</i>

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Mourusse,</i>	<i>mourusses,</i>	<i>mourût,</i> that I might die.
Plur.	<i>Mourussions,</i>	<i>mourussiez,</i>	<i>mourussent,</i>
	<i>Se mourir,</i> to be dying.		

* OFFRIR, TO OFFER.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Offrir,</i> to offer.
Part. act.	<i>Offrant,</i> offering.
Part. pass.	<i>Offert,</i> <i>erte,</i> offered.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Offre,</i>	<i>offres,</i>	<i>offre,</i> I offer, or am offering.
Plur.	<i>Offrons,</i>	<i>offrez,</i>	<i>offrent,</i>

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Offrois,</i>	<i>offrois,</i>	<i>offroit,</i> I did offer, or was of-
Plur.	<i>Offrions,</i>	<i>offriez,</i>	<i>offroient,</i> fering.

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Offris,</i>	<i>offris,</i>	<i>offrit,</i> I offered, or did offer.
Plur.	<i>Offrîmes,</i>	<i>offrîtes,</i>	<i>offrirent,</i>

Future.

Sing.	<i>Offrirai,</i>	<i>offriras,</i>	<i>offrira,</i> I shall, or will offer.
Plur.	<i>Offrirons,</i>	<i>offrirez,</i>	<i>offriront,</i>

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Offrirois,</i>	<i>offrirois,</i>	<i>offriroit,</i> I would, could, or
Plur.	<i>Offririons,</i>	<i>offririez,</i>	<i>offriroient,</i> should offer.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Offre,</i>	<i>offre,</i>	offer thou.
Plur.	<i>Offrons,</i>	<i>offrez,</i>	<i>offrent,</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Offre,</i>	<i>offres,</i>	<i>offre,</i>	that I may offer.
Plur.	<i>Offrions,</i>	<i>offriez,</i>	<i>offrent,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Offrisse,</i>	<i>offrisses,</i>	<i>offrît,</i>	that I might offer.
Plur.	<i>Offrissions,</i>	<i>offrissiez,</i>	<i>offrissent,</i>	

OUIR, TO HEAR.

This verb is never used but in its participle passive, joined to some of the tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have, preceding the verb *dire*, to say : ex.

J'ai ouï dire que, I have heard, that, &c.

In general we make use of *apprendre*.

OUVRIR, TO OPEN.

This verb, as well as its compounds,

Couvrir, to cover, *Recouvrir*, to cover again.

Découvrir, { to discover,
 { to uncover,
 is conjugated like *OFFRIR*.

PARTIR, TO SET OUT, TO GO AWAY.

And its compounds,

Départir, to depart, to | *Repartir*, to set out again,
impart, to reply ;

Se REPENTIR, TO REPENT ;

SENTIR, TO FEEL, TO SMELL,

And its compounds ;

<i>Consentir</i> , to consent, to agree,	<i>Ressentir</i> , to be sensible of, to resent,
--	--

Pressentir, to have a foresight of,

are conjugated like *Mentir*.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND
THEIR COMPOUNDS.

As soon as they saw us coming they ran away.

voir, V. *venir*, V.

- - - Avoid bad company. - - He does not love your
compagnie, f.

sister, because she lies. - - If you forgive me this time,
parce que, c. *fois, f.*

I never will lie any more. - - I cannot believe him;
ou *pouvoir, v.*

for he contradicts himself at every instant. - - Tell
car, c. Dire, v.

me what she has done to you ; but above all do not lie.
sur, p.

- - If you do not behave better, your mother will
se comporter, v.

die with grief. - - Mrs. S. died at Paris on the seventh
de chagrin, m. *à* *son*

of August, one thousand seven hundred and eighty.
Août, m.

- - Misfortune often seeks those who avoid it, and
Malheur, m. chercher, v.

sometimes avoids those who seem to seek it. -
quelquefois, adv. sembler, v.

Were I in your place, I would not offer her any money.
Si j'étois à

- Why do you not open the door for your sister?
Pourquoi, adv. à

-- Your brother was no sooner arrived in London, than
plutôt, adv. à

I offered him my services. -- Your actions never belie
 your words. -- Open the window. -- I had heard you
 were going to Holland at the beginning of next
au commencement, m.

month. -- I hope you will never discover what I have
espérer, v.

told you. -- Cover my hat, and put it upon that
dire, v. mettre, v.

chair. -- I will set out to-morrow morning at seven
 (o'clock). -- Do not set out without me. -- Let us go and
heure, f.

see Mrs. D**, I have heard she is dying. -- Your sister
 repents much of having sold her books. -- Gather that
d'avoir

pink, it smells charmingly. -- Her mother says she
œillet, m. bien bon, adv.

never will consent to it. -- If you do not take
prendre, v.

care, you will repent of your imprudence soon or
garde, f. tôt, adv.

late. -- Let us die for our country, and our death will
tard, adv. patrie, f.

be glorious. -- Every citizen ought to be disposed to
glorieux, adj.

sacrifice himself for the publick good; it is at this
ce, pro. à, p.

price only that (a man) acquires a lawful right
on légitime, adj. droit, m.

to the advantages of civil society. -- I should die
 satisfied, if I knew you were happy. --

content, adj. savoir, v. (by the subj.)

You soon felt the effect of it. -- My cousin set out
effet, m.

from here yesterday morning at nine o'clock. -- I
ici, adv.

offer you my house, it is at your service. -- You
 may rely upon her, she will never discover

pouvoir, v. compter, v.

your secrets. - - I will never offer you my² horse³ any
 more¹. - - - He will feel it in his turn, when he
 à tour, m.
 is old.
 (by the fut.)

SERVIR, TO SERVE, TO HELP TO.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Servir*, to serve.
 Part. act. *Servant*, serving.
 Part. pass. *Servi*, ie, served.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Sers*, *sers*, *sert*, I serve, or am serving.
 Plur. *Servons*, *servez*, *servent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Servois*, *servois*, *servoit*, I did serve, or was
 Plur. *Servions*, *serviez*, *servoient*, serving.

Preterite.

Sing. *Servis*, *servis*, *servit*, I did serve, or served.
 Plur. *Servîmes*, *servîtes*, *servirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Servirai*, *serviras*, *servira*, I shall, or will serve.
 Plur. *Servirons*, *servirez*, *serviront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Servirois*, *servirois*, *serviroit*, I would, should, or
 Plur. *Servirions*, *serviriez*, *serviroient*, could serve.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Sers*, *serve*, serve thou.
 Plur. *Servons*, *servez*, *servent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Serve,</i>	<i>serves,</i>	<i>serve,</i> that I may serve.
Plur.	<i>Servions,</i>	<i>serviez,</i>	<i>servent,</i>

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Servisse,</i>	<i>servisses,</i>	<i>servît,</i> that I might serve.
Plur.	<i>Servissions,</i>	<i>servissiez,</i>	<i>servissent,</i>

The compounds of this verb are,

Desservir, to do an ill office, to clear a table.

Se servir, to make use, to use.

SORTIR, TO GO OUT,
is conjugated like *MENTIR*.

SOUFFRIR, TO SUFFER.
is conjugated like *OFFRIR*.

TENIR, TO HOLD, TO KEEP.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Tenir,</i> to hold.
Part. act.	<i>Tenant,</i> holding.
Part. pass.	<i>Tenu,</i> <i>ue,</i> held.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Tiens,</i>	<i>tiens,</i>	<i>tient,</i> I hold, or am holding.
Plur.	<i>Tenons,</i>	<i>tenez,</i>	<i>tiennent,</i>

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Tenois,</i>	<i>tenois,</i>	<i>tenoit,</i> I did hold, or was holding.
Plur.	<i>Tenions,</i>	<i>teniez,</i>	<i>tenoient,</i>

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Tins,</i>	<i>tins,</i>	<i>tint,</i> I held, or did hold.
Plur.	<i>Tinmes,</i>	<i>tintes,</i>	<i>tinrent,</i>

Future.

Sing. *Tiendrai, tiendras, tiendra*, I shall, or will hold.
 Plur. *Tiendrons, tiendrez, tiendront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Tiendrois, tiendrois, tiendrait*, I should, could, or
 Plur. *Tiendrions, tiendriez, tiendraient*, would hold.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Tiens, tienne*, hold thou.
 Plur. *Tenons, tenez, tiennent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Tienne,</i>	<i>tiennes,</i>	<i>tienne</i> , that I may hold.
Plur.	<i>Tenions,</i>	<i>teniez,</i>	<i>tiennent</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing. *Tinsse, tinsses, tînt*, that I might hold.
 Plur. *Tinssions, tinssiez, tinssent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>S'abstenir</i> , to abstain.	<i>Maintenir</i> , to maintain.
<i>Appartenir</i> , to belong.	<i>Obtenir</i> , to obtain.
<i>Contenir</i> , to contain.	<i>Retenir</i> , to retain, to keep.
<i>Détenir</i> , to detain.	<i>Soutenir</i> , to maintain, to
<i>Entretenir</i> , to keep, to en- tertain.	hold, to support.

TRESSAILLIR, TO START, TO LEAP FOR.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Tressaillir</i> , to start.
Part. act.	<i>Tressaillant</i> , starting.
Part. pass.	<i>Tressailli, ie</i> , started.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Tressaille,</i>	<i>tressailles,</i>	<i>tressaille,</i> I start.
Plur.	<i>Tressaillons,</i>	<i>tressaillez,</i>	<i>tressaillent,</i>

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Tressaillois,</i>	<i>tressaillois,</i>	<i>tressailloit,</i> I did start.
Plur.	<i>Tressaillions,</i>	<i>tressailliez,</i>	<i>tressailloient,</i>

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Tressaillis,</i>	<i>tressaillis,</i>	<i>tressaillit,</i> I started.
Plur.	<i>Tressaillîmes,</i>	<i>tressaillîtes,</i>	<i>tressaillirent,</i>

Future.

Sing.	<i>Tressaillirai,</i>	<i>tressailliras,</i>	<i>tressaillira,</i> I shall, or will start.
Plur.	<i>Tressaillirons,</i>	<i>tressaillirez,</i>	<i>tressailliront,</i>

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Tressaillirois,</i>	<i>tressaillirois,</i>	<i>tressailliroit,</i> I should, would, &c. start.
Plur.	<i>Tressaillirions,</i>	<i>tressailliriez,</i>	<i>tressailliroient,</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Tressaille,</i>	<i>tressailles,</i>	<i>tressaille,</i>	that I may
Plur.	<i>Tressaillions,</i>	<i>tressailliez,</i>	<i>tressaillent,</i>	start.

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Tressaillisse,</i>	<i>tressaillisses,</i>	<i>tressaillît,</i>	that I might
Plur.	<i>Tressaillissions,</i>	<i>tressaillissiez,</i>	<i>tressaillissent,</i>	start.

ASSAILLIR, TO ASSAULT, is conjugated as above.

SAILLIR, TO JUT, OR JET OUT (term in architecture), is conjugated like *TRESSAILLIR*, but is only used in the third person of some tenses and its infinitive mood.

N. B. *SAILLIR*, TO GUSH OUT, (speaking of any liquid), is regular, and conjugated like *PUNIR*.

VENIR, TO COME,

And its compounds,

<i>Convenir</i> , to agree, to be-	<i>Revenir</i> , to come back, to
come, to fit, to suit,	return,
<i>Contrevenir</i> à, to infringe,	<i>Se souvenir</i> , to remember,
<i>Devenir</i> , to become,*	to remind,†
<i>Disconvenir</i> , to disagree,	<i>Se ressouvenir</i> , to recol-
<i>Intervenir</i> , to intervene,	lect,
<i>Parvenir</i> à, to attain to,	<i>Subvenir</i> , to relieve, to
<i>Prévenir</i> , to prevent, to	assist,
prejudice, to anticipate,	<i>Survenir</i> , to befall, to
to prepossess,	happen unexpectedly,
<i>Provenir</i> , to proceed,	to come to,

are conjugated like *TENIR*.

VETIR, TO CLOTHE.

This verb is seldom used but in the present of the infinitive mood, and participle passive, *vêtu*, clothed; therefore the conjugation of its compound *REVETIR*, TO INVEST WITH, TO GIVE OTHER CLOTHES, will be given in lieu of it.

* This verb in English is most generally accompanied by the preposition *of*, governing the noun or pronoun: but it must be observed, that, in French, the preposition must be suppressed, and the noun or pronoun become the nominative to the verb *devenir*: ex.

<i>Ne vous informez point de ce que</i>	Do not inquire about what will
<i>je deviendrai,</i>	become of me.
<i>Que deviendra votre cousin, si son</i>	What will become of your cousin,
<i>père l'abandonne ?</i>	if his father forsake him ?
<i>Si cela arrivoit, je ne sais ce que</i>	Should that happen, I know not
<i>nous deviendrions,</i>	what would become of us.

† When this verb, in English, governs a noun or pronoun in the accusative case, it must be put in the infinitive mood, and preceded by the verb *faire* in the same tense, number, and person, as the verb *to remind*: ex.

<i>Faites-moi souvenir de passer chez</i>	<i>Remind me to call upon your</i>
<i>votre tante,</i>	aunt.
<i>Où, je vous en ferai souvenir,</i>	Yes, I will remind you of it.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Revêtir</i> , to invest, to give other clothes.
Part. act.	<i>Revêtant</i> , investing.
Part. pass.	<i>Revêtu</i> , <i>ue</i> , invested.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Revêts</i> ,	<i>revêts</i> ,	<i>revêt</i> , I invest.
Plur.	<i>Revêtons</i> ,	<i>revêtez</i> ,	<i>revêtent</i> .

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Revêtois</i> ,	<i>revêtois</i> ,	<i>revêtoit</i> , I did invest.
Plur.	<i>Revétions</i> ,	<i>revétiez</i> ,	<i>revêtoient</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Revêtis</i> ,	<i>revêtis</i> ,	<i>revêtit</i> , I invested, or did in-
Plur.	<i>Revêtîmes</i> ,	<i>revêtîtes</i> ,	<i>revêtirent</i> , vest.

Future.

Sing.	<i>Revêtirai</i> ,	<i>revêtiras</i> ,	<i>revêtira</i> , I shall, or will in-
Sing.	<i>Revêtirons</i> ,	<i>revêtirez</i> ,	<i>revêtiront</i> , vest.

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Revêtirois</i> ,	<i>revêtirois</i> ,	<i>revêtiroit</i> , I should, would,
Plur.	<i>Revêtirions</i> ,	<i>revêtiriez</i> ,	<i>revêtiroient</i> , &c. invest.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Revêts</i> ,	<i>revête</i> , invest thou.
Plur.	<i>Revêtons</i> ,	<i>revêtez</i> , <i>revêtent</i> ,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Revête</i> ,	<i>revêtes</i> ,	<i>revête</i> , that I may invest.
Plur.	<i>Revétions</i> ,	<i>revétiez</i> ,	<i>revêtent</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Revétisse</i> ,	<i>revétisses</i> ,	<i>revétit</i> , that I might invest.
Plur.	<i>Revétissions</i> ,	<i>revétissiez</i> ,	<i>revétissent</i> ,

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Your friend Mr. H***, does not serve me well. - -
ami, m.

Shall I help you to a little bit of lamb,
morceau, m. agneau, m.

or a wing of that chicken? - - - We would
aile, f. poulet, m.

serve him with all our heart, if we could. - - -
pouvoir, v.

I shall go out in half an hour. - - If we go to-day
aujourd'hui, adv.

to Richmond, we will make use of your coach. - - My
carrosse, m.

sister went out this morning at nine o'clock, and is not
matin, m.

yet returned. - - Nobody knows what we suffered in our
savoir, v.

last voyage. - - If I were as ill as you, I would
voyage, m. malade, adj.

not go out of my room. - - Why do not you
chambre, f. Pourquoi, adv.

serve your friends, since you may do it? - -
puisque, c. pouvoir, v.

Should they forsake you, what would become of
abandonner, v.

you? - - I would make use of your horse, if you were
cheval, m. avoir

so kind as to lend it to me. - - - The more we are
la bonté de

above others, the more it becomes us to be
au dessus de, p.

modest and humble. - - My aunt and I came yester-
tante, f.

day to see you, but you were not at home. - - I
hope you will keep your word, and come

to-morrow. - - I assure you Mr. R**'s father holds
parole, f.

demain, adv. assurer, v.

the first rank in the town, but the son will never
rang, m.
 attain to his father's reputation. - - Men acquire, by
Homme, m.
 long labours, knowledge which often becomes
travail, m. lumière, f.
 fatal to them. - - I maintain, and will always
funeste, adj.
 maintain, that you will not be happy without
heureux, adj. sans, p.
 virtue. - - We were coming to see you, but you have
 anticipated all my designs. - - She leaped for joy when
de
 she saw her. - - At last she has agreed to pay her
*Enfin, adv. * de*
 an annual pension of twenty pounds. - - Her mother
 started up at these words, and became furious. - -
en à, p. parole, f. furieux, adj.
 Come on Friday morning at nine o'clock. - -
en Vendredi, m.
 This house will belong to me after her death. - -
après, p. mort, f.
 You will obtain leave to go out another time,
permission, f. de fois, f.
 if you come back soon. - - This box contains all
bientôt, adv.
 my jewels. - - I agree, Miss N. is the prettiest of the
bijoux, m. pl.
 family; but she is so proud, that I know not what will
 become of her. - - Who knows whether they will re-
savoir, v. si, c.
 member it or not? - - They assaulted the town (in the)
au
 middle of the night, and all their officers, even
milieu, m. même, adv.
 the general, agree that they have acquired much
acquérir, p. p.
 glory. - - Remember that, if you infringe the law, you

* See the neuter verbs for the formation of the compound tenses,
 page 212.

will incur the punishments decreed by the law. - - -
peine, f. porté, p. p.

Your illness proceeds from a great heat. - - - The
chaleur, f.

first time you come to see me, I will keep you
 (by the fut.)

two or three days. - - Mr. B. desired me to tell you,
prier, v. de

that he will not come back to-day. - - - When the
 surgeon had opened his vein, the blood gushed
chirurgien, m. sang, m.

out with an extraordinary impetuosity. - - That poor
 man will bless you, if you give him other clothes. - -
bénir, v.

He is so prepossessed against me, that he will not
contre, p. vouloir, v.

agree he is in the wrong. - - We should certainly
certainement, adv.

have come back yesterday, had we had time. - - You will
hier, adv.

become a great man, if you continue to study with
continuer, v. de

the same assiduity. - - He would have come to see us
*assiduité, f. **

last week, if it had not rained. - - The first time
semaine, f. plu, p. p. fois, f.

I go out, remind me to call on your bro-
 (by the fut.) *de passer, v. chez, p.*

ther. - - That hat would suit you very well, if you
 were a little taller. - - - Do not go out to-day, you
 will suffer much if you do. - - - I should not suffer
beaucoup, adv. faire, v.

(so much) if it were fine weather. - - Why do not
tant, adv. faisoit, v.

you abstain from drinking? - - The king has invested
boire, v.

that nobleman with all his authority. - - You may
seigneur, m. de pouvoir, v.

set out this morning, but remember to come back
de

at night. - - Were I in your place, I would detain
ce soir, m. *place, f.*
 him here a little longer ; for he always keeps
long-tems, adv. car, c.
 himself shut up in his house. - - I do not think that
enfermé, p.p. *croire, v.*
 colour suits your sister. - - When will she return
 (by the subj.) *Quand, adv.*
 from the country ? - - She wrote she would come next
 Saturday, if the weather were fine.

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

ASSEOIR, TO SIT DOWN.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Asseoir*, to sit down.
 Part. act. *Asseyant*, sitting down.
 Part. pass. *Assis, ise*, sat down (or seated).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Assieds, assieds, assied*, I sit down.
 Plur. *Asseyons, asseyez, asseient*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Asseyois, asseyois, asseyoit*, I did sit, or was sit-
 Plur. *Asseyions, asseyiez, asseyoient*, ting down.

Preterite.

Sing. *Assis, assis, assit*, I sat down.
 Plur. *Assîmes, assîtes, assirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Assièrai, assièras, assièra*, I shall, or will sit
 Plur. *Assièrons, assièrez, assièront*, down.

Conditional.

Sing. *Assiérois, assiérois, assiéroit*, I should, would, or
 Plur. *Assiérions, assiériez, assiéroient*, could sit down.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Assieds, asseie*, sit down.
 Plur. *Asseyons, asseyez, asseient*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Assie,</i>	<i>asseies,</i>	<i>asseie,</i>	that I may sit down.
Plur.	<i>Asseyions,</i>	<i>asseyiez,</i>	<i>asseient,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing. *Assisse, assisses, assît*, that I might sit down.
 Plur. *Assissions, assissiez, assissent*,

Asseoir is most generally conjugated as a reflective verb, which may easily be done, by the learner adding a double pronoun to the different tenses, and forming the compound ones by the verb *être*, as in *se promener* : ex.

Je m'assieds, tu t'assieds, il s'assied ;
Nous nous asseyons, vous vous asseyez, ils s'asseient.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Je me suis assis, tu t'es assis, il s'est assis ;
Nous nous sommes assis, vous vous êtes assis, &c.

The compound of this verb is,

Se rasscoir, to sit down again.

SEOIR, TO FIT WELL, TO BECOME, TO FIT, the primitive of *asseoir*, is never used in the present of its infinitive mood ; and in its other tenses is conjugated as follows :

Part. act. *Séant*, fitting well, fitting, or becoming.

Part. pass. *Sis*, (never used but in the sense of situate, or lying.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. *Il sied, ils siéent*, it becomes, they be-
come, &c.

Imperfect. *Il séyoit, ils séyoient*, it was becoming, &c.
Preterite wanting.

Future. *Il siéra, ils siéront*, it or they will become.

Conditional. *Il siéroit, ils siéroient*, it or they would be-
come.

The other tenses are never used.

SURSEOIR, TO SUPERSEDE, TO PUT OFF, a compound of *seoir*, is only used in law, and is thus conjugated :

Part. act. *Sursoyant.*

Part. pass. *Sursis, isei.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Je sursois, &c. nous sursoyons, &c.

Imperfect.

Je sursoyois, &c. nous sursoyions, &c.

Preterite.

Je sursis, &c. nous sursîmes, &c.

Future.

Je surseoirai, &c. nous surseoirons, &c.

Conditional.

Je surseoirois, &c. nous surseoirions, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sursois, &c. sursoyons, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que je surseoie, &c. que nous sursoyions, &c.

Preterite.

Que je sursisse, &c. que nous sursissions, &c.

DECHOIR, TO DECAY, TO DECLINE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Déchoir*, to decay.

Part. act. wanting.

Part. pass. *Déchu*, *ue*, decayed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Déchois*, *déchois*, *déchoit*, I decay.Plur. *Déchoyons*, *déchoyez*, *déchoient*,

Imperfect is wanting.

Preterite.

Sing. *Déchus*, *déchus*, *dechut*, I decayed, or didPlur. *Déchûmes*, *déchûtes*, *déchurent*, decay.

Future.

Sing. *Décherrai*, *décherras*, *décherra*, I shall, or willPlur. *Décherrons*, *décherrez*, *décherront*, decay.

Conditional.

Sing. *Décherrois*, *décherrois*, *décherroit*, I should, would,
or could decay.Plur. *Décherrions*, *décherriez*, *décherroient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que* *déchoie*, *que* *déchoies*, *que* *déchoie*, that I may decay.Plur. *Déchoyions*, *déchoyiez*, *déchoient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Déchusse*, *déchusses*, *déchût*, that I might decay.Plur. *Déchussions*, *déchussiez*, *déchussent*,*CHOIR*, the primitive of the above verb is obsolete.*ECHOIR*, TO FALL OUT, TO CHANCE, is conjugated like *DECHOIR*. Its part. act. is *échéant*.

MOUVOIR, TO MOVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Mouvoir*, to move.

Part. act. *Mouvant*, moving.

Part. pass. *Mû, ue*, moved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Meus*, *meus*, *meut*, I move.

Plur. *Mouvons*, *mouvez*, *meuvent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Mouvois*, *mouvois*, *mouvoit*, I did move.

Plur. *Mouvions*, *mouviez*, *mouvoient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Mus*, *mus*, *mut*, I moved, or did move.

Plur. *Mûmes*, *mûtes*, *murent*,

Future.

Sing. *Mourrai*, *mourras*, *mourra*, I shall, or will move.

Plur. *Mourrons*, *mouvrez*, *mourront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Mouvrais*, *mouvrais*, *mouvrait*, I should, could, or

Plur. *Mouvrions*, *mouvriez*, *mouvraient*, would move.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Meus*, *meuve*, move thou.

Plur. *Mouvons*, *mouvez*, *meuvent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que *meuve*, *meuves*, *meuve*, that I may move.

Plur. *Mouvions*, *mouvriez*, *meuvent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Musse*, *musses*, *mût*, that I might move.

Plur. *Mussions*, *mussiez*, *mussent*,

The compound of this verb is,

Emouvoir, to stir up, to move.

POUVOIR, TO BE ABLE, TO HAVE IN ONE'S POWER.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Pouvoir*, to be able.
 Part. act. *Pouvant*, being able.
 Part. pass. *Pu*, been able.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Puis*, or *peux*, *peux*, *peut*, I am able, I can or may.
 Plur. *Pouvons*, *pouvez*, *peuvent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Pouvois*, *pouvois*, *pouvoit*, I was able, or I could.
 Plur. *Pouvions*, *pouviez*, *pouvoient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Pus*, *pus*, *put*, I was able, or I could.
 Plur. *Pûmes*, *pûtes*, *purent*,

Future.

Sing. *Pourrai*, *pourras*, *pourra*, I shall or will be able.
 Plur. *Pourrons*, *pourrez*, *pourront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Pourrois*, *pourrois*, *pourroit*, I should be able, I
 Plur. *Pourrions*, *pourriez*, *pourroient*, could or might.

IMPERATIVE MOOD wanting.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que *que* *que*
 Sing. *Puisse*, *puisses*, *puisse*, that I may be able, or
 Plur. *Puissions*, *puissiez*, *puissent*, I may.

Preterite.

Sing. *Pusse*, *pusses*, *pût*, that I might be able, or
 Plur. *Pussions*, *pussiez*, *pussent*, I might.

When the words *can*, *may*, *could*, or *might*, express an absolute or permissive power, or a possibility of doing a thing, *can* and *may* are rendered by the present tense of the indicative of this verb : ex.

Je puis vous vendre un bon cheval, si vous en avez besoin d'un, I can sell you a good horse, if you want one.

Vous pouvez aller au bal, mais revenez à dix heures, You may go to the ball, but come back at ten o'clock.

N. B. *May*, expressing a wish, is rendered by the present tense of the subjunctive: ex.

Puissiez-vous être heureux ! *May* you be happy !

Could is rendered by one of the following tenses, viz. the imperfect, preterite, definite or indefinite, or conditional present; and *might* by the last tense: ex.

Je ne pouvois pas mieux faire, I could do no better.

Il ne put pas venir avec nous la semaine passée, He could not come with us last week.

Vous pourriez vous tromper aussi bien que lui, You might mistake as well as he.

Could or *might*, being joined to the verb *to have*, immediately followed by a participle passive, must be rendered by the conditional past of the above verb, with the participle turned into the present of the infinitive mood: ex.

J'aurois pu vous le dire hier au soir, I could have told it to you last night.

Vous auriez pu le faire en trois jours, You might have done it in three days.

SAVOIR, TO KNOW something.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Savoir*, to know.
Part. act. *Sachant*, knowing.
Part. pass. *Su, ue*, known.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Sais*, sais, sait, I know.
Plur. *Savons*, savez, savent,

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Savois,</i>	<i>savois,</i>	<i>savoit,</i>	I did know, or knew.
Plur. <i>Savions,</i>	<i>saviez,</i>	<i>savoient,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing. <i>Sus,</i>	<i>sus,</i>	<i>sut,</i>	I knew, or did know.
Plur. <i>Sûmes,</i>	<i>sûtes,</i>	<i>surent,</i>	

Future.

Sing. <i>Saurai,</i>	<i>sauras,</i>	<i>saura,</i>	I shall, or will know.
Plur. <i>Saurons,</i>	<i>saurez,</i>	<i>sauront,</i>	

Conditional.

Sing. <i>Saurois,*</i>	<i>saurois,</i>	<i>sauroit,</i>	I should, would, or
Plur. <i>Saurions,</i>	<i>sauriez,</i>	<i>sauroient,</i>	could know.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Sache,</i>	<i>sache,</i>	know thou.
Plur. <i>Sachons,</i>	<i>sachez,</i>	<i>sachent,</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing. <i>Sache,†</i>	<i>saches,</i>	<i>sache,</i>	that I may know.	
Plur. <i>Sachions,</i>	<i>sachiez,</i>	<i>sachent,</i>		

Preterite.

Sing. <i>Susse,</i>	<i>susses,</i>	<i>sût,</i>	that I might know.
Plur. <i>Sussions,</i>	<i>sussiez,</i>	<i>sussent,</i>	

VALOIR, TO BE WORTH.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Valoir,</i>	to be worth.
Part. act.	<i>Valant,</i>	being worth.
Part. pass.	<i>Valu,</i>	been worth.

* This tense, conjugated negatively, is often Englished by *cannot* :
ex.

Je ne saurois vous le dire, I cannot tell it to you.

† We sometimes employ the present of the subjunctive of this verb instead of the indicative ; but it is never to be used without the negation *pas*, and most commonly in answering a question : ex.

Le roi ira-t-il à la comédie ? Will the king go to the play ?
Pas que je sache, Not that I know of.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. <i>Vaux</i> ,	<i>vaux</i> ,	<i>vaut</i> , I am worth.
Plur. <i>Valons</i> ,	<i>valez</i> ,	<i>valent</i> ,

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Valois</i> ,	<i>valois</i> ,	<i>valoit</i> , I was worth.
Plur. <i>Valions</i> ,	<i>valiez</i> ,	<i>valoient</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing. <i>Valus</i> ,	<i>alus</i> ,	<i>valut</i> , I was worth.
Plur. <i>Valûmes</i> ,	<i>valûtes</i> ,	<i>valurent</i> ,

Future.

Sing. <i>Vaudrai</i> ,	<i>audras</i> ,	<i>audra</i> , I shall, or will be
Plur. <i>Vaudrons</i> ,	<i>audrez</i> ,	<i>audront</i> , worth.

Conditional.

Sing. <i>Vaudrois</i> ,	<i>audrois</i> ,	<i>audroit</i> , I should, &c. be
Plur. <i>Vaudrions</i> ,	<i>audriez</i> ,	<i>audroient</i> , worth.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Vaux</i> ,	<i>vaille</i> , be thou worth.
Plur. <i>Valons</i> ,	<i>valez</i> ,	<i>vaillent</i> ,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Vaille</i> ,	<i>vailles</i> ,	<i>vaille</i> ,	that I may be worth.
Plur. <i>Valions</i> ,	<i>valiez</i> ,	<i>vaillent</i> ,	

Preterite.

Sing. <i>Valusse</i> ,	<i>alusses</i> ,	<i>valût</i> , that I might be worth.
Plur. <i>Valussions</i> ,	<i>alussiez</i> ,	<i>alussent</i> ,

The compound of this verb is,

Prévaloir, to prevail, which is conjugated as *VALOIR*: but we say much better in the present tense of the subjunctive.

Que je préval-e, es, e : ions, iez, ent.

VOIR, TO SEE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Voir</i> , to see.
Part. act.	<i>Voyant</i> , seeing.
Part. pass.	<i>Vu</i> , <i>ue</i> , seen.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Vois</i> ,	<i>vois</i> ,	<i>voit</i> , I see.
Plur.	<i>Voyons</i> ,	<i>voyez</i> ,	<i>voient</i> ,

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Voyois</i> ,	<i>voyois</i> ,	<i>voyoit</i> , I did see.
Plur.	<i>Voyions</i> ,	<i>voyiez</i> ,	<i>voyoient</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Vis</i> ,	<i>vis</i> ,	<i>vit</i> , I saw, or did see.
Plur.	<i>Vîmes</i> ,	<i>vîtes</i> ,	<i>virent</i> ,

Future.

Sing.	<i>Verrai</i> ,	<i>verras</i> ,	<i>verra</i> , I shall, or will see.
Plur.	<i>Verrons</i> ,	<i>verrez</i> ,	<i>verront</i> ,

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Verrois</i> ,	<i>verrois</i> ,	<i>verroit</i> , I should, &c. see.
Plur.	<i>Verrions</i> ,	<i>verriez</i> ,	<i>verroient</i> ,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Vois</i> ,	<i>voie</i> ,	see thou.
Plur.	<i>Voyons</i> ,	<i>voyez</i> ,	<i>voient</i> ,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Voie</i> ,	<i>voies</i> ,	<i>voie</i> ,	that I may see.
Plur.	<i>Voyions</i> ,	<i>voyiez</i> ,	<i>voient</i> ,	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Visse</i> ,	<i>visses</i> ,	<i>vît</i> ,	that I might see.
Plur.	<i>Vissions</i> ,	<i>vissiez</i> ,	<i>vissent</i> ,	

Entrevoir, to have a glimpse of. *Prévoir*, to foresee.
Revoir, to see again. *Pourvoir*, to provide.

PREVOIR differs from **VOIR** in the future : ex.

Sing. *Prévoirai, prévoiras, prévoira.*

Plur. *Prévoirons, prévoiriez, prévoiront ;* And,

Conditional. Present.

Sing. *Prévoirais, prévoirais, prévoirait.*

Plur. *Prévoirions, prévoiriez, prévoiraient.*

POURVOIR makes in the Preterite,

Sing. *Pourvus, pourvus, pourvut.*

Plur. *Pourvûmes, pourvûtes, pourvurent.*

Future.

Sing. *Pourvoirai, pourvoiras, pourvoira.*

Plur. *Pourvoirons, pourvoirez, pourvoiront.*

Conditional.

Sing. *Pourvoirais, pourvoirais, pourvoirait.*

Plur. *Pourvoirions, pourvoiriez, pourvoiraient.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Preterite.

Sing. *Pourvusse, pourvusses, pourvût.*

Plur. *Pourvussions, pourvussiez, pourvussent.*

VOULOIR, TO BE WILLING.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Vouloir, to be willing.*

Part. act. *Voulant, being willing.*

Part. pass. *Voulu, ue, been willing.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Veux, veux, veut, I am willing, or I will.*

Plur. *Voulons, voulez, veulent.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Voulois, voulois, voulait, I was willing, or I would.*

Plur. *Voulions, vouliez, voulaient,*

Preterite.

Sing. *Voulus, voulos, voulut*, I was willing, or I
 Plur. *Voulûmes, volûtes, voulurent*, would.

Future.

Sing. *Voudrai, voudras, voudra*, I shall be willing, or
 Plur. *Voudrons, voudrez, voudront*, I will.

Conditional.

Sing. *Voudrois, voudrois, voudroit*, I should be willing,
 Plur. *Voudrions, voudriez, voudroient*, or I would.

IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Veuille, veuilles, veuille*, that I may be willing.
 Plur. *Voulions, vouliez, veuillent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Voulusse, voulusses, voulut*, that I might be wil-
 Plur. *Voulussions, voulussiez, voulussent*, ling.

When the words *will* or *would* signify a will, choice, or deliberation in the agent, and can be expressed by *choose* or *chose*, *will* is rendered in French by the present of the indicative mood, or future of this verb : ex.

Je veux y aller, et lui parler moi-même, I will, or choose to, go there, and speak to him myself :

Il ne veut pas manger, He will not eat, or does not choose to eat :

and *would* by one of the following tenses, viz. the Imperfect, Preterite, Conditional, or Compound of the Present.

<i>Si je voulois, je vous dirois</i>	If I would, or chose, I could
<i>où elle demeure,</i>	tell you where she lives.
<i>Il voulut absolument partir</i>	He would absolutely, or
<i>hier,</i>	absolutely chose to, set
	out yesterday.
<i>Que voudriez-vous que je</i>	What would you have me
<i>fisse ?</i>	do ?

When *would* is joined to the verb *to have* immediately followed by a participle passive, they are to be rendered by the compound of the imperfect or compound of the conditional of the above verb, with the participle passive turned into the present of the infinitive mood : ex.

<i>Si j'avois voulu lui parler,</i>	If I would have spoken to
	him, or had I chosen to
	speak to him.
<i>Vous n'auriez pas voulu</i>	You would not have taken
<i>prendre les armes, si, &c.</i>	up arms, if, &c.
<i>Nous aurions pu l'arrêter si</i>	We could have stopped
<i>nous eussions voulu,</i>	him, if we would, or
	had chosen.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Why do not you sit down, sir? - - You
Pourquoi, adv.
 come to see me very seldom. - - Let us sit down upon
rarement, adv.
 the grass. - - Do not make (so much) noise, I cannot
herbe, f. faire, v. tant, adv.
 learn my lesson. - - Do you know what has hap-
apprendre, v. arri-
 pened to her? - - No, I do not. - - As soon as he saw
ver, v. Aussitôt que, c.
 he could not make her hear reason, he went
entendre, v. s'en
 away. - - We went there ourselves, and soon knew
aller, v. bientôt, adv.

what she asked. - - See the letter she wrote me. - - We
écrire, v.
 will not sit down till you have determined to set
que ne se déterminer, v. à
 out. - - The first time I saw your sister, she pleased me.
fois, f. plaire, v.
 - - I would sit down upon the grass, if it were not so
 damp. - - Mrs. P. desired me to tell you she could
humide, adj. prier, v. dire, v.
 not come to see you this week, but she would cer-
semaine, f. cer-
 tainly come at the beginning of next
tainement, adv. commencement, m.
 month. - - Cannot you lend me three or four
mois, m. prêter, v.
 guineas? - - If I would, I could soon know
guinée, f. bientôt, adv.
 whether Mrs. D. has seen your aunt or not. - - -
si, c. tante, f.
 The last time I was in the park, I could not distinguish
 her on account of the trees, that were between
à cause, p.
 her and me; (I had only a) glimpse of her. - - -
je n'ai fait que
 This cloth is not worth five shillings a yard, but its
drap, m.
 colour becomes you very well. - - Do you not see the
 defects of it? - - When you know your lesson,
défaut, m. (by the fut.)
 come and repeat it to me. - - Did you not know that
répéter, v.
 Mr. A. was to marry Miss B.? - - I knew it, but
épouser, v. mais, c.
 I was not willing to tell your brother of it. - - I be-
parler, v.
 lieve you could learn your lessons much bet-
apprendre, v. beaucoup, adv.
 ter, if you would. - - Could you lend me your horse
prêter, v.

for two or three days? - - If your brother come with
jour, m. *avec, p.*
 me, will he be able to follow me? - - What will you
suivre, v.

lay that he will not come without his sister? - - This
parier, v.

room can contain about a hundred people. - - Could
environ, p. *personne, f.*

they see so great an alteration, without being
changement, m. *sans, p.*

vexed (at it)? - - It is better to be unfortunate than
fâché, p. p. *en, pro.* *valoir, v.* *malheureux, adj.*

criminal. - - He is incapable of commanding others, who
 cannot command himself. - - His best coat was not
habit, m.

worth two-pence when he arrived from Germany. - - -
sou, m. *Allemagne, f.*

We saw them yesterday. - - They did not foresee
hier, adv.

what would happen to them. - - We ought to
arriver, v. *devoir, v.*

make a judicious choice of those friends, to
faire, v. *judicieux, adj.* *choix, m.*

whom we intend to give our confidence. - - Do you
vouloir, v. *confiance, f.*

know where Miss B. lives? - - Yes, I do (know it),
où, adv. *demeurer, v.*

and I see her every day at her window. - - Why will
fenêtre, f.

you not tell it me? - - She would marry him in
épouser, v. *en, p.*

spite of all her relations. - - It is for this reason
dépit, m. *parent, m.* *Ce, pro.*

her father says he will never see her again. - - I
dire, v.

have spoken of your wine to two friends of mine :
 one has money, but he will not buy ; the other would
 buy, but he has no money. - - Some told me that
 your brother could not pay me, others told me that

he would not ; in short, I find that, when people
enfin, adv.
 will not pay, we have much trouble. - - We regularly
 pay all that we owe, but he says that he will pay
 nobody. - - All the finest talents united are not
réunir, v.
 worth one virtue. - - Virtue is a quality which we can-
on, pro.
 not praise too much. - - Severity and rigour may
louer, v. trop, adv. Sévérité, f. rigueur, f.
 excite fear, but not love. - - You saw with what
crainte, f. amour, m.
 goodness she received him. - - I would not tell her
bonté, f. recevoir, v.
 what I think about it, for fear of giving her the least
de, p.
 subject of complaint. - - If you foresee the danger,
plainte, f.
 why do you not endeavour to avoid it ? - - They were
tâcher, v. de éviter, v.
 willing to withdraw but your brother hindered
se retirer, v. empêcher, v.
 them (from it), and desired them to sit down again.
prier, v. de
 - - You can speak to Mr. B. whenever you
parler, v. quand, adv.
 please, but I may not take that liberty. - - -
vouloir, v. prendre, v.
 Why may you not ? - - - You know the esteem
estime, f.
 and friendship that I have for him : you know
 that his father is one of my oldest friends ;
ancien, adj.
 you yourself know the merit of both. - - He would
 not sell me these buckles under four
vendre, v. boucle, f. à moins de, p.
 guineas. - - I will not see your brother (any more),
plus, adv.
 but I will see you again as soon as I can. - - -
 (by the fut.)

Every body thinks, that, if they would have pursued
the enemy briskly, *poursuivre, v.* they might have ended
vigoureuusement, adv. *finir, v.*
the war on that day. - - Should we see ourselves re-
duced to so great difficulties ? - - If I would have be-
lieved him, he would have persuaded me to go to Italy
croire, v. *de*
with him. - - He could have done his work in less
faire, v. *en, p.*
than ten minutes, if he had not amused himself in
s'amuser, v. *à*
reading. - - If you want that book, you may take
lire, v. *avoir besoin de*
it, it is at your service. - - If he sold all his horses now,
à
the best of them would not be worth ten guineas. - - -
We might have danced till (twelve o'clock) if
jusqu'à, p. *minuit, m.*
that had not happened. - - Oh ! my children, may you
be happy, and never bewail the moment of your
heureux, adj. *pleurer, v.*
birth ! - - - I spoke to her (a long while), but could
naissance, f. *long-tems, adv.*
not persuade her to come with me. - - May I go
de
and see him ? - - Yes, you may, but come back
as soon as you can.
aussitôt que, c. (by the fut.)

VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ABSOUUDRE, TO ABSOLVE, TO ACQUIT.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Absoudre*, to absolve.
 Part. act. *Absolvant*, absolving.
 Part. pass. *Absous*, ou *absout*, *oute*, absolving.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Absous*, *absous*, *absout*, I absolve.
 Plur. *Absolvons*, *absolvez*, *absolvent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Absolvois*, *absolvois*, *absolvoit*, I did absolve.
 Plur. *Absolvions*, *absolviez*, *absolvoient*,

Preterite is wanting.

Future.

Sing. *Absoudrai*, *absoudras*, *absoudra*, I shall, or will
 Plur. *Absoudrons*, *absoudrez*, *absoudront*, absolve.

Conditional.

Sing. *Absoudrois*, *absoudrois*, *absoudroit*, I should, &c.
 Plur. *Absoudrions*, *absoudriez*, *absoudroient*, absolve.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Absous*, *absolve*, absolve thou.
 Plur. *Absolvons*, *absolvez*, *absolvent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que *que* *que*
 Sing. *Absolve*, *absolves*, *absolve*, that I may absolve.
 Plur. *Absolvions*, *absolviez*, *absolvent*,

Preterite is wanting.

SOUDRE, TO SOLVE, (the primitive of this verb),
 is used only in the present tense of the infinitive mood.

The other compounds are,

Dissoudre, to dissolve. *Résoudre*, to resolve.

Dissoudre has the same tenses wanting as *absoudre*.

Résoudre has its participle passive, *résolu* : its preterite is,

Sing. *Résolus*, *résolus*, *résolut*.

Plur. *Résolûmes*, *résolûtes*, *résolurent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Preterite.

Sing. *Résolusse*, *résolusses*, *résolût*.

Plur. *Résolussions*, *résolussiez*, *résolussent*.

ASTREINDRE, TO OBLIGE ;

ATTEINDRE, TO REACH, TO HIT, TO ATTAIN,
TO OVERTAKE, and

AVEINDRE, TO REACH, TO FETCH OUT,
are conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

The three foregoing verbs are growing obsolete.

BATTRE, TO BEAT.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Battre*, to beat.

Part. act. *Battant*, beating.

Part. pass. *Battu, ue*, beaten.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Bats*, *bats*, *bat*, I beat, or am beating.

Plur. *Battons*, *battiez*, *battent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Battois*, *battois*, *battoit*, I did beat, or was beating.

Plur. *Battions*, *battiez*, *battoient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Battis*, *battis*, *battit*, I beat, or did beat.Plur. *Battîmes*, *battîtes*, *battirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Battrai*, *battras*, *battra*, I shall, or will beat.Plur. *Battrons*, *battrez*, *battront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Battrois*, *battrois*, *battroit*, I should, &c. beat.Plur. *Battrions*, *battriez*, *battroient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Bats*, *batte*, beat thou.Plur. *Battons*, *battez*, *battent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que* *batte*, *que* *battes*, *que* *batte*, that I may beat.Plur. *Battions*, *battiez*, *battent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Battisse*, *battisses*, *battît*, that I might beat.Plur. *Battissions*, *battissiez*, *battissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

Abattre, to pull down,
to throw down.*Combattre*, to fight.*Débattre*, to debate.*Se débattre*, to struggle.*Rabattre*, to abate, to beat
down.*Rebattre*, to beat again.

BOIRE, TO DRINK.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Boire*, to drink.Part. act. *Buvant*, drinking.Part. pass. *Bu*, *ue*, drunk.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Bois*, *bois*, *boit*, I drink, or am drinking.Plur. *Buvons*, *buvez*, *boivent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Buvois*, *buvois*, *buvoit*, I did drink, or was drink-Plur. *Buvions*, *buviez*, *buvoient*, ing.

Preterite.

Sing. *Bus*, *bus*, *but*, I drank, or did drink.Plur. *Bûmes*, *bûtes*, *burent*,

Future.

Sing. *Boirai*, *boiras*, *boira*, I shall, or will drink.Plur. *Boirons*, *boirez*, *boiront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Boirois*, *boirois*, *boiroit*, I should, &c. drink.Plur. *Boirions*, *boiriez*, *boiroient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Bois*, *boive*, drink thou.Plur. *Buvons*, *buvez*, *boivent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que Boive*, *que boives*, *que boive*, that I may drink.Plur. *Buvions*, *buviez*, *boivent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Busse*, *busses*, *bût*, that I might drink.Plur. *Bussions*, *bussiez*, *bussent*,

N. B. *Boire dans quelque chose*, is, To drink out of something.

BRAIRE, TO BRAY.

This verb is seldom used, except in the present tense of the infinitive mood, and the third person

singular and plural of the present, future, and conditional, of the indicative mood.

Infinitive. *Braire*, to bray.—Present, indicative. *Il brait, ils braient*.—Future. *Il braira, ils brairont*.—Conditional. *Il brairoit, ils brairoient*.—This verb expresses the discordant cry of an ass.

BRUIRE, TO ROAR, TO MAKE A GREAT NOISE.

This verb is used only in the present of the infinitive mood, and in the third person of the imperfect, indicative: *il bruyoit, ils bruyoient*. Its participle active, *bruyant*, is often but a mere adjective.

CEINDRE, TO GIRD,

And its compound, *Enceindre*, to inclose, to encompass, are conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

CIRCONCIRE, TO CIRCUMCISE,
is conjugated like **CONFIRE**,

but has its participle passive ending in *is, ise*, instead of *it*.

CONCLURE, TO CONCLUDE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Conclure*, to conclude.
Part. act. *Concluant*, concluding.
Part. pass. *Conclu, ue*, concluded.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Conclus, conclus, conclut*, I conclude.
Plur. *Concluons, concluez, concluent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Concluois, concluois, concluoit*, I did conclude.
Plur. *Concluions, concluiez, concluoient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Conclus*, *conclus*, *conclut*, I did conclude, or

Plur. *Conclûmes*, *conclûtes*, *conclurent*, concluded.

Future.

Sing. *Conclurai*, *concluras*, *conclura*, I shall, or will

Plur. *Conclurons*, *conclurez*, *conclurent*, conclude.

Conditional.

Sing. *Conclurois*, *conclurois*, *concluroit*, I should, &c.

Plur. *Conclurions*, *concluriez*, *concluroient*, conclude.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Conclus*, *conclue*, conclude thou.

Plur. *Concluons*, *concluez*, *concluent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que *que* *que*
Sing. *Conclue*, *conclues*, *conclue*, that I may con-

Plur. *Concluions*, *concluiez*, *concluent*, clude.

Preterite.

Sing. *Conclusse*, *conclusses*, *conclût*, that I might con-

Plur. *Conclussions*, *conclussiez*, *conclussent*, clude.

CONDUIRE, TO CONDUCT, TO LEAD, TO CARRY.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Conduire*, to conduct.

Part. act. *Conduisant*, conducting.

Part. pass. *Conduit*, *te*, conducted.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Conduis*, *conduis*, *conduit*, I lead, &c.

Plur. *Conduisons*, *conduisez*, *conduisent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Conduisois*, *conduisois*, *conduisoit*, I did lead.

Plur. *Conduisions*, *conduisiez*, *conduisoient*,

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Conduisis,</i>	<i>conduisis,</i>	<i>conduisit,</i>	I led.
Plur.	<i>Conduisîmes,</i>	<i>conduisîtes,</i>	<i>conduisirent,</i>	

Future.

Sing.	<i>Conduirai,</i>	<i>conduiras,</i>	<i>conduira,</i>	I shall, or
Plur.	<i>Conduirons,</i>	<i>conduirez,</i>	<i>conduiront,</i>	will lead.

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Conduirois,</i>	<i>conduirois,</i>	<i>conduiroit,</i>	I should,
Plur.	<i>Conduirions,</i>	<i>conduiriez,</i>	<i>conduiroient,</i>	&c. lead.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Conduis,</i>	<i>conduise,</i>	lead thou.
Plur.	<i>Conduisons,</i>	<i>conduisez,</i>	<i>conduisent,</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Conduise,</i>	<i>conduises,</i>	<i>conduise,</i>	that I may
Plur.	<i>Conduisions,</i>	<i>conduisiez,</i>	<i>conduisent,</i>	lead.

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Conduisisse,</i>	<i>conduisisses,</i>	<i>conduisît,</i>	that I might
Plur.	<i>Conduisissions,</i>	<i>conduisissiez,</i>	<i>conduisissent,</i>	lead.

Its compound is

Reconduire, to lead again.

CONFIRE, TO PRESERVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Confire,</i>	to preserve.
Part. act.	<i>Confisant,</i>	preserving.
Part. pass.	<i>Confit,</i>	te, preserved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Confis,</i>	<i>confis,</i>	<i>confit,</i>	I preserve.
Plur.	<i>Confisons,</i>	<i>confisez,</i>	<i>confisent,</i>	

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Confisois,</i>	<i>confisois,</i>	<i>confisoit,</i>	I did pre-
Plur.	<i>Confisions,</i>	<i>confisiez,</i>	<i>confisoient,</i>	serve.

Preterite.

Sing. *Confis, confis, confit*, I preserved.Plur. *Confîmes, confîtes, confirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Confirai, confiras, confira*, I shall, or will pre-Plur. *Confirons, confirez, confiront*, serve.

Conditional.

Sing. *Confirois, confirois, confiroit*, I should, &c. pre-Plur. *Confirions, confiriez, confiroient*, serve.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Confis, confise*, preserve thou.Plur. *Confisons, confisez, confisent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que confise, que confises, que confise*, that I may preserve.Plur. *Confisions, confisiez, confisent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Confisse, confisses, confît*, that I might preserve.Plur. *Confissions, confissiez, confissent*,**CONNOITRE**, TO KNOW, TO BE ACQUAINTED
WITH, *somebody*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Connoître*, to know.Part. act. *Connoissant*, knowing.Part. pass. *Connu, ue*, known.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Connois, connois, connoît*, I know.Plur. *Connoissons, connoissez, connoissent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Connoissois, connoissois, connoissoit*, I did know.Plur. *Connoissions, connoissiez, connoissoient*,

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Connus,</i>	<i>connus,</i>	<i>connut,</i>	I knew.
Plur.	<i>Connûmes,</i>	<i>connûtes,</i>	<i>connurent,</i>	

Future.

Sing.	<i>Connoîtrai,</i>	<i>connoîtras,</i>	<i>connoîtra,</i>	I shall, &c.
Plur.	<i>Connoîtrons,</i>	<i>connoîtrez,</i>	<i>connoîtront,</i>	know.

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Connoîtrois,</i>	<i>connoîtrois,</i>	<i>connoîtroit,</i>	I should, &c.
Plur.	<i>Connoîtrions,</i>	<i>connoîtriez,</i>	<i>connoîtroient,</i>	know.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Connois,</i>	<i>connoisse,</i>	know thou.
Plur.	<i>Connoissons,</i>	<i>connoissez,</i>	<i>connoissent,</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Connoisse,</i>	<i>connoisses,</i>	<i>connoisse,</i>	that I may
Plur.	<i>Connoissions,</i>	<i>connoissiez,</i>	<i>connoissent,</i>	know.

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Connusse,</i>	<i>connusses,</i>	<i>connût,</i>	that I might know.
Plur.	<i>Connussions,</i>	<i>connussiez,</i>	<i>connussent,</i>	

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Méconnoître,</i>	to take for	<i>Reconnoître,</i>	to acknowl-
another.		edge,	to know again.

CONSTRUIRE, TO CONSTRUCT, TO BUILD,
is conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.

CONTRAINdre, TO CONSTRAIN TO COMPEL,
TO FORCE,
is conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

COUDRE, TO SEW, TO STITCH.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Coudre</i> , to sew.
Part. act.	<i>Cousant</i> , sewing.
Part. pass.	<i>Cousu, ue</i> , sewed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Couds</i> ,	<i>couds</i> ,	<i>coud</i> , I sew, or am sewing.
Plur.	<i>Cousons</i> ,	<i>cousez</i> ,	<i>cousent</i> ,

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Cousois</i> ,	<i>cousois</i> ,	<i>cousoit</i> , I did sew, or was sewing.
Plur.	<i>Cousions</i> ,	<i>cousiez</i> ,	<i>cousoient</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Cousis</i> ,	<i>cousis</i> ,	<i>cousit</i> , I sewed.
Plur.	<i>Cousîmes</i> ,	<i>cousîtes</i> ,	<i>cousirent</i> ,

Future.

Sing.	<i>Coudrai</i> ,	<i>coudras</i> ,	<i>coudra</i> , I shall, or will sew.
Plur.	<i>Coudrons</i> ,	<i>coudrez</i> ,	<i>coudront</i> ,

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Coudrois</i> ,	<i>coudrois</i> ,	<i>coudroit</i> , I should, &c. sew.
Plur.	<i>Coudrions</i> ,	<i>coudriez</i> ,	<i>coudroient</i> ,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Couds</i> ,	<i>couse</i> , sew thou.
Plur.	<i>Cousons</i> ,	<i>cousez</i> , <i>cousent</i> ,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Couse</i> ,	<i>couses</i> ,	<i>couse</i> , that I may sew.
Plur.	<i>Cousions</i> ,	<i>cousiez</i> ,	<i>cousent</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Cousisse</i> ,	<i>cousisses</i> ,	<i>cousît</i> , that I might sew.
Plur.	<i>Cousissions</i> ,	<i>cousissiez</i> ,	<i>cousissent</i> ,

Its compounds are,

Découdre, to unsew.

Recoudre, to sew again.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

I know several persons in this country who
plusieurs, adj. *pays, m.*
 speak as good French, as if they had been (brought up)
bien, adv. *élevé, p.p.*
 in France. - - - Do you know Mr. A. ? - - -
 Yes, we know him very well ; and, though he is
Oui, adv.
 rich, I assure you he is not the more charitable for
 it. - - He has been beaten (soundly). - - If you
comme il faut,
 knew the question, you would resolve it in two
question, f. *en*
 words. - - I will soon conclude, if you think as
mot, m. *comme, adv.*
 your brother does. - - We should beat them, if they
ou
 did not fight in their own country. - - Do not
propre, adj.
 beat him any more, he acknowledges his fault. - - -
ou *faute, f.*
 We ran for above two hours, but at last
pendant, p. *plus de, adv.* *enfin, adv.*
 your brother overtook him, and brought him back. - -
ramener, v.
 You would never see him again, if you knew him. - -
 He struggled a long while, but he was soon obliged
ou *tems, m.*
 to (cry for) mercy. - - This mortification has pulled
de demander, v. *grâce, f.*
 down his pride, I assure you : however, the judge
cependant, adv.
 has acquitted him of the accusation falsely
faussetment, adv.
 brought against him. - - Mr. R. told me some time
intenté, p.p. *contre, p.*

ago, that he would build a ship on a new plan. - - -
 What will you drink? - - I will drink nothing but
 water. - - Do not drink so much. - - If, your father
ne que
tant,adv.
 were here, you would not drink (at all). - - -
du tout.
 Let us fill our glasses, and drink our friend's health. - -
verre,m. *santé,f.*
 We beat them because our troops were better dis-
parceque,c. *dis-*
 ciplined than theirs. - - Come with us, we shall
cipliné,p.p.
 see whether she will know you again or not. - - If you
si,c. *non*
 knew her, I am certain she would please you. - - -
plaire,v.
 The English drink as much tea as the Venetians
autant,adv. *thé,m.* *Vénitien,m.*
 drink coffee. - - - After tea we conducted the ladies
café,m.
 to the concert. - - - When they had explained to us
 all that had passed, we acknowledged we (were in the
se passer,v. *avoir*
 wrong). - - - Your brother's coat was torn,
tort, *déchirer,v.*
 but our tailor sewed it up again so skilfully,
tailleur,m. *en* *adroitement,adv.*
 that his father did not perceive it. - - - Unsew
 that gown. - - I will sew it to-morrow. - - - The
 Jews and the Mahometans circumcise their
Juif,m. *Mahométan,m.*
 children a few days after their birth. - - - Why
en peu,adv. *naissance,f.*
 do not you preserve some fruits this year? - - - He
année,f.
 would not know you if he saw you now. - - - Did
à présent,adv.

you ask him whether he was acquainted with any of
 these ladies ? - - I know Mr. Y. but I do not trust
 to him. - - You will force your father to punish you
 if you do not behave better. - - - The last
 time we went to Vauxhall, we drank three bottles of
 Champaigne-wine. - - - The enemy beat us on the
 eighteenth, but we beat them again two days after.
 - - What will you drink, ladies ? - - We shall willingly
 drink some wine ; for we have not drunk
 any since our departure from France. - - -
 Drink, said she to me, (out of) that cup, the
 only token which your father has left
 us of his love. - - - Virtue in indigence is like
 a traveller whom the wind and rain compel to
 wrap himself up in his cloak. - - I would have
 preserved some fruits this year, but sugar is too
 dear. - - Thence we concluded you could not come
 to-day. - - I know nobody in this neighborhood. - - I
 knew your sister again as soon as I saw her. - - Though
 you should take three dozen of them, I could

*si, c.**se fier, v.**à**se comporter, v.**en**madame, f.**volon-**tiers, adv.**depuis, p.**départ, m.**dans**coupe, f.**seul, adj. marque, f.**laisser, v.**affection, f.**dans, p.**comme**pluie, f.**de**envelopper, v.**en**de, manteau, m.**trop, adv.**De là, adv.**voisinage, m.**Quand, c.**douzaine, f.*

not abate a farthing. - - The wind was so great that
liard, m. *vent, m.*
 it has thrown down one or two trees in our garden.

GRAINDRE, TO FEAR, TO BE AFRAID.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Craindre*, to fear.
 Part. act. *Craignant*, fearing.
 Part. pass. *Craint*, *aïnte*, feared.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Crains*, *crains*, *craint*, I fear, or am afraid.
 Plur. *Craignons*, *craignez*, *craignent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Craignois*, *craignois*, *craignoit*, I did fear, or
 Plur. *Craignons*, *craigniez*, *craignoient*, was afraid.

Preterite.

Sing. *Craignis*, *craignis*, *craignit*, I feared.
 Plur. *Craignîmes*, *craignîtes*, *craignirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Craindrai*, *craindras*, *craindra*, I shall, or will
 Plur. *Craindrons*, *craindrez*, *craindront*, fear.

Conditional.

Sing. *Craindrois*, *craindrois*, *craindroit*, I should, &c.
 Plur. *Craindrions*, *craindriez*, *craindroient*, fear.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Crains*, *craigne*, fear thou.
 Plur. *Craignons*, *craignez*, *craignent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Craigne,</i>	<i>craignes,</i>	<i>craigne,</i>	that I may fear.
Plur.	<i>Craignons,</i>	<i>craigniez,</i>	<i>craignent,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Craignisse,</i>	<i>craignisses,</i>	<i>craignît,</i>	that I might fear.
Plur.	<i>Craignissions,</i>	<i>craignissiez,</i>	<i>craignissent,</i>	

CROIRE, TO BELIEVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Croire,</i>	to believe.
Part. act.	<i>Croyant,</i>	believing.
Part. pass.	<i>Cru, ue,</i>	believed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Crois,</i>	<i>crois,</i>	<i>croit,</i>	I believe.
Plur.	<i>Croyons,</i>	<i>croyez,</i>	<i>croient,</i>	

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Croyois,</i>	<i>croyois,</i>	<i>croyoit,</i>	I did believe.
Plur.	<i>Croyions,</i>	<i>croyiez,</i>	<i>croyoient,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Crus,</i>	<i>crus,</i>	<i>crut,</i>	I believed.
Plur.	<i>Crûmes,</i>	<i>crûtes,</i>	<i>crurent,</i>	

Future.

Sing.	<i>Croirai,</i>	<i>croiras,</i>	<i>croira,</i>	I shall, or will believe.
Plur.	<i>Croirons,</i>	<i>croirez,</i>	<i>croiront,</i>	

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Croirois,</i>	<i>croirois,</i>	<i>croiroit,</i>	I should, &c. believe.
Plur.	<i>Croirions,</i>	<i>croiriez,</i>	<i>croiroient,</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Crois, croie, believe thou.*
 Plur. *Croyons, croyez, croient,*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que que que
 Sing. *Croie, croies, croie, that I may believe.*
 Plur. *Croyions, croyiez, croient,*

Preterite.

Sing. *Crusse, crusses, crût, that I might believe.*
 Plur. *Crussions, crussiez, crussent,*

CROITRE, TO GROW,

And its compounds.

<i>Accroître, to accrue,</i>		<i>Recroître, to grow again,</i>
<i>Décroître, to decrease, to</i>		
<i>grow less,</i>		

are conjugated like *CONNOITRE*.

CUIRE, TO BAKE, TO BOIL, often Englished by
TO DO,

And its compound *Recuire, to boil again ;**DEDUIRE, TO DEDUCT, TO ABATE,*and *DETRUIRE, TO DESTROY ;*are conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.*DIRE, TO SAY, TO TELL.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Dire, to say.*
 Part. act. *Disant, saying.*
 Part. pass. *Dit, te, said.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Dis, dis, dit*, I say, or am saying.Plur. *Disons, dites,* disent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Disois, disois, disoit*, I did say, or was saying.Plur. *Disions, disiez, disoient*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Dis, dis, dit*, I did say, or said.Plur. *Dîmes, dîtes, dirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Dirai, diras, dira*, I shall, or will say.Plur. *Dirons, direz, diront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Dirois, dirois, diroit*, I should, &c. say.Plur. *Dirions, diriez, diroient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Dis, dise*, say thou.Plur. *Disons, dites,* disent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que*
Dise, dise, dise, that I may say.Plur. *Disions, disiez, dissent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Disse, disses, dît*, that I might say.Plur. *Dissions, dissiez, dissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Contredire</i> , to contradict.	<i>Interdire</i> , to interdict, to
<i>Se dédire</i> , to unsay, to re-	forbid.
tract, to recant.	<i>Prédire</i> , to foretell.

* All the above compounds (*Redire* excepted, which is conjugated like its primitive) make *ises* instead of *ites*; and *Maudire* doubles its *s* through the whole verb; ex. *Nous maudissons, vous maudissez, ils maudissent*, &c.

<i>Médire de</i> , to slander, to speak ill.		<i>Redire</i> , to say, or tell, again.
<i>Maudire</i> , to curse.		

ECLORRE, TO HATCH, TO OPEN, TO COME
TO LIFE.

This verb is seldom used but in the infinitive mood, present tense, and the third persons of the following tenses.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Eclorre*, to open, to hatch, to come to life.
Part. pass. *Eclos, ose*,

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Il éclot.*
Plur. *Ils éclosent.*

Future.

Sing. *Il éclorra.*
Plur. *Ils éclorront.*

Conditional.

Sing. *Il éclorroit.*
Plur. *Ils éclorroient.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Qu'il éclos.*
Plur. *Qu'ils éclosent.*

It is only used when speaking of oviparous animals or of flowers.

The primitive of the above verb is *Clorre*, to shut, to surround, and another compound, *Enclorre*, to shut, to surround, with walls, hedges, or ditches.

ECRIRE, TO WRITE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Ecrire</i> , to write.
Part. act.	<i>Ecrivant</i> , writing.
Part. pass.	<i>Ecrit, ite</i> , written.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Ecris</i> ,	<i>écris</i> ,	<i>écrit</i> , I write, or am writing.
Plur.	<i>Ecrivons</i> ,	<i>écrivez</i> ,	<i>écrivent</i> ,

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Ecrivois</i> ,	<i>écrivais</i> ,	<i>écrivait</i> , I did write, or was
Plur.	<i>Ecrivions</i> ,	<i>écriviez</i> ,	<i>écrivaient</i> , writing.

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Ecrivis</i> ,	<i>écrivis</i> ,	<i>écrivit</i> , I wrote, or did
Plur.	<i>Ecrivîmes</i> ,	<i>écrivîtes</i> ,	<i>écrivirent</i> , write.

Future.

Sing.	<i>Ecrirai</i> ,	<i>écriras</i> ,	<i>écrira</i> , I shall, or will write.
Plur.	<i>Ecrivons</i> ,	<i>écriverez</i> ,	<i>écriront</i> ,

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Ecrirois</i> ,	<i>écrirois</i> ,	<i>écrirait</i> , I should, &c. write.
Plur.	<i>Ecrivions</i> ,	<i>écrivriez</i> ,	<i>écrireroient</i> ,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Ecris</i> ,	<i>écrive</i> , write thou.
Plur.	<i>Ecrivons</i> ,	<i>écrivez</i> , <i>écrivent</i> ,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Ecrive</i> ,	<i>écrives</i> ,	<i>écrive</i> , that I may write.
Plur.	<i>Ecrivions</i> ,	<i>écriviez</i> ,	<i>écrivent</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Ecrivisse</i> ,	<i>écrivisses</i> ,	<i>écrivît</i> , that I might write.
Plur.	<i>Ecrivissions</i> ,	<i>écrivissiez</i> ,	<i>écrivissent</i> ,

The compounds of this verb are,

Décrire, to describe.
Inscrire, to inscribe.
Prescrire, to prescribe.

Proscrire, to proscribe, to
 outlaw, to banish.
Souscrire, to subscribe.
Transcrire, to transcribe.

ENDUIRE, TO DO OVER..

is conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.

ETEINDRE, TO PUT OUT,

is conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

EXCLURE, TO EXCLUDE,

is conjugated like **CONCLURE**.

Its participle passive is *exclus*.

FAIRE, TO MAKE, TO DO.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Faire*, to make.
 Part. act. *Faisant*, making.
 Part. pass. *Fait, te*, made.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Fais, fais, fait*, I make, or am making.
 Plur. *Faisons, faites, font*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Faisois, faisois, faisoit*, I did make, or was making.
 Plur. *Faisions, faisiez, faisoient*, ing.

Preterite.

Sing. *Fis, fis, fit*, I made, or did make.
 Plur. *Fîmes, fîtes, firent*,

Future.

Sing. *Ferai, feras, fera*, I shall, or will make.
 Plur. *Ferons, ferez, feront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Ferois, ferois, feroit*, I should, &c. make.
 Plur. *Ferions, feriez, feroient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Fais, fasse*, make thou.
 Plur. *Faisons, faites, fassent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que *que que*
 Sing. *Fasse, fasses, fasse*, that I may make.
 Plur. *Fassions, fassiez, fassent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Fisses, fisses, fît*, that I might make.
 Plur. *Fissions, fissiez, fissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Contrefaire</i> , to counterfeit, to mimic.	<i>Refaire</i> , to do, or make up again.
<i>Défaire</i> , to undo, to de- feat.	<i>Redéfaire</i> , to undo again.
<i>Se défaire</i> , to get rid of, to part with.	<i>Satisfaire</i> , to satisfy.
	<i>Surfaire</i> , to exact, to ask too much.

FEINDRE, TÓ FEIGN, TO DISSEMBLE, TO
 PRETEND,

is conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

FRIRE, TO FRY.

This verb is more elegantly used in its present infinitive with the verb *faire* conjugated : ex.

Faites *frire ce poisson*, Fry that fish.

Its participle passive is *frit, ite*, fried.

INDUIRE, TO INDUCE,

INSTRUIRE, TO INSTRUCT,

and *INTRODUIRE*, TO INTRODUCE,
are conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.

JOINDRE, TO JOIN,

and its compound, *Enjoindre*, to enjoin,
are conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

LIRE, TO READ.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Lire</i> , to read.
Part. act.	<i>Lisant</i> , reading.
Part. pass.	<i>Lu, ue</i> , read.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Lis</i> ,	<i>lis</i> ,	<i>lit</i> , I read, or am reading.
Plur.	<i>Lisons</i> ,	<i>lisez</i> ,	<i>lisent</i> ,

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Lisois</i> ,	<i>lisois</i> ,	<i>lisoit</i> , I did read, or was reading.
Plur.	<i>Lisions</i> ,	<i>lisiez</i> ,	<i>lisoient</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Lus,</i>	<i>lus,</i>	<i>lut,</i> I did read, or read.
Plur.	<i>Lâmes,</i>	<i>lûtes,</i>	<i>lurent,</i>

Future.

Sing.	<i>Lirai,</i>	<i>liras,</i>	<i>lira,</i> I shall, or will read.
Plur.	<i>Lirons,</i>	<i>lirez,</i>	<i>liront,</i>

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Lirois,</i>	<i>lirois,</i>	<i>liroit,</i> I should, would, &c. read.
Plur.	<i>Lirions,</i>	<i>liriez,</i>	<i>liroient,</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Lis,</i>	<i>lise,</i> read thou.
Plur.	<i>Lisons,</i>	<i>lisez,</i> <i>lisent,</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Lise,</i>	<i>lises,</i>	<i>lise,</i> that I may read.
Plur.	<i>Lisions,</i>	<i>lisiez,</i>	<i>lisent,</i>

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Lusse,</i>	<i>lusses,</i>	<i>lût,</i> that I might read.
Plur.	<i>Lussions,</i>	<i>lussiez,</i>	<i>lussent,</i>

Its compounds are,

Elire, to elect.

Relire, to read again.

LUIRE, TO SHINE,

and its compound *Reluire*, to glitter,
are conjugated like **CONDUIRE** ;

but take no *t* at the end of their participle passive :

ex. *Lui*, shined.

METTRE,* TO PUT.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Mettre</i> , to put.
Part. act.	<i>Mettant</i> , putting.
Part. pass.	<i>Mis</i> , <i>mise</i> , put.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Mets</i> ,	<i>mets</i> ,	<i>met</i> , I put, or am putting.
Plur.	<i>Mettons</i> ,	<i>mettez</i> ,	<i>mettent</i> ,

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Mettois</i> ,	<i>mettois</i> ,	<i>mettoit</i> , I did put, or was put-
Plur.	<i>Mettions</i> ,	<i>mettiez</i> ,	<i>mettoient</i> , ting.

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Mis</i> ,	<i>mis</i> ,	<i>mit</i> , I did put, or put.
Plur.	<i>Mîmes</i> ,	<i>mîtes</i> ,	<i>mirent</i> ,

Future.

Sing.	<i>Mettrai</i> ,	<i>mettras</i> ,	<i>mettra</i> , I shall, or will put.
Plur.	<i>Mettrons</i> ,	<i>mettrez</i> ,	<i>mettront</i> ,

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Mettrois</i> ,	<i>mettrois</i> ,	<i>mettroit</i> , I should, would, &c.
Plur.	<i>Mettrions</i> ,	<i>mettriez</i> ,	<i>mettroient</i> , put.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Mets</i> ,	<i>mette</i> , put thou.
Plur.	<i>Mettons</i> ,	<i>mettez</i> , <i>mettent</i> ,

* *Mettre*, when conjugated as a reflexive verb, expresses the beginning or continuation of an action or application; it is then constantly followed by the participle *à* and an infinitive mood. It is rendered, in English, by the verb *to begin*: ex.

Toutes les fois qu'il la voit, il se met à rire, Every time he sees her, he begins laughing.
Il s'est mis tout de bon à étudier, He has begun to study in earnest.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Mette,</i>	<i>mettes,</i>	<i>mette,</i>	that I may put.
Plur.	<i>Mettions,</i>	<i>mettiez,</i>	<i>mettent,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Misse,</i>	<i>misses,</i>	<i>mît,</i>	that I might put.
Plur.	<i>Missions,</i>	<i>missiez,</i>	<i>missent,</i>	

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Admettre,</i> to admit.	<i>Permettre,</i> to permit.
<i>Commettre,</i> to commit.	<i>Promettre,</i> to promise.*
<i>Compromettre,</i> to compromise.	<i>Remettre,</i> to deliver up, to put back again, to recollect, to put off, to defer.
<i>Démettre,</i> to turn out, to remove.	<i>Soumettre,</i> to submit.
<i>Se démettre de,</i> to resign.	<i>Transmettre,</i> to transmit.
<i>Omettre,</i> to omit.	

MOUDRE, TO GRIND.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Moudre,</i> to grind.
Part. act.	<i>Moulant,</i> grinding.
Part. pass.	<i>Moulu, ue,</i> ground.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Mous,</i>	<i>mous,</i>	<i>mout,</i>	I grind, or am grinding.
Plur.	<i>Moulons,</i>	<i>moulez,</i>	<i>moulent,</i>	

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Moulois,</i>	<i>moulois,</i>	<i>mouloit,</i>	I did grind, or was
Plur.	<i>Moulions,</i>	<i>mouliez,</i>	<i>mouloient,</i>	grinding.

* The participle of this verb (promising), when used adjectively and expressing the mental qualities of somebody, is rendered in French by *qui promet*, or *promettoit beaucoup*, or *dont il y a*, or *avoit beaucoup à espérer* : ex.

<i>Major A. étoit un officier qui promettoit beaucoup, ou dont il y avoit beaucoup à espérer.</i>	<i>Major A. was a very promising officer.</i>
---	---

Preterite.

Sing. *Moulus*, *moulus*, *moulut*, I ground, or did
 Plur. *Moulûmes*, *moulûtes*, *moulurent*, grind.

Future.

Sing. *Moudrai*, *moudras*, *moudra*, I shall, or will grind.
 Plur. *Moudrons*, *moudrez*, *moudront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Moudrois*, *moudrois*, *moudroit*, I should, would,
 Plur. *Moudrions*, *moudriez*, *moudroient*, &c. grind.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Mous*, *moule*, grind thou.
 Plur. *Moulons*, *moulez*, *moulent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Moule</i> ,	<i>moules</i> ,	<i>moule</i> ,	that I may grind.
Plur.	<i>Moulions</i> ,	<i>mouliez</i> ,	<i>moulent</i> ,	

Preterite.

Sing. *Moulusse*, *moulusses*, *moulût*, that I might grind.
 Plur. *Moulussions*, *moulussiez*, *moulussent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

Emoudre, to whet. *Remoudre*, to grind again.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Do not fear to tell her what you think of it. - - I
 de *lui* *penser*, v.
 will speak to her to oblige you, but I know she
 pour, p.
 does not fear me. - - Why do you not believe me? - -

They (are afraid) of being exposed to some dangers.

être, v.

- - We would not believe him, though he should tell
quand, c.

the truth. Why would you not? - - You should not
vérité, f. *devoir*

speak so imprudently before I know not whom,
devant, p.

who slanders every body. - - These flowers would
fleur, f.

grow much better if you watered them oftener. - - -
arroser, v.

Put out the candle, and do not pretend to sleep.
de

- - Were I in town, I would tell them all that
en, p.

I know (about it). - - Say nothing to her, believe
en, pro. *ne rien*

me. - - I will tell it to you to-morrow. - - I esteem
estimer, v.

your daughter much, because she told me sin-
cerely that she would do neither. - - - They who

say all they know, will readily say what they
volontiers, adv.

do not know. - - Tell the truth with modesty: they
who do not love it, will always respect and fear it. - -

If I see your father, shall I tell him you are afraid of
not succeeding? - - - Do you think me capable of

forgetting my friends so soon? No, I do not. - - You
oublier, v.

always contradict me when I speak. - - - It is pru-
dent and humane not to speak ill of any body;

but it is a meanness to speak ill of your bene-
ce, pro. bassesse, f. bien-
 factors. - - We often do good to those who
fauteur, m. souvent, adv. bien, m.
 are not worthy of it, and harm to those who
mal, m.
 do not deserve it. - - Will you tell me, after
mériter, v.
 this, that I am not your friend? - - I hope she
que, c.
 will not tell them what happened to me yester-
 day. - - I was telling it yesterday to several friends of
 mine, and every body began crying. - - I do not
 like Miss D. because she speaks ill of every body.
parceque, c.
 - - Her father has transmitted her all his fortune, but
lui
 not his virtues. - - Sylla proscribed above four
plus de, adv.
 thousand Roman citizens. - - Does Mr. R. write to
citoyen, m.
 you (now and then) from Paris? - - Do you
de tems en tems, adv.
 know his direction? - - Would you not write to him
adresse, f.
 if you knew it? - - We were writing while
pendant que, c.
 they slept. - - If your brother comes here, detain him,
 and tell him that I have something to show him.
à faire voir,
 - - The last time they wrote to him, they desired
prier, v.
 him to send them the invoice of the goods, and he
de leur facture, f.
 has still omitted it in his letter. - - What are you
encore, adv.

doing now ? - - - I am making a cap for your sis-
maintenant,adv.
 ter. - - Do not do that, I will do it myself. - - I would
 do it with all my heart if I could. - - What would
de
 you have done, if you had been in my place ? - -
si,c. *à,p.*
 Why do you not fry that fish ? - - The first time
fois,f.
 you come to see me, I will show you some
 (by the fut.)
 flowers in my garden which will surprise you. - -
 - - Silk-worms generally hatch at the end of the
Soie,f. ver,m.
 spring. - - - These rose-trees grow perceptibly,
printems,m. *rosier,m.* *à vue d'œil,adv.*
 and those tulips would soon open, if it were a
faisoit,v.
 little warmer. - - Though they should deduct ten
chaud,adj. *Quand,c.*
 per cent. they would get still enough.
pour *gagner,v.* *encore,adv.*
 - - I never buy (any thing) at Mr. P***'s; for he
acheter,v. *rien* *car,c.*
 always asks too much for his goods. - - - I will
de *marchandise,f.*
 undo my gown to-morrow, and do it up again imme-
sur-le-
 diately. - - - The first time you mimic any
champ,adv. (by the fut.)
 one, I will punish you severely. - - I would introduce
 your sister to Mrs. F. if I knew her. - - She would
 consent to that, if you would promise her to come
lui de
 here. - - - They were playing while you instructed
 them. - - You truly join what is useful to what is
vraiment,adv.

agreeable. - - Did not our soldiers join dexterity
adresse, f.
to valor? - - If you do not take great care of
prendre, v.
your flowers, the frost will destroy them. - - Mr.
gelée, f.
S. says he will get rid of his horse (at the) begin-
au commence-
ning of next month. - - You would put out the fire, if,
ment, m.
&c. - - Undo that, make it up again before dinner,
avant, p.
and never defer until to-morrow what you can do to-
à, p.
day. - - Your daughter joins to the love of study the
desire of surpassing her companions. - - - Always
compagne, f.
virtuous, still handsome, she makes herself
toujours, adv.
more enemies than friends; but a day will come,
when every body will do her the justice she
que, c. *rendre, v.*
deserves. - - She reads the History of England every
mériter, v.
day from three o'clock till five. - - I will read
heure, f. *jusqu'à, p.*
your letter as soon as I am dressed. - - - The
(by the fut.) habillé, p. p.
inhabitants of W*** have elected Mr. V. W. for
their representative in parliament. - - I was reading
représentant, m.
Marmontel's Tales when you came in. - - Mr.
Comte, m. *entrer, v.*
R. wrote to me some time ago, that when he
was in London, the Earl of E*** told him
Comte, m.
we should soon see a great change in the
changement, m.

ministry. - - He often writes to me, and always con-
ministère, m.

cludes his letters thus : (Be so kind as to) send me
Avoir la bonté de

some news, whatever it may be. - - Put these books in
 their places again. - - I believe he did it through

spite. - - Shall I put another trimming *par, p.* to your
dépit, m. *garniture, f.*

gown ? - - I read last year a very good book, but I
 cannot remember the author's name. - - What

grammar do you read ? - - Whatever merit a master
 has, he cannot succeed in teaching young people
à, p.

if he do not join practice to theory. - - I would put
 all your china in that closet if I had
porcelaine, f. *cabinet, m.*

the key of it. - - You could not do it in ten days, if
en

I did not help you. - - We could not permit him
aider, v.

to go out, though they would. - - Why do not you
de *quand, c.*

abstain from wine, since it hurts you ? - -
puisque, c. *faire mal, v.*

He promised to pay me the tenth of this month,
 but he has now put me off to the third of Decem-

ber. - - He submitted to it with the greatest pa-
se soumettre

tience. - - You promise enough, but you seldom
rarement, adv.

keep your word. - - Mr. D. is a very promising
tenir, v.

young man. - - It is he who told me, that, be-
Ce, pro.

fore the invention of water and wind-mills the ancients used to grind their corn in mortars. - - Will they not admit Mr. Z. in their society? - - No, they told me that they would not. - - The English fleets have performed actions worthy to be transmitted to posterity. - - Your brother promises me every day to amend, but, &c. - - Were I their master, I would not permit them to go out to day. - - I was writing to you when your servant brought me your letter.

NAITRE, TO BE BORN, TO RISE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Naître</i> , to be born.
Part. act.	<i>Naissant</i> , being born, rising.
Part. pass.	<i>Né, ée</i> , been born.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Nais</i> ,	<i>nais</i> ,	<i>nait</i> , I am born.
Plur.	<i>Naissions</i> ,	<i>naissiez</i> ,	<i>naissent</i> ,

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Naissois</i> ,	<i>naissois</i> ,	<i>naissoit</i> , I was born.
Plur.	<i>Naissions</i> ,	<i>naissiez</i> ,	<i>naissoient</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Naquis</i> ,	<i>naquis</i> ,	<i>naquit</i> , I was born.
Plur.	<i>Naquîmes</i> ,	<i>naquîtes</i> ,	<i>naquirent</i> ,

Future.

Sing. *Naîtrai, naîtras, naîtra*, I shall, or will be born.
 Plur. *Naîtrons, naîtrez, naîtront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Naîtrois, naîtrois, naîtroit*, I should, &c. be born.
 Plur. *Naîtrions, naîtriez, naîtroient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Nais, naisse*, be thou born.
 Plur. *Naissons, naissez, naissent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Naisse,</i>	<i>naisses,</i>	<i>naisse,</i>	that I may be born.
Plur.	<i>Naissions,</i>	<i>naissiez,</i>	<i>naissent,</i>	

Præterite.

Sing. *Naquisse, naquisses, naquît*, that I might be born.
 Plur. *Naquissions, naquissiez, naquissent*,

The compound of this verb is,
Renaître, to be born again, to revive.

NUIRE, TO HURT,

is conjugated like *CONDUIRE*, but makes, in its
 participle passive, *nui*.

OINDRE, TO ANOINT.

This verb is seldom used, except in speaking of sacred
 ceremonies wherein oil is made use of. It is conjugated
 like *CRAINdre*.

PAITRE, TO FEED, TO GRAZE,

PAROITRE, TO APPEAR, TO SEEM,

and its compounds,

Comparoître, to appear, to | *Disparoître*, to disappear,
make one's evidence, |

are conjugated like *CONNOITRE*.

PEINDRE, TO PAINT, TO DRAW,

PLAINDRE, TO PITY,

and *Se Plaindre*, to complain,

are conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

PLAIRE, TO PLEASE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Plaire*, to please.

Part. act. *Plaisant*, pleasing.

Part. pass. *Plu*, pleased.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Plais*, *plais*, *plait*, I please.

Plur. *Plaisons*, *plaisez*, *plaisent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Plaisois*, *plaisois*, *plaisoit*, I did please, or was

Plur. *Plaisions*, *plaisiez*, *plaisoient*, pleasing.

Preterite.

Sing. *Plus*, *plus*, *plut*, I pleased, or did please.

Plur. *Plûmes*, *plûtes*, *plurent*,

Future.

Sing. *Plairai*, *plairas*, *plaira*, I shall, or will please.

Plur. *Plairons*, *plairez*, *plairont*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Plairois, plairois, plairoit*, I should, would, &c.
 Plur. *Plairions, plairiez, plairoient*, please.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Plais, plaise*, please thou.
 Plur. *Plaisons, plaisez, plaisent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que *que que*
 Sing. *Plaise, plaies, plaise*, that I may please.
 Plur. *Plaisons, plaisiez, plaisent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Plusse, plusses, plût*, that I might please.
 Plur. *Plussions, plussiez, plussent*,

The compounds of this verb are,
Complaire, to humour. *Déplaire*, to displease.

PRENDRE, TO TAKE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Prendre*, to take.
 Part. act. *Prenant*, taking.
 Part. pass. *Pris, ise*, taken.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Prends, prends, prend*, I take, or am taking.
 Plur. *Prenons, prenez, prennent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Prenois, prenois, prenoit*, I did take, or was tak-
 Plur. *Prenions, preniez, prenoient*, ing.

Preterite.

Sing. *Pris, pris, prit*, I took, or did take.
 Plur. *Prîmes, prîtes, prirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Prendrai, prendras, prendra*, I shall, or will take.
 Plur. *Prendrons, prendrez, prendront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Prendrois, prendrois, prendroit*, I should, would,
 Plur. *Prendrions, prendriez, prendroient*, &c. take.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Prends, prenne*, take thou.
 Plur. *Prenons, prenez, prennent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Prenne,</i>	<i>prennes,</i>	<i>prenne,</i>	that I may take.
Plur.	<i>Prenions,</i>	<i>preniez,</i>	<i>prennent,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing. *Prisse, prisses, prît*, that I might take.
 Plur. *Prissions, prissiez, prissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Apprendre</i> , to learn.	<i>Entreprendre</i> , to under-
<i>des nouvelles,</i>	take.
to hear of.	<i>Méprendre</i> , to mistake, to
<i>Comprendre</i> , to apprehend,	be deceived.
to understand, to in-	<i>Reprendre</i> , to take again,
clude.	to chide, to rebuke.
<i>Désapprendre</i> , to unlearn.	<i>Surprendre</i> , to surprise.

PRODUIRE, TO PRODUCE,

REDUIRE, TO REDUCE, TO BRING TO,
 are conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.

RESTRANDRE, TO RESTRAIN,
 is conjugated like **CRANDRE**.

RIRE, TO LAUGH.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Rire</i> , to laugh.
Part. act.	<i>Riant</i> , laughing.
Part. pass.	<i>Ri</i> , laughed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Ris</i> ,	<i>ris</i> ,	<i>rit</i> , I laugh, or am laughing.
Plur.	<i>Rions</i> ,	<i>riez</i> ,	<i>rient</i> ,

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Riois</i> ,	<i>riois</i> ,	<i>rioit</i> , I laughed, or was laughing.
Plur.	<i>Rions</i> ,	<i>riez</i> ,	<i>rioient</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Ris</i> ,	<i>ris</i> ,	<i>rit</i> , I laughed, or did laugh.
Plur.	<i>Rîmes</i> ,	<i>rîtes</i> ,	<i>rirent</i> ,

Future.

Sing.	<i>Rirai</i> ,	<i>riras</i> ,	<i>rira</i> , I shall, or will laugh.
Plur.	<i>Rirons</i> ,	<i>rirez</i> ,	<i>riront</i> ,

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Rirois</i> ,	<i>rirois</i> ,	<i>riroit</i> , I should, could, &c. laugh.
Plur.	<i>Ririons</i> ,	<i>ririez</i> ,	<i>riroient</i> ,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Ris</i> ,	<i>rie</i> , laugh thou.
Plur.	<i>Rions</i> ,	<i>riez</i> , <i>rient</i> ,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Rie</i> ,	<i>ries</i> ,	<i>rie</i> , that I may laugh.
Plur.	<i>Rions</i> ,	<i>riez</i> ,	<i>rient</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing. *Risse*, *risses*, *rît*, that I might laugh.

Plur. *Rissions*, *rissiez*, *rissent*,

The compound of this verb is,

Sourire, to smile.

SEDUIRE, TO SEDUCE,
is conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.

SUFFIRE, TO SUFFICE, TO BE SUFFICIENT,
is conjugated like *CONFIRE*: but its participle
passive is *suffi*.

SUIVRE, TO FOLLOW.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Suivre*, to follow.

Part. act. *Suivant*, following.

Part. pass. *Suivi*, *ie*, followed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Suis*, *suis*, *suit*, I follow, or am following.

Plur. *Suivons*, *suivez*, *suivent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Suivois*, *suivois*, *suivoit*, I did follow, or was

Plur. *Suivions*, *suiviez*, *suivoient*, following.

Preterite.

Sing. *Suivis*, *suivis*, *suivit*, I followed, or did follow.

Plur. *Suivîmes*, *suivîtes*, *suivirent*,

Future.

Sing. *Suivrai*, *suivras*, *suivra*, I shall, or will follow.

Plur. *Suivrons*, *suivrez*, *suivront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Suivrois, suivrois, suivroit*, I should, &c. follow.

Plur. *Suivrons, suivriez, suivroient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Suis, suive*, follow thou.

Plur. *Suivons, suivez, suivent*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que suive, que suives, que suive*, that I may follow.

Plur. *Suivions, suiviez, suivent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Suivisse, suivisses, suivît*, that I might follow.

Plur. *Suivissions, suivissiez, suivissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

S'Ensuivre, to follow from. *Poursuivre*, to pursue.

Se TAIRE, TO HOLD ONE'S TONGUE,
is conjugated like *PLAIRE*.

TEINDRE, TO DIE,
is conjugated like *CRAINÐRE*.

TRADUIRE, TO TRANSLATE,
is conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.

TRAIRE, TO MILK.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Traire*, to milk.

Part. act. *Trayant*, milking.

Part. pass. *Trait, aite*, milked.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Trais, trais, trait*, I milk, or am milking.Plur. *Trayons, trayez, traient*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Trayois, trayois, trayoit*, I did milk, or wasPlur. *Trayions, trayiez, trayoient*, milking.

Preterite is wanting.

Future.

Sing. *Tairai, tairas, taira*, I shall, or will milk.Plur. *Tairons, trairez, tairont*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Tairois, tirois, tiroit*, I should, &c. milk.Plur. *Tairions, tiriez, tiroient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Trais, traie*, milk thou.Plur. *Trayons, trayez, traient*,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que traie, que traies, que traie*, that I may milk.Plur. *Trayions, trayiez, traient*,

Preterite is wanting.

The compounds of this verb are,

Abstraire, to abstract.*Distraire*, to distract.*Extraire*, to extract.*Rentraire*, to fine draw.*Soustraire*, to subtract.

VAINCRE, TO VANQUISH, TO CONQUER.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Vaincre</i> , to conquer.
Part. act.	<i>Vainquant</i> , conquering.
Part. pass.	<i>Vaincu</i> , <i>ue</i> , conquered.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Vaincs</i> , <i>vaincs</i> , <i>vainc</i> ,* I conquer.
Plur.	<i>Vainquons</i> , <i>vainquez</i> , <i>vainquent</i> ,

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Vainquois</i> , <i>vainquois</i> , <i>vainquoit</i> , I did conquer.
Plur.	<i>Vainquions</i> , <i>vainquiez</i> , <i>vainquoient</i> ,

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Vainquis</i> , <i>vainquis</i> , <i>vainquit</i> , I conquered.
Plur.	<i>Vainquîmes</i> , <i>vainquîtes</i> , <i>vainquirent</i> ,

Future.

Sing.	<i>Vaincrai</i> , <i>vaincras</i> , <i>vaincra</i> , I shall, or will con-
Plur.	<i>Vaincront</i> , <i>vaincrez</i> , <i>vaincront</i> , quer.

Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Vaincrois</i> , <i>vaincrois</i> , <i>vaincroit</i> , I should, &c. con-
Plur.	<i>Vaincristions</i> , <i>vaincristiez</i> , <i>vaincristoient</i> , quer.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Vaincs</i> , <i>vainque</i> , conquer thou.
Plur.	<i>Vainquons</i> , <i>vainquez</i> , <i>vainquent</i> ,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Vainque</i> ,	<i>vainques</i> ,	<i>vainque</i> ,	that I may conquer.
Plur.	<i>Vainquions</i> ,	<i>vainquiez</i> ,	<i>vainquent</i> ,	

* The singular is very little used.

Preterite.

Sing. *Vainquise, vainquisses, vainquît, that I might*
 Plur. *Vainquissions vainquissiez, vainquissent, conquer.*

The compound of this verb is,

Convaincre, to convince.

VIVRE, TO LIVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Vivre, to live.*
 Part. act. *Vivant, living.*
 Part. pass. *Vécu, lived.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Vis, vis, vit, I live, or am living.*
 Plur. *Vivons, vivez, vivent,*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Vivois, vivois, vivoit, I did live, or was living.*
 Plur. *Vivions, viviez, vivoient,*

Preterite.

Sing. *Vécus, vécus, vécut, I lived, or did live.*
 Plur. *Vécûmes, vécûtes, vécurent,*

Future.

Sing. *Vivrai, vivras, vivra, I shall, or will live.*
 Plur. *Vivrons, vivrez, vivront,*

Conditional.

Sing. *Vivrois, vivrois, vivroit, I should, would, &c. live.*
 Plur. *Vivriions, vivriez, vivroient,*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Vis, vive, live thou.*
 Plur. *Vivons, vivez, vivent,*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Vive,</i>	<i>vives,</i>	<i>vive,</i>	that I may live.
Plur.	<i>Vivions,</i>	<i>viviez,</i>	<i>vivent,</i>	

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Vécusse,</i>	<i>vécusses,</i>	<i>vécut,</i>	that I might live.
Plur.	<i>Vécussions,</i>	<i>vécussiez,</i>	<i>vécussent,</i>	

The compounds of this verb are,

Revivre, to revive. *Survivre*, to outlive.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS
AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

My brother was born in Paris, on the eighth of Feb-
ruary, one thousand seven hundred and eighty-one. - -
vrier, m.

The same men who seem not to fear death when
they are in good health, often dread it when
they are sick. - - What does your sister complain of ?
lorsque, adv.
redouter, v.

- - The swallows generally disappear towards the
end of autumn. - - You do not seem to pay any
attention to what I say to you. - - This man paints
hirondelle, f.
automne, f.
faire, v.

very well, I assure you. - - - Why would you
hurt him, he never did you any harm ? - - I should
assurer, v.
faire, v.
mal, m.

pity and succour him if it were not his fault. - - -
ce, pro.

You shall disappear as soon as you have executed my orders, and take care not to speak
(by the fut.)

to any body, for you know that walls have ears.
ayez, v. soin, m. de

- - - The last time I saw your sister she appeared to me thoughtful and melancholy. - - - She

is a lady that pleases every body. - - - She appears quite young : how old is she ? - - - Does she not

'earn drawing ? - - Your brother has not included his
dessein, m.

tailor's bill in the account which he has
tailleur, m. mémoire, m.

given me. - - I see you do not complain of him
rendre, v.

without a cause. - - I really am surprised (at it), but
en, pro.

he always smiles at every thing I tell him. - - As sur-
de

prising as this seems to you, yet it is true. - -
cependant, adv. ce

At last the enemy surprised and defeated them in the
Enfin, adv.

space of twelve days. - - They might, if they would,
espace, m.

have taken the town three days sooner, but the sol-
diers were so exhausted with fatigue, that they
épuisé, p.p. de, p.

could not even hold their guns. - - May these
même, adv.

brave men long enjoy the glory which they have ac-
jouir, de

quired. - - I sincerely wish they may. - - Children sel-
rare-

dom forget, when they continually
ment, adv. lorsque, c. continuellement, adv.

exercise their minds to study. - - If my brother do not
exercer, v.

come this week, as he promised me, if you will, we
 will go and see him in the country. - - Does not

Mrs. H. appear much concerned at her daugh-
affligé, p.p. de
 ter's death? - - When you see Mrs. B. I am
 (by the fut.)
 certain she will please you. - - Did you never see

her? - - The children who shall be born from this

happy marriage, will be the delight of their
délices, f. pl.

father and mother. - - She joins to the qualities of the

body those of the mind. - - Take some pears, and carry

them to your brother. - - Every time I see him, I take

him for a foreigner. - - My sister and I learn French,
étranger, m.

and understand very well all that (is said) to us in that
on dit

language. - - Though you should learn all the rules,
Quand, c.

they would not (be sufficient) without practice. - - I did
suffire, v.

not understand what you said. - - Do not undertake to
de

undecieve her; believe me, you will lose your time.
détromper, v.

- - - Virtue procures and preserves friendship, but
obtenir, v. conserver, v.

vice produces hatred and quarrels. - - If you
vice, m. haine, f. querelle, f.

complain to the master, I will complain to the

mistress. - - Though you should undertake to prove
 the contrary, she would not believe you. - - Why did
 not you take the same road as we? - - He (is not
 pleased) in his situation, now he sees all the dangers
se plaire, v.
 of it. - - He has suffered much, and none of his friends
 have pitied him. - - The idea of his misfortune pur-
idée, f. *malheur, m.*
 sues him every-where. - - When did you hear of him?
par-tout, adv.
 - - - Captain D. told my father that he had seen
 him and spoke to him at Madras. - - - We often
 mistake when we judge of others by ap-
se méprendre, v. *juger, v.*
 pearances; and often a person displeases us by the
 very quality by which another has pleased us.
même, adj.
 - - The people who often seem the most zealous
gens, m. *zélé, adj.*
 are not always the most constant. - - Leave me
Laisser, v.
 that book a little longer, do not take it again. - - -
 That apple-tree produces no fruit. - - We were
pommier, m.
 reduced to the last extremity when they retook
 our ship. - - Go and speak to Mr. —; but above all
 do not laugh. - - Would you not laugh, if you were
sur, p.
 in my place? - - - We laughed much yesterday at
à

the play. - - - She was an agreeable lady, she was
 ever smiling when any body had the honor
toujours,adv.
 of speaking to her. - - He seduced her by his fine
 promises. - - Whatever he may undertake, he never
 will succeed, he is too much addicted to the
adonné,p.p.
 pleasures of this world. - - Young people tell
gens,m.&f.
 what they do, old people what they have done,
vieillard,m.
 and fools what they intend to do. - - - We
sot,m. *se proposer,v.*
 learn much more easily the things which
facilement,adv.
 we understand than those which we do not. - - If we
 go together to my brother's, shall you be able
chez,p.
 to follow us ? - - I will follow you step by step. - - -
pas à pas,adv.
 Why do you follow me as you do ? - - You may set
comme
 out when you please, we will follow you. - - Hold
 your tongue, you do not know what you say. - - -
 What books do you translate ? - - My master says I
 shall soon translate Marmontel's Works. - - We should
 have conquered them if we had fought ; and, believe
 me, you might have done much better, if you had
 followed the advice which he gave you. - - - They

have debated the question a long time without
being able to resolve it. - - They were quite trans-
ported with joy when they heard of the happy
de, p.

news of the peace. - - - Every thing smiles in
nature (at the) return of the spring. - - - As long
dans, p.

au retour, m. *printemps, m.* Tant
as her father and mother live, they never
que, adv. (by the fut.)

will consent to her marriage with Mr. R. - - - You
will not live long if you drink so much. - - She lived

about four years after her husband's death. - -
environ, p. *après, p.*

George III. the eldest son of Frederick, prince of
aîné, adj.

Wales, was born on the fourth of June, 1738, and
Galles, f. *en*

was proclaimed king of Great-Britain on the twenty-
proclamer, v.

sixth of October, 1760. - - - Let a man live in any
country whatever, he is sure to be respected and
de

well treated every where, if his behaviour and

manners are ruled by the principles of a sound
mœurs, f. pl. *régler, v.* *bon, adj.*

policy, and the laws of the country he lives
politique, f.

in.

ou.

OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Verbs which relate to no person or thing, and which, as has been before observed, are only conjugated in the third person singular, are called impersonal verbs: they generally are preceded by one of the following pronouns *il* or *on*: of this number are,

Il tonne, It thunders.

Il pleut, It rains.

On dit, People say, or, it is said, &c.

To which may be added several other verbs, which become impersonal when employed in the same manner: ex.

Il vous convient d'être mo- It becomes you to be mo-
deste, dest.

Il fait beau, froid, &c. It is fine, cold, &c.

Il semble, It seems.

Il s'ensuit que, It follows that.

Il vaut mieux, It is better, &c.

These verbs, like others, whether regular or irregular have their different tenses, and are conjugated in the same manner as the personal verbs from which they are derived. The learner having gone through the other conjugations, the verbs of this class may the more easily be dispensed with. It will only be necessary to select one that is not derived, and show the manner of conjugating it, only premising, that the compound tenses are formed, like others, by joining the participle passive to one of the tenses of the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have.

CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Pleuvoir*, to rain.

Part. act. *Pleuvant*, raining.

Part. pass. *Plu*, rained.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively.

Present. *Il pleut*, it rains, it does rain.

Negatively.

Il ne pleut pas, it does not rain.

Interrogatively.

Pleut-il ? does it rain ?

Ne pleut-il pas ? does it not rain ?

Imperfect. *Il pleuvait*, it rained, it was raining.

Preterite. *Il plut*, it rained.

Future. *Il pleuvra*, it shall, or will rain.

Conditional. *Il pleuvrait*, it would, should, &c. rain.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *Qu'il pleuve*, that it may rain.

Imperfect. *Qu'il plût*, that it might rain.

The following being of the first conjugation, I shall only give the third person, present tense, of the indicative mood : the learner may easily find out the rest.

<i>Il arrive</i> , it happens ;	from	<i>arriver</i> , to happen.
<i>Il bruine</i> , it drizzles ;		<i>bruiner</i> , to drizzle.
<i>Il éclaire</i> , it lightens ;		<i>éclairer</i> , to lighten.
<i>Il gèle</i> , it freezes ;		<i>geler</i> , to freeze.
<i>Il grêle</i> , it hails ;		<i>gréler</i> , to hail.
<i>Il neige</i> , it snows ;		<i>neiger</i> , to snow.
<i>Il tonne</i> , it thunders ;		<i>tonner</i> , to thunder.
<i>Il importe</i> , it matters,		<i>importer</i> , to concern.
it concerns.		

EXERCISES ON THESE VERBS.

Does it rain ? - - It rained just now, but
tout-à-l'heure,adv.
 it does not rain at present. - - - Was it not raining
maintenant,adv.
 when you came ? - - I advise you not to go out
conseiller,v. *de*
 this morning, I think it will soon rain. - - I am
bientôt,adv.
 sure it would rain if the wind was not so high. - -
grand,adj.
 Do you know what happened to my cousin
savoir,v.
 whilst he was in town ? - - I foresaw what
pendant que,c. *prévoir*,
 would happen. - - The roads were very slippery
chemin,m. *glissant*,adj.
 yesterday, because it drizzled the whole day. - - - Did
 you observe how it lightened last
remarquer,v. *comme*,adv.
 night ? - - If it did not freeze I would go to see them
voir,v.
 to-day. - - It hailed this afternoon, and it will
après-midi,m.
 certainly snow to-night. - - It thundered much
beaucoup,adv.
 yesterday, and I think it will still thunder to-
encore,adv.
 day. - - It matters little whether you do your ex-
que (subj.)
 ercise now or later, provided it be well
pourvu que,c. (subj.)
 done. - - It greatly concerns children to
beaucoup,adv. *aux* *de*
 avoid idleness, because it is the parent of all vice
éviter,v. *mère*,f.
 and destroyer of all virtues.
destructrice,f.

The verb *Avoir*, to have, conjugated impersonally with *y*, the adverb of place.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Y avoir, there be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively.

Present. *Il y a*, there is, there are.

Negatively.

Il n'y a pas, there is not, there are not.

Interrogatively.

Y a-t-il ? is there ? are there ?

N'y a-t-il pas ? is there not ? are there not ?

Imperfect. *Il y avoit*, there was, there were.

Preterite. *Il y eut*, there was, there were.

Future. *Il y aura*, there shall, or will be.

Conditional. *Il y auroit*, there should, would, &c. be.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Qu'il y ait, let there be.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *Qu'il y ait*, that there may be.

Imperfect. *Qu'il y eût*, that there might be.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Il y a eu, there has, or have been.

Il y avoit eu, there had been.

Il y eut eu, there had been.

Il y aura eu, there shall, or will have been.

Il y auroit eu, there should, &c. have been.

Qu'il y ait eu, that there may have been.

Qu'il y eût eu, that there might have been.

EXERCISE ON THIS VERB.

There are three ladies who (are waiting for) you
attendre, v.
 in your brother's study. - - Is there any fire in the
cabinet, m.
 parlour? - - No, Sir, there is none. - - There were two
salle, f.
 men below who asked to speak to you. - - Was
en bas, adv. *à*
 there not formerly a (coffee-house) at the
autrefois, adv. *café, m.*
 corner of this street? - - - There were great re-
coin, m. *rue, f.* *ré-*
 joicings in France when peace was proclaimed. - -
jouissance, f. *proclamé, p.p.*
 I was telling you that there will be a grand concert
dire, v.
 and afterwards a ball and supper at the Pantheon,
ensuite, adv.
 in the course of this month. - - There would be
courant, m.
 no harm if you would learn your lesson better. - - -
mal, m. *mieux, adv.*
 Let there be any danger, let there be none, I will
 go back. - - - My brother says that there has
s'en retourner, v.
 been a bloody engagement between an English
sanglant, adj. *combat, m.*
 frigate and a French one, and there have been
frégate, f. *frégate*
 many men killed on both sides. - - There would
de part et d'autre.
 have been a great riot yesterday in the Strand,
émeute, f.
 if the magistrates had not sent so many constables,
connétable, m.
 who dispersed the mob in less than ten minutes.
populace, f.

There is, immediately followed by the negation *no* and a participle active, must be rendered by *on ne peut pas*, *on ne sauroit*, with the participle in the infinitive mood; the other tenses, as *there was*, *there will be*, *there would be*, used as above, and made by the same tenses of the verb *pouvoir* only: ex.

On ne peut pas, or, *on ne sauroit* *sortir* *aujourd'hui à cause de la pluie*,

On ne pouvoit l'appaiser,

On ne pourra pas jouer demain, *mon père est très malade*,

There is no going out to-day because of the rain; that is, one cannot, &c.

There was no pacifying him.

There will be no acting to-morrow, my father is very ill.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

There is (such a deal) of snow that there is no going
tant,adv.
 out of the house. - - You speak so low and so quick
bas,adv. *vîte*,adv.
 that there is no hearing nor understanding what
entendre,v. *comprendre*,v.
 you say. - - My brother runs so fast that there is
vîte,adv.
 no following him. - - There was no walking yesterday
hier,adv.
 in the streets of London on account of the dirt. - - His
à cause,p. *boue*,f.
 arguments were so convincing that there was no re-
ré-
 plying to him. - - There will be no skating in the
pliquer,v. *patiner*,v.
 park to-morrow because it thaws. - - There will be
dégeler,v.
 no going to the play next month, be-
comédie,f. *prochain*,adj. *parce-*
 cause the play-house will be shut. - - There would
que,c. *théâtre*,m.

be no living with you, if you were always in the same
étiez, v. de, f.
 humour. - - If a horse knew his strength, there would
force, f.
 be no mastering him.
dompter, v.

This verb *il y a*, when used to denote a quantity of time, is sometimes rendered in English by *it is, it was, &c.* when the English preposition *since* is rendered (in French) by *que* : but in all cases where the English phrase can be rendered negatively, *que* must be accompanied by the negation *ne* : ex.

<i>Il y a trois semaines que</i>	<i>It is three weeks since</i>
<i>votre père est arrivé,</i>	<i>your father arrived.</i>
<i>Il y a long-tems que je ne</i>	<i>It is a long while since I</i>
<i>vous ai vu,</i>	<i>saw you, or, I have not</i>
	<i>seen you this long</i>
	<i>while.</i>

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

How long is it since we saw (one another) ? It is a
Combien, adv. nous, pro.
 year since I met your brother in Italy, and
rencontrer, v.
 it is six months since I heard of him. - -
entendre parler, v.
 How long is it since you wrote to your mother ? - - -
 It is but two months. - - It was a week since I had
ne que semaine, f.
 seen your brother, when I met him by chance in
par hasard, adv.
 a coffee-room. - - How long was it since your friend
 had left France when he wrote to you ? - - It was
laisser, v.
 three months. - - It may be two years since Mr. Robert

set out for the Indies. - - How long is it since you *partir*, v.

were in England ? - - It is such a long while since I

learned German, that I almost forgot it.

Allemand, m.

It often happens that the verb *there is*, or *it is*, &c. is understood : in this case, one of the words, *ago*, *these*, or *for these*, is expressed as a substitute : ex.

Il y a trois mois que j'é- I was in France three
tois en France, or *j'étois* months ago.
en France il y a trois
mois,*

Il y a quatre ans que mon My brother has been dead
frère est mort, *these* four years.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

He is the same man whom we saw a quarter of an
hour ago. - - When did you see my father ? - - I saw

him (a fortnight ago). - - We have not heard from my
brother *quinze jours* these two years. - - You do not seem to

be so lively as you were three years ago. - - I would
have written to you a month ago, if I had known

your direction. - - - I have not seen your sister these
adresse, f.

* From this instance it may be observed, that, if the verb *il y a*, &c. begin the sentence, the word *que* must immediately follow the noun of number ; but, if it be transposed, *que* must be omitted. The first construction is to be preferred. The learner must at the same time observe, that in the above sentence, the verb, which, in English, is in the *compound of the present*, is rendered in French by the *present* of the indicative, and when in the *preterpluperfect* by the *imperfect* of the same mood.

four months. - - My father has been ill these
malade, adj.
 six weeks. - - He has been in London these five years,
 and (it is said) he there enjoys a considerable em-
on dit, v.
 ployment. - - We have neither seen you nor your
 sisters these three days.

It also happens, that neither the verbs, nor any of the words, *ago*, *these*, or *for these*, are expressed in the sentence : ex.

<i>Il y a neuf ans que ma tante demeure dans ce voisinage,</i>	My aunt has lived nine years in this neighbourhood.
<i>Il n'y a pas plus d'une heure que nous pêchons ici,</i>	We have not been above an hour fishing here.
<i>Il y avoit deux ans que ma sœur étoit en France quand j'y allai,</i>	My sister had been two years in France when I went there.
<i>N'y avoit-il pas six mois qu'elle demeurait avec nous quand elle mourut ?</i>	Had she not lived six months with us when she died ?
<i>Il y aura six ans à Noël que votre frère est chez Mons. O.</i>	Your brother will have been at Mr. O's. six years at Christmas.
<i>N'y aura-t-il pas un an au mois d'Août prochain que votre sœur est à Paris ?</i>	Will not your sister have been a year at Paris next August ?

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Some people have no pity on their poor
gens, pl.
 fellow-creatures. - - Some people *de*
fancy
semblable, *personne*, f. *s'imaginer*, v.

that they can learn a language without
pouvoir, v.
 studying. - - - My brother has been four years at
étudier, v.
 Mr. W's. academy, and my father told him that
 he should stay there two years more. - - I had
rester, v.
 been three years in England when that happened.
arriver, v.
 - - I had not been three months in France, when
 my brother returned from America to London,
 where he fell ill and died. - - - Mr. N. had only
ne que
 learned French seven months when he wrote me
 a letter in that language. - - - Had not Mr. David
 been four years and a half in Spain when his sister
 was married? - - My father and mother had not been
 gone out above a quarter of an hour when
sortir, v. *plus, adv.*
 he arrived. - - - We had been playing at cards
aux carte, f.
 for two hours when you came in. - - Thomas will have
entrer, v.
 been at the college two years the tenth of next
collège, m.
 month.

The verb *être*, to be, becomes impersonal when followed by a substantive, or one of the pronouns *personal*, *possessive*, or *demonstrative*, and is always conjugated with the pronoun demonstrative *ce*, whether speaking of persons or things : ex.

<i>C'est la loi qui l'ordonne,</i>	It is <i>the law</i> that pre- scribes it.
<i>C'est moi qui l'ai fait,</i>	It is <i>I</i> who have done it.
<i>C'est mon bienfaiteur,</i>	It is <i>my benefactor</i> .
<i>C'est eux, or, ce sont eux,</i> <i>qui me l'ont rapporté,</i>	It is <i>they</i> who have related it to me.

From the last instance, it appears that *it is*, &c. followed by a pronoun of the third person plural, may be rendered in French two ways ; but, when *is it*, &c. is used in asking a question, it is generally put in the singular, though the pronoun be in the plural number :
ex.

Est-ce eux qui l'ont fait ? Is it *they* who have done it ?

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

It is prosperity which commonly makes
prospérité, f. *rendre, v.*
men haughty and proud, but it is adversity
orgueilleux, adj.
that makes them wise. - - - It was the custom
coutume, f.
among the Spartans to inure their
parmi, p. *Spartiate, m.* *de endurcir, v.*
children early to the fatigues of war.
de bonne heure, adv. *travail, m.*
- - It is not I who occasioned the quarrel, it is
causer, v. *querelle, f.*
you who began first. - - - It was envy
avez commencé, v. *le* *envie, f.*
which caused the first murder. - - Is it not you who
causer, v. *meurtre, m.*
wrote to Miss A. ? No, it is Miss Rose's sister.
avez écrit, v.
- - If you do not succeed, it will not be my fault.
réussir, v. *faute, f.*
- - If you came to lose the friendship of your
à perdre, v.

parents, it would be the greatest misfortune which
malheur, m.

ever might happen to you. - - It is my friend
jamais, adv. pouvoir, v.

who told me that it was your father whom we saw
dire, v.

yesterday. - - Speak to my brothers, for it is they

who told it me. - - Why do you not accuse

my sisters? It is they who have done all the
Pourquoi, adv.

mischievous. - - You blame my aunts, but is it they
mal, m. blâmer, v. tante, f.

who have offended you?

offenser, v.

He, she, they, immediately followed by *who, whom*,
 or *that*, and *such as*, whether separated in English or
 not, but implying *people* in general, are often made
 into French by the impersonal *c'est*, with an infinitive
 followed by *que de* before a second infinitive, and if
 the sentence be negative, *c'est ne pas* must be used :
 ex.

C'est être fou que de perdre le tems à ces bagatelles, He is a fool who loses his
 time in those trifles.

C'est ne pas goûter les plaisirs de l'amitié que de n'aimer personne, Such as love nobody, do
 not enjoy the pleasures
 of friendship.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

He is a blind man who does not
aveugle, adj.

perceive all the dangers which surround us
environner, v.

in this deceitful world. - - Such as are satis-
trompeur, adj. *con-*

fied with their lot are happy. - - He
tent, adj. de son, pro. sort, m.
 does not know the court who relies
connoître, v. cour, f. se fier, v.
 on the promises which (are made) there. - - They
aux on fait, v.
 are strangers to the charms of society who shun
fuir, v.
 company. - - They are idle who do not know the
savoir, v.
 value of time. - - They obey the commands of God
 who love their neighbours, and do not reproach
voisin, m.
 them with their small defects. - - He is not a Chris-
leur
 tian who seeks to hurt his neighbour and speaks
à prochain, m.
 ill of him on all occasions. - - Such as neglect
dans négliger, v.
 study do not understand their own interests.
propre, adj.

The verb *être*, to be, becomes also impersonal every
 time it is followed by a noun adjective used in a vague
 indeterminate sense, and relates to no particular object ;
 in which case the verb is generally preceded by the pro-
 noun *il* ; and when used to denote the state of the wea-
 ther, it is rendered by the third person singular of the
 verb *faire*, to make or do : ex.

<i>Il est extraordinaire, &c.</i>	It is extraordinary, &c.
<i>Il fait beau tems,</i>	It is fine weather.
<i>Ne fait-il pas chaud ?</i>	Is it not hot ?

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

It is surprising	to see you so lazy and in-
<i>étonnant, adj.</i>	<i>de</i>

attentive after having been punished severe-
après, p. *avoir* *sévère-*
 ly for these faults. - - It is always dangerous
ment, adv.

to (keep company with) people without any prin-
de *fréquent*, v. *aucun prin-*
 ciple of religion. - - Does it rain? No, Sir,
cipe, m. *Monsieur*, m.
 it is fine weather. - - Is it not very cold? - - - It is
froid, m.

neither cold nor hot. - - It is a high wind, and
ne, c. ni, c. ∞ grand, adj.
I think it will soon freeze. - - - It is not so cold as
penser; v.

it was at the beginning of this month. - - Do
commencement, m.
you think (that) it is hotter in Italy than here?

The learner must observe, that the following verb is absolutely impersonal throughout all its tenses, and that nothing is more disagreeable than to hear young people say, *Je faut, vous faut, on faut, &c.* to prevent which, as much as possible, some examples are here set down.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Falloir*, to be needful, requisite, necessary.
Part. pass. *Fallu*, been needful, &c.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively. Singular.

Present. *Il faut que je fasse,* I must do.
Il faut que tu fasses, thou must do.
Il faut qu'il fasse, he must do.
Il faut qu'elle fasse, she must do.

Plural.

Il faut que nous fassions, we must do.
Il faut que vous fassiez, you must do.
Il faut qu'ils, or elles fassent, they must do.

Negatively.

Il ne faut pas que je fasse, I must not do.
Il ne faut pas que vous fassiez, you must not do, &c.

Interrogatively.

Faut-il que je fasse ? must I do ?
Faut-il que vous fassiez ? must you do ?
Ne faut-il pas que je fasse ? must I not do ?
Ne faut-il pas que vous fassiez ? must you not do ?

Imperfect. *Il falloit qu'il écrivit,* it was necessary, &c.
 for him to write.

Preterite. *Il fallut qu'il partît,* he was obliged to set
 out.

Future. *Il faudra qu'il vienne,* he must come, he shall
 be obliged to come.

Condit. *Il faudroit que j'allasse,* I should go, or it
 would be necessary
 for me to go.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *Qu'il faille,* that it may be necessary, &c.

Imperfect. *Qu'il fallût,* that it might be necessary.

As to the compound tenses of this verb, they are formed by adding its participle passive to the third person singular of any of the simple tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have : ex. *Il a fallu, il avoit fallu, &c.*

From the foregoing instances, it is easy to see, that, when the verb *falloir* is used in the present or future tense of the indicative mood, the following verb must be rendered by the present of the subjunctive ; but when it is used in the imperfect, preterite, or conditional present of the indicative, the verb following must be rendered by the preterite of the subjunctive : ex.

Il faut, or il faudra que je fasse, I must do, I shall be obliged
 to do, or, it will be necessary for me to do.

Il falloit, or, il fallut que I was obliged, or, it was
je parlasse, necessary for me to
Il faudroit que je vendisse, I should be obliged to
sell.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

If you go to Coxheath to-day you must
aujourd'hui, adv.
 come back to-morrow. - - - You may go to
revenir, v. pouvoir, v.
 London this morning, but remember that you must
 be back at three o'clock. - - - You must get
de retour se
 up to-morrow morning at four o'clock. - - -
lever, v.
 Custom must not always prevail over reason. - - -
sur, p.
 Shall I be obliged to carry them there? - - -
falloir, v. mener, v.
 Must I not show you my work? - - - You
montrer, v. ouvrage, m.
 must have been well (acquainted with) the places
connoître, v. endroit, m.
 to expose yourself in that manner. - - If he
pour, c. de, p.
 wished to pay his debts, he would be obliged
vouloit, v. dette, f.
 to sell all his property. - - If your brothers had not
bien, m.
 ceased to quarrel, it would have been ne-
cesser, v. de quereller, v.
 cessary* for them to part. - - It is impossible for you
se séparer, v.

* After the words *better, necessary, needful, expedient, good, im-possible, &c.* joined to the verb *to be*, conjugated impersonally, the preposition *for* is to be rendered by *que*, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood, either present or preterite, according to the tense of the preceding verb.

to succeed in that undertaking, all your friends oppose it.
s'opposer, v. y.

The same observation is to be made on the verb *valoir mieux*, to be better, used impersonally; and the adjectives *bon, difficile, impossible, nécessaire, à propos, &c.* joined to the verb *être*, used in the third person singular only: ex.

<i>Il n'est pas bon que vous soyez seul,</i>	It is not good for you to be alone.
<i>Il vaut mieux que vous ayez compagnie,</i>	It is better for you to have company.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

It is difficult for you to improve if you
faire des progrès,
do not apply better to study. - - It was impossible
s'appliquer, v.
for you to have succeeded unless you take
à moins que, c. ne. (by the sub.)
more convenient measures. - - It would be expedient
convenable, adj. à propos
for you to read this book from the beginning
depuis, p.
to the end. - - Believe me, it is better
jusqu'à, p. fin, f. valoir mieux, v.
for you to go there to-morrow, for it will snow
car, c.
soon. - - Will it not be better for me to be at
bientôt, adv.
school too soon than too late? - - Would it not
tôt, adv. tard, adv.
be better for him to go and speak to them himself,
ou
than to send his servant? - - It is good for us
de domestique, m. & f.
to help one another in our troubles.
s'aider, v. peine, f.

The above verb *falloir*, being used before the verb *to have*, followed immediately by a noun substantive, may be rendered without expressing the auxiliary verb; instead of which, insert one of the following pronouns, *me, te, lui, nous, vous, or leur*, according to the number and person: ex.

<i>Il me faut des livres,</i>	I must <i>have</i> , or, I want books.
<i>Il lui faut un chapeau,</i>	He must <i>have</i> , or, he wants a hat.
<i>Il lui faut un bonnet,</i>	She must <i>have</i> , or, she wants a cap.

N. B. If the verb *to have* be expressed in French, it must be rendered by the subjunctive mood: ex.

<i>Il faut que j'aie des livres,</i>	I must <i>have</i> , or, I want books.
--------------------------------------	--

This method, however, is not so elegant as the former.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

I shall want paper, pens, and ink. - - What do
falloir, v.
 you want? - - I want nothing (for the) present, but I
à
 think I shall soon want a French grammar. - -
penser, v.
 My brother has an old hat, and he will soon
vieux, adj.
 want a new one. - - If you like to
nouveau, adj. ∞ *aimez, v. à*
 speak much, you must have (a good deal) of
bien, adv.
 circumspection not to (speak ill) of others. - -
retenue, f. pour ne pas médire, v.
 Since I cannot find my book, I must have
Puisque, c.
 another. - - If we wish to succeed in our under-
vouloir, v.

taking, we must have (a great deal) of patience. . . .
beaucoup, adv.
 My brothers have lost their buckles, they must have
boucle, f.
 others.

Before the conclusion of this section, it will be proper to say something about the pronoun general *on*, which commonly precedes a verb used impersonally (viz. in the third person singular) in French, and in English is made by a passive voice : ex.

<i>On m'a permis de chanter,</i>	I have been allowed to sing.
<i>On lui a défendu de sortir,</i>	He has been forbidden to go out.

In this case, the verb which, in English, is in the passive voice, must, in French, be turned into the active, when the English nominative becomes the regimen of the verb in French, the sentence beginning with *on*, and translated as if the English were, *one* has allowed me to sing, *one* has forbidden him to go out.

It is the same with,

<i>On dit,</i>	It is said, or people say.
<i>On me dit,</i>	I am told.
<i>On dit à votre frère,</i>	Your brother is told.
<i>On disoit, }</i>	It was said, or people said,
<i>On dit, }</i>	or were saying.
<i>On dira,</i>	It will be said, or people will say.
<i>On dira à nos enfans,</i>	Our children will be told.
<i>On a dit,</i>	It has been said, or people have said.
<i>On nous a dit,</i>	We have been told.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

In time of war, peace is always spoken of. - - -

En, p.

Where is your brother? it is not known; for, we
savoir, v.

have not heard of him these two years. - - -

The death of the invincible admiral Lord Nelson
mort, f.

is daily lamented, and will be
tous les jours, adv. regretter, v.

so a long time. - - - I was told yesterday that

your brother has been punished for his idleness;

had your father been told of it, he would have been

very angry with him. - - As soon as your
contre, p. Aussitôt que, c.

book is printed, people will be eager in
imprimer, v. s'empresser, v. de, p.

buying it, and it will be read with avidity. - - Learned

men are found in villages, as well as in large
grand, adj.

towns. - - It is reported on all sides that we shall
de côté, m.

soon have peace, but the news has not yet been

received, though it be ardently (wished for),
ardemment, adv. souhaiter, v.

however, it is thought that the secret expedition

will sail in a few days. - - It was as-
mettre à la voile.

serted that you were lazy. - - It will be believed that you

blame me. - - It would not be supposed that you praise

us. - - I have been assured that he has threatened him.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE ON THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

There is no going out to-day, it rains apace. - - -
à verse, adv.

Do not make so much noise, there is no hearing
s'entendre, v.
 one another. - - Is it cold this morning? Yes, Sir, it
is *is*
 is very cold; however, I am told it is not so cold as
 it was yesterday. - - The weather is very inconstant
 in this country, it was very hot yesterday, it is
pays, m.
 excessively cold to-day: it did freeze this morning,
très, adv.
 it hailed at noon, it rained in the afternoon, and
midi, m. *is* *après-midi,*
 now it drizzles. - - It sometimes lightens when it
quelquefois, adv.
 does not thunder, but as often as it thun-
toutes les fois, c.
 ders, it lightens. - - If it be fine weather next week,
 I shall go to London, but if it be bad weather I
 shall stay at home. - - It is a pleasure to see
rester, v. au logis. *de*
 bees (coming out) of their hives when it is
abeille, f. sortir, v. ruche, f.
 a sunny day. - - Had I known you were returned
soleil is *revenir, v.*
 from the continent, I would have gone to see you
 long ago. - - My father and mother were told you
 were in England ten years ago, but you neither saw
 nor wrote to them. - - Every body agrees there
convenir, v.

More fine women in Great-Britain, but there is not
 such good wine as in France. - - It greatly
si *beaucoup, adv.*
 concerns children to avoid bad company. - -
aux *de éviter, v.*

If there were any real virtue in the world, should
 we (meet with) so many false friends? - - If he
trouver, v.

behaved well, there would not be a man
se comporter, v.

(in the world) that I should esteem more. - - No
au monde,

object is more pleasing to the eye than the sight of
plaire, v. *vue, f.*

a man whom you have obliged, nor (is) any music
 so agreeable to the ear as the voice of a man
oreille, f.

who owns you for his benefactor. - - It is a
reconnoître, v.

sad thing to see unfortunate people and be
de *malheureux, adj.*

unable to relieve them. - - Such as support the
secourir, v. *encourager, v.*

conduct of idle and obstinate scholars, make them-
 selves contemptible. - - They are not acquainted with
méprisable, adj.

the human heart, who rely upon the vain
faire fond, v.

promises of men. - - You have already been told
déjà, adv.

that nobody in the world has prepossessed me

against you, how many times must I repeat
contre, p. *combien, adv.*

it to you? - - I was told yesterday that you were very

ill, and I am truly glad to see you so well. - - -

de

bien portant.

There is no persuading you when you have a mind
envie, f.

not to believe what you are told. - - - More virtue is
 requisite to support good fortune than bad. - -

pour, p.

Much art and nicety are requisite to
délicatesse, f.

pour, p.

please every body. - - It matters little whether it be
 my servant or yours who carries the letter to the
porter, v.

post. - - You must honour your father and mother if
pôte, f.

you will live long and happy. - - It is more glo-
vouloir, v.

rious to conquer one's passions than to conquer
de vaincre, v.

conquérir, v.

the whole world. - - Sir, I want a pair of boots,
entier, adj.

have you any in your shop that will suit
boutique, f.

convenir, v.

me? - - It is reported that the Russians have beaten
Russe, m.

the Turks; it is said so, but it is not yet known for
Turc, m.

certain. - - It is thought Sweden has declared war
Suède, f.

against France. - - It is true; but it is much
à

vrai, adj.

feared lest the Swedes should be
craindre, v.

beaten, though they fight most courageously.
que, c.

Suédois, (by the pre. subj.)

se battre, v.

- - - Have the letters been received which were
 expected yesterday? No, but the mail is ar-
attendre, v.

malle, f.

riyed, and they will be delivered this morning.

SECT. V.

OF PARTICIPLES.

Participles are either active or passive. The *participle active*, in French, always ends in *ant* : ex. *parlant* ; *punissant*, and in English in *ing* : ex. *speaking*, *punishing*, &c. It is always, in its own nature, indeclinable : ex.

Je vois des hommes et des femmes venant à nous, I see men and women coming to us.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

The persons whom you saw with us are people ^{*gens, pl.*} fearing God and loving virtue. - - - She met your father and sister (as she was) coming here. - - My ^{*en*} mother was told (the day before yesterday) that ^{*ici, adv.*} your sister, remembering the injuries she had ^{*avant-hier, adv.*} received from your brother, refused to ^{*se ressouvenir, v. des*} see him, and we are all glad to hear ^{*reçues, p.p. de la part de,*} it. - - - ^{*de*} Your aunt, having given the necessary orders to your cousins, set out immediately for London. - - - Did ^{*partir, v.*} you not see them coming to us ? - - How many ^{*vers, p.*} lowing oxen, bleating sheep, neighing ^{*mugir, v. bœuf, m. bêler, v. brebis, f. pl. hennir, v.*} horses I hear afar off ! - - Do you not admire these ^{*de loin, adv.*}

skipping lambs in your father-in-law's meadow ?
bondir, v. agneau, m. prairie, f.

- - Do you see the flocks languishing with
troupeau, m. languir, v. de, p.
 thirst, and drinking (on the) margin of this limpid
au bord, m.

brook ?

ruisseau, m.

When the participle active is preceded by another verb, an article, or a preposition, it must be rendered in French by the verb in the infinitive mood, and it is sometimes used as a substantive : ex.

Faut-il que je parte sans lui parler ? Must I set out without speaking to him ?

La pauvreté du corps est la richesse de l'âme, The impoverishing of the body is the enriching of the soul.

N. B. There are some active participles which, by use, have been converted into substantives or adjectives, as *médisant*, slanderer, *ignorant*, ignorant, &c. which are declinable.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

I assure you there is a great deal of pleasure in
à, p.
 teaching diligent scholars. - - We are told there
enseigner, v.
 will not be so much danger in travelling, as there
voyager, v. que
 was before. - - - There is a real advantage in
auparavant, adv.
 being learned, but science must not create
savant, adj. inspirer, v.
 pride. - - Lewis the Great had especially the su-
surtout, adv.
 perior and rare talents of knowing and choosing men
 of merit. - - He left the house without seeing his

father, and even without speaking to his mother.
même, adv.
 - - He was hanged for robbing Mr. D. - - I should
pendre, v.
 despise a man who is capable of deceiving
mépriser, v. *tromper, v.*
 his friends. - - After having (waited for) her a long
attendre, v.
 while, she (sent me word) that she was not ready
envoyer dire, v. *prêt, adj.*
 to go out. - - She spends all her time in reading or
à passer, v.
 writing. - - My mother takes an infinite pleasure in
 admiring the situation of your house. - - The grace
situation, f.
 of God will always keep us from sinning. - -
empêcher, v. *pécher, v.*
 I often admire the rising and setting of the sun. - - -
soleil, m.
 The defending of a bad cause is worse than
défense mauvais, adj.
 the cause itself.
même.

The participle passive is sometimes declinable, and sometimes indeclinable.

It is declinable,

First, when it is joined to the verb *être*, to be, forming a passive verb, and agrees with the nominative case of the verb in gender and number; and after the verbs *paraître*, *naître*, &c. : ex.

Mon frère est aimé,
Ma sœur est aimée,
Mes cousins sont partis,
Mes cousines sont parties,
Elle paroît affligée,
Elles paroissent affligées,

My brother is loved.
 My sister is loved.
 My cousins are gone.
 My cousins are gone.
 She appears afflicted.
 They appear afflicted.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

I have been told your brother-in-law is gone to
beau-frère, m.
 the Continent ; have I been told the truth ? - - I have
 not seen your mother since she arrived
depuis que, c.
 from France ; does she appear satisfied with her
de
 journey ? - - My brothers are gone to Dover, and
voyage, m.
 intend to pay you a visit when
se proposer, v. de rendre, v.
 they are come back. - - The houses which are
 (by the fut.) *revenir, v.*
 built in the winter are not so wholesome as those
sain, adj.
 which are begun (in the) spring and finished in the
au
 middle of summer. - - The wicked are always tor-
méchant, adj. bour-
 mented, and the righteous are comforted by their
reler, v. juste, adj. consoler, v.
 own conscience. - - Virtuous people are esteemed
personne, f.
 and respected by those who are so, and even
même, adv.
 by the wicked. - - - I assure you that Mr. Brown's
 wife appears much afflicted at the death of
femme, f.
 her husband, but her sons appear as much affect-
mari, m.
 ed by it as she. - - Children (are born) poor and
naître, v.
 helpless, and sometimes they die very young.
foible, adj. mourir, v.

Secondly, when it is joined to the verb *avoir*, or *être*, forming the compound tenses of an active or reflected verb, immediately preceded by a *pronoun* which it governs in the *accusative case* ; it must then agree with the gender and number of the substantive to which that pronoun refers : ex.

<i>J'ai parlé à votre frère et</i>	I spoke to your brother
<i>l'ai prié de venir nous</i>	and desired him to
<i>voir,</i>	come to see us.
<i>J'ai vu Madame Wright et</i>	I saw Mrs. Wright and
<i>l'ai entendue chanter,</i>	heard her sing.
<i>J'ai lu tous les livres que</i>	I have read all the books
<i>vous m'avez prêtés,</i>	which you lent me.
<i>Avez-vous vu les marchan-</i>	Did you see the goods
<i>dises que j'ai reçues ?</i>	which I have received ?
<i>Vous l'avez souvent priée</i>	You often desired her to
<i>de passer chez vous,</i>	call at your house.
<i>Elles se sont repenties de</i>	They have repented of
<i>leurs fautes,</i>	their faults.

In the above instances the pronouns are governed by the verbs *avoir* or *être*, and the participle passive.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

I spoke to your brother this morning, and
ai parlé, v.
 desired him to come and dine with us to-morrow. - - -

The resolution which she has taken of going into
à
 the country surprises me very much ; I have spoken
étonner, v.

to her myself, but I have not been able to learn
pouvoir, v.
 the reasons which have induced her to it. - - Miss
engager, v.

Farren was an excellent actress, I have seen her
actrice, f.

play several times. - - I am very sorry for the
trouble that affair has given to your aunt. - - If you
fâché, adj. de
peine, f.
can come with me, I will show you the lady
montrer, v.
whom I have heard sing. - - What stuff have
entendre, v. *étouffe*, f.
you chosen? - - The letter which you have written to
choisi, p.p.
me in French was tolerably well; I have shown
passablement, adv.
it to your aunt, who is much pleased
très, adv. *content*, adj.
(with it). - - I have not yet received the goods,
en, pro. *marchandise*, f.
which you sent me by the ship Good-
vaisseau, m.
Will. - - Ladies, have you returned him the letters
rendre, v.
which he had desired you to read? - - Where
prier, v. *Où*, adv.
did you buy those gloves? - - - I bought
acheter, v.
them in France. - - Alexander conquered Asia with
the troops which his father Philip had disciplined.
troupe, f.
- - The faults which he had committed, greatly
beaucoup, adv.
increased his prudence. - - He has spent all the
augmenter, v.
treasures which his father had amassed with so much
trésor, m.
care and labour. - - I shall never forget the good
oublier, v.
services which you have done to my mother.
service, m. *rendre*, v.
- - Of all the letters which my brother has received

to-day, there is not one (of them) for
aujourd'hui, adv.

me. - - The reasons, which you have given us, have

satisfied us. - - What books have you lost? - - The
satisfaire, v.

fine actions your brothers have done in
beau, adj. *faire*, v.

America deserve great praises, and ought to be
mériter, v. *louange*, f. *devoir*, v.

transmitted to posterity. - - The three country

houses, which your father is said to have bought,
maison, f.

are extremely fine and well situated. - - The
situé, p.p.

soldiers, whom they obliged to set out, are
soldat, m. *à*

come back already. - - My sisters have
revenir, v.

quarrelled the whole day, and are now reconciled.
se quereller, v.

The participle passive is indeclinable in the follow-
 ing cases ;

First, when the contrary to the above rule happens ;
 that is, when the pronoun, though preceding the parti-
 ciple passive, is governed by another verb : ex.

Plusieurs personnes se Several persons came to
sont présentées à la the door, the sentinel
porte, la sentinelle les let them pass.
a laissé passer,

C'est une belle chanson, It is a fine song, I have
je l'ai entendu chanter heard it sung many a
plusieurs fois, time.

J'y suis allé avec elle et I went there with her,
l'ai vu peindre, and saw her picture
 drawn.

La langue que j'ai com- The language I have be-
mencé d'apprendre est gun to learn is very
fort utile, useful.

In the above instances the pronouns are not governed by the participle passive, but by the verbs *passer*, *chanter*, *peindre*, and *apprendre*.

EXERCISES ON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULE.

I cannot forget the good actions, which I have seen
you do. - - The goods which you ordered me to
send, are arrived ; permit me to show you the letters
which we have received from Germany. - - The
fable which I gave you to translate is not difficult.
- - Have you already read the books, which I saw you
buying ? - - Not yet, for I have sent them to my
sister, who is in the country. - - - I have bought the
clothes for which you saw me bargaining. - - The
history which I have begun to read is not enter-
taining. - - She has written more books than you ever
have read. - - The lady whom I saw singing is hand-
some and young, but the song which I have heard
sung is the best, as to words and music, that
your brother ever wrote. - - Miss B. has spent

two or three days with your sisters, and saw their (picture drawn); their cousins were in the next *peindre, v.* room, and my sister saw them painting in minia- *en, p.* ture.

Secondly, when it is immediately followed by a noun (either substantive or adjective) in the accusative case, or by another participle passive, though it should be preceded by a pronoun : ex.

<i>Ma sœur s'est cassé le bras,</i>	<i>My sister broke her arm.</i>
<i>Les Anglois se sont rendus fameux dans cette guerre,</i>	<i>The English made themselves famous in this war.</i>
<i>Les Espagnols se sont trouvés obligés de lever le siège,</i>	<i>The Spaniards found themselves obliged to raise the siege.</i>

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Your sister has rendered herself celebrated by *célèbre, adj.* her wit and beauty. - - My mother has bought *esprit, m.* herself a fine gown, my sister had made *acheter, v.* herself a good cloak, and my brothers had built *faire, v.* themselves an elegant house. - - - They found *mantelet, m.* themselves surrounded by soldiers, who carried *bâtir, v.* them to prison, where they have been detained *conduire, v.* for *en, p.* eight days; but they have been found *retenir, v.* *pendant, p.*

innocent of the crime with which they were ac-
 cused, and at last (acquitted). - - - The city
 of Liverpool has rendered itself flourishing by its
 trade. - - Did you hear the new song ?
commerce, m. entendre chanter
 Yes, I did.

Lastly, when the auxiliary verb and the parti-
 ciple passive are used impersonally. *Dû* (when not
 signifying owed), *pu*, and *voulu*, are also indeclinable :
 ex.

<i>Les pluies qu'il a fait,</i>	The rains which we have had.
<i>Je vous ai montré la re- connoissance que j'ai dû,</i>	I have shown you the gra- titude I ought.
<i>Ma sœur a fait tout ce qu'elle a pu,</i>	My sister has done every thing she could.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

The storm, which we had yesterday, has
 done (a great deal) of damage to our
causer, v. beaucoup, adv. dommage, m.
 ships. - - The abundant showers which we have
 had this week, have prevented me from going
pluie, f. empêcher, v.
 into the country. - - The high wind which
grand, adj. vent, m.
 they have had in the county of Kent, has (blown
comté, m. renver-
 down) many houses and trees. - - At last he has
ser, v. Enfin, adv.

returned me all the sums which I had lent to
rendre, v. *somme, f.*
 him, and which he had owed me so long. - - I
devoir, v.
 have not paid all the attention which I ought to
faire, v.
 the advice your father gave me. - - She has ob-
avis, m. *ob-*
 tained from the king all the favours she would.
tenir, v. *grâce, f.*
 - - My brother might have improved more,
faire des progrès
 but he has not made all the efforts he could. - - The
effort, m.
 excessive heat that (we have had) this summer,
chaleur, pl. *il a fait, p. p.*
 has caused many diseases.
ont, v.

In order to illustrate in a single example the application of the above rules about participles passive, we must write,

<p> <i>J'ai reçu les lettres que</i> <i>vous m'avez écrites au</i> <i>sujet de l'affaire, que je</i> <i>vous avois proposée : et</i> <i>après les avoir lues avec</i> <i>attention, j'ai reconnu,</i> <i>comme vous, que, si je</i> <i>l'avois entreprise, j'y</i> <i>aurois trouvé des ob-</i> <i>stacles que je n'avois pas</i> <i>prévus,</i> </p>	<p> <i>I have received the letters,</i> <i>which you wrote to me</i> <i>with respect to the affair</i> <i>which I had proposed to</i> <i>you : and after having</i> <i>read them with attention,</i> <i>I perceived, as you did,</i> <i>that, if I had undertaken</i> <i>it, I should have met with</i> <i>obstacles, which I had</i> <i>not foreseen.</i> </p>
---	---

In this period, *reçu* is indeclinable, because it is not preceded by any regimen ; *écrites* is declinable, and agrees in gender and number with its absolute regimen, or accusative, expressed by the pronoun relative *que*, which precedes the verb and relates to *letters* ; *proposée* likewise agrees with *que*, by which it is pre-

ceded, and which relates to the word *affaire* ; *lues* is declinable on account of its regimen *les*, which precedes it and relates to *letters* ; *reconnu* is indeclinable, because it is not preceded by any regimen to which it can relate ; *entreprise*, on the contrary, is declinable, and takes the gender and number of the conjunctive pronoun *l'*, which is its absolute regimen and its antecedent, relating to *affaire* ; *trouvé* is indeclinable, because it is not preceded but followed by its absolute regimen *obstacles* : *prévus*, on the contrary, is declinable, because it is preceded by its absolute regimen *que*, which relates to *obstacles*.

If custom, in any case, has deviated from the preceding rules, it is sufficient to observe, that they have the sanction of the best authors. A little practice will soon remove many of these apparent difficulties.

SECT. VI.

INDECLINABLE PARTS OF SPEECH.

Under this head are comprehended *adverbs*, *prepositions*, *conjunctions*, and *interjections*.

OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs have been distinguished, according to their several significations, into *adverbs of place*, *time*, *quality*, *quantity*, *number*, *order*, *affirmation*, *negation*, *doubt*, *interrogation*, *comparison*, *collection*, *separation*, &c. But this classification, however ingenious, is far from being exact : it was therefore judged, that, if those of the most frequent use, and which, when compounded, form a particular idiom, were carefully selected, and arranged in an alphabetical series, it would be more to the advantage of the learner.

TABLE OF ADVERBS.

Abondamment, abundantly, plentifully.

à l'Abandon, at random, in confusion, in disorder.

D'Abord, at first, immediately.

Absolument, absolutely.

D'Accord, grant it, done.

Agréablement, pleasantly, comfortably.

Ainsi (de même), so, thus, in the same manner.

Aisément, easily.

Mal aisément, with difficulty.

Dans un an d'ici, a year hence.

L'année qui vient, the next year.

Anciennement,
Autrefois, } formerly, anciently.

En ami, friendly.

à l'amiable, amicably.

En arrière, *Tomber en arrière*, to fall backward.

à reculons, *Marcher à reculons*, to walk backward.

Assez, enough.

Assurément, certainly.

Aujourd'hui, to-day.

Time to { *D'aujourd'hui en huit*, this day se'nnight.

come. { *D'aujourd'hui en quinze*, this day fortnight.

Time { *Il y a aujourd'hui huit jours*, this day week, this
 day se'nnight.

past. { *Il y a aujourd'hui quinze jours*, this day fortnight.

{ *Il y a aujourd'hui un an*, this day twelve months.

Autant, As much, as many.

D'autant plus, so much the more.

D'autant moins, so much the less.

Tout autant,
Tout aussi, } just as, just as much, every whit.

Dorénavant, in future.

à l'avenir, for the future, hereafter.

à l'Angloise, after the English manner, fashion, or way.

à l'Italienne, after the Italian, &c.

à la Française, after the French, &c.

à la Turque, after the Turkish, &c.

EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

Our garden produces all kinds of fruits *plentifully*. - - Your sister left ^{*sorte, f.*} all her things in *disorder*. - - You did not know me at first. - - He would ^{*vouloir, v.*} *absolutely* do it. - - If you please, I will go to ^{*vouloir, v.*} London with you. *Done*. - - I hope we shall spend ^{*passer, v.*} the day *pleasantly*. - - Have we not spent it *so*? - - - My brother learns his lessons *easily*, and I *with difficulty*. - - *A year hence* you will (be able) to speak French tolerably well. - - My father says I shall go to *France *next year*. - - - It was done so *an- ciently*. - - I had the honour of seeing you *formerly*, but I do not recollect where I had that pleasure : ^{*se rappeler, v.*} I believe it was at Mr. P's. who received us so *friendly*. - - Your brother and mine have settled ^{*régler, v.*} their affairs *amicably*. - - Make two steps ^{*pas, m.*} *back- ward*. - - He cannot see his way who walks *back- ward*. - - Have you played *enough*? - - *Certainly* you must be tired. - - We do not expect him ^{*devoir, v.*}

* See the article indefinite, page 41.

to-day. - - If it be fine weather, I shall be back
this day se'nnight. - - I shall see you *this day fortnight*
 if I am well. - - *This day week* I was (at your house).
 - - *This day month* I met your brother. - - I came
 here *this day twelve months.* - - He has *as*
ici,adv.
much money and *as many* friends as you. - - I was
so much the more persuaded of what you told me,
 that I dismissed him *this day* three weeks. - -
renvoyer,v.
 I will do it *so much the less*, as I promised him not
 to meddle with that affair. - - My sister has
de se mêler,v. de,p.
just as much wit, and is *just as* amiable as yours. - -
 Your son has given you some trouble, but I
 hope he will give you pleasure *hereafter.* - - If you
 forgive him this time, he will not do it *for the*
future. - - *In future*, I never will trust him
 any more. - - She dresses *after the English*
s'habiller,v.
fashion, but she lives *after the French way.* - - She
 plays *after the Italian manner.* - - Your sister has a
 cap *after the Turkish fashion.* - - Come here,
bonnet,m.
 go there, look every where.
chercher,v.

ADVERBS.

Bas, } off, down, down with, below.
à, or en bas, }

En badinant, for fun.

Beaucoup, } much, many, a great deal.
Bien, }

à beaucoup près, nothing near.

De beaucoup, by much, greatly.

Bien, well, very.

De bon cœur, heartily, with a good will.

De bonne foi, } sincerely.
Sincèrement, }

De bonne heure, betimes.

De bon jeu, fairly.

De bon matin, early.

De bouche, by word of mouth.

à la bonne heure, in good time, luckily, well and good.

à bon droit, deservedly.

à bon marché, cheap.

à bride abattue, full speed.

çà et là, to and fro.

à cause de quoi, on what account.

à cela près, that excepted.

Cependant, in the meanwhile, nevertheless.

à cheval, on horseback.

EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

Hats off, gentlemen, and sit down. - - The whole
 army surrendered and laid down their arms
mettre, v.

upon the ramparts of the citadel. - - There is a man
below, whom you will see with pleasure. - - Though
Quoique, c.

we said it for fun, he was very angry with us. - -
contre, p.

There were many ladies, and we had a great deal of
 pleasure. - - You may say what you please,
pouvoir, v. *il vous plaira, v.*

but she is *nothing near* so handsome as her sister. - - He has *by much* increased his fortune. - - -

Whatever you do, do it well. - - If you do not do it *with a good will*, I will do it myself. - - He has acted very *sincerely* in that business. - - Do you speak *sincerely*?

- - We will get up *betimes*. - - Have I not won *se lever, v.* *gagner, v.* fairly? - - We will set out *early*, that we may arrive

before the heat *chaleur, f.* of the day. - - It (is *valoir* better) to tell it him *by word of mouth*, than to *mieux, v.* write to him. - - Sir, I have done my exercise. - - Well

and good. - - He has obtained it *deservedly*. - - My *obtenir, v.* father has bought a horse *very cheap*. - - Do you see

those two horsemen, who come to us *full speed*? - - - *cavalier, m.*

They wandered *to and fro* without knowing whither to go. - - On *what account* is he angry with me?

- - That *excepted*, I have nothing to reproach *à reprocher, v.* him *lui* with. - - I should speak, but, *in the meanwhile*, I *devoir, v.*

(hold my tongue). - - Miss White is very handsome, *se taire, v.* nevertheless, I do not love her. - - - Some went

to London in a coach, others on horseback. *en, p.* *à*

ADVERBS.

Combien, How much, how many, how ?

<i>Combien y a-t-il que,</i>	} how long ?
<i>Combien de tems y a-t-il que,</i>	
<i>Combien y avoit-il que,</i>	
<i>Depuis quand,</i>	
<i>Combien de tems,</i>	
<i>Pendant combien de tems,</i>	

N. B. 1. *How much, how many, how,* are rendered in French by *que* before an admiration : ex.

Que vous êtes jolie !

How pretty you are !

2. We make use of *combien y a-t-il que*, when the action mentioned in the interrogation has not yet ceased ; and then the verb, which (in English) is in the compound of the present, must be rendered (in French) by the present of the indicative mood : ex.

<i>Combien y a-t-il que vous</i>	How long have you been
<i>êtes, or, depuis quand</i>	in London ?
<i>êtes-vous à Londres ?</i>	

3. If the verb (in English) be in the compound of the imperfect, it is to be rendered (in French) by the imperfect of the indicative : ex.

<i>Combien y avoit-il que vous</i>	How long had you been
<i>étiez, or, depuis quand</i>	in London, when he
<i>étiez-vous à Londres</i>	died ?
<i>quand il mourut ?</i>	

4. If the action have entirely ceased, we make use of *pendant combien de tems*, with the following verb in the compound of the present : ex.

<i>Pendant combien de tems</i>	How long were you in
<i>avez-vous été à Londres ?</i>	London ?

5. *How long*, in the sense of *for what time*, is also rendered by *pendant combien de tems*, with the verb in the same tense as it is in English: ex.

Pendant combien de tems How long do you intend
vous proposez-vous de to stay in Italy?
rester en Italie?

EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

How much do you owe him? - - You see to *how*
many dangers and *how many* reproaches we are
 liable. - - - *How many* times shall I be obliged to
exposé, p.p. *de*
 bid you to (be silent)? - - *How* troublesome
dire, v. *de* *se taire, v.* *importun, adj.*
 you are? *How* sorry I am for having displeased
de
 you! - - *How much* I should be obliged to you, if
 you would grant me that favour! - - *How long*
accorder, v.
 have you been learning French? - - *How long* have
 they been in Paris? - - *How long* had you been in
 London, when you married? - - *How long* had you been
 learning Italian, when you wrote to me? - - *How long*
 have your parents been in England? - - *How long*
 had your brother been in Germany, when we left
 it? *How long* were you in Holland? - - *How long*
 did your cousin learn the mathematics? - - *How long*

have that gentleman and lady been waiting for me ? - - *How long* has your relation been dead ? - - *How long* had he been in his regiment, when he died ? - - *How long* was he ill ? - - *How long* does your uncle intend to leave his son on the continent ? - - *se proposer de*
How long had your father and mother proposed to stay in America, when they first went thither ? - - *de*
 Why are you proud of your beauty ? You do not *s'enorgueillir, v.*
 know how long it will last.

ADVERBS.

Combien y a-t-il d'ici ? How far is it hence ?
Dans combien de tems ? How long will it be before ?
Comme, as, like, how.
Comme il faut, soundly, as it should be.
Comment, how.
à contre-cœur, against our will.
à contre-sens, the contrary, or wrong way, in a wrong sense.
à contre-tems, unseasonably.
à corps perdu, hand over head, desperately.
à côté,
à l'écart, } aside.
à part,
à quatrier,
à côté l'un de l'autre, abreast.
De ce côté-ci, on this side.
De ce côté-là, on that side.
De côté et d'autre, up and down, about.
De tous côtés, on all sides, on every side.
Coup sur coup, one after another.

EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

How far is it hence to Dover? - - *How long will it be*
before you send me back the books I lent you? - - .
 They are punished *as* they deserve. - - My father's
 house is *like* yours, it is very badly built. - - -
mal, adv.
 See *how* it rains. - - Have they not been beaten
soundly? - - This exercise is done *as it should be*.
 - - How can you speak thus? - - We went to the play
against our will. - - You hold your book *the wrong*
way. - - Your brother took *in a wrong sense* all
 that I said to him. - - Our master arrived very
ce que
unseasonably. - - The French rushed on the
fondre, v.
 Austrians *desperately.* - - Put that *aside.* - - I
Autrichien, m.
 perceive two ships sailing *abreast.* - - - Let us walk
on this side, and our companions will *go on that*
side. - - They run *up and down* all day, and
 do nothing but play. - - How dare you run *about*
ne que
 while your mother is waiting for you? - -
pendant que, c.
 The enemies were victorious *on all sides.* - - We
 hear *on every side,* that peace will very
apprendre, v.
 soon take place. - - They drank three bottles of
avoir lieu, v.
 Burgundy wine *one after another.*

ADVERBS.

D'avantage, more.

Dedans,
En dedans, } within, inwardly.

Dehors,
En dehors, } without.

Déjà, already.

Demain, to-morrow.

Le lendemain, the day after.

Après demain, the day after to-morrow.

Dernièrement, lately.

Ci-dessus, above.

Par dessus, above, over and above.

Dessous,
Au dessous, } underneath.

à découvert, openly.

à demi,
à moitié, } half, by halves.

à dessein, on purpose, designedly.

à droite, to the right.

à double entente, with a double meaning.

Encore, again, yet, as yet.

Enfin, at last.

Ensuite, afterward, then.

Entièrement, entirely.

Exprès, on purpose.

à l'écart, out of the way.

à l'entour, round about.

à l'envers, the wrong side outwards.

à l'envi, in emulation.

aux environs, thereabouts.

En nulle manière, in no wise.

En plein jour,
En plein midi, } at noon, at mid-day.

En tems et lieu, in a proper time and place.

En tous cas, whatever may happen.

En un clin d'œil, in the twinkling of an eye.

En sursaut, suddenly.

EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

I know how that happened, talk *no more* of it. - -
 Look *within* and you shall see it. - - She was *within*
 and I was *without*. - - Have you *already* done your ex-
 ercise? - - I will call upon you *to-morrow*, and
passer, v. chez, p.
the day after we will go and see my uncle. - - We
 will pay you *the day after to-morrow* if we can. - -
 I was *lately* (at your house). - - You will find it *above*.
chez vous.
 - - I like your garden and walks *above all*.
aimer, v.
 - - Look *underneath* this stone. - - *Underneath*
 you will find something curious. - - Speak and show
 yourself *openly*. - - We were *half* dead. - - I never do
 things *by halves*. - - They killed him *on purpose*. - -
 They did say so *designedly*. - - Go *to the right*. - -
 My brother always speaks *with a double meaning*. - -
 I tell the truth, *yet* he does not believe me. - - *At*
last the rebels retired into the woods with
se retirer, v. dans, p. bois, m.
 a great loss. - - Do first what you have to do,
perte, f. Faire, v.
afterward you shall go out. - - He did it *entirely*
 to please you. - - I came *on purpose* to see you.
pour, p.

- - Take all these papers, and put them *out of the way*. - - How can you find the place, if you always turn round about ? - - You have put ^{on your} *mettre, v.* waistcoat the wrong side outwards. - - My brother *veste, f.* and yours work in *emulation* of one another. - - - He lives in London or *thereabouts*. - - I will do it in no wise. - - I was stopped at noon. - - We will tell him what we think in a proper time and place. - - *Whatever may happen*, I (do not care) for it. - - He did ^{*se soucier, v.*} it in the twinkling of an eye. - - This morning I awoke *suddenly*, but I soon fell asleep again; *s'éveiller, v.* and did not wake again till seven o'clock. *se réveiller, v.*

ADVERBS.

Facilement, easily.

Fidèlement, faithfully.

à la file, } in a file.
De file, }

à la fois, together.

Combien de fois ? how many times ?

Une fois, once.

Deux fois, twice.

Trois fois, thrice, three times.

Tant de fois, so many times.

Par fois, now and then.

Fortement, strongly.

Fort, very.

Fort et ferme, stoutly.

à fond, thoroughly.

De fond en comble, from top to bottom, to all intents and purposes.

De front, abreast.

Galamment, genteelly, gallantly.

Goutte à goutte, by drops.

Guère ou Guères, (with *ne* before the verb,) little, but little.

à la hâte, in haste.

En haut, }
Là haut, } up there, up stairs, above stairs.

D'heure en heure, hourly, every hour.

Hier, yesterday.

Hier-au-soir, last night.

Avant-hier, the day before yesterday.

EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

Your brother learns *easily*, but he forgets *almost*
oublier, v.

as *easily* as he learns. - - In the last battle our troops

fought (with the) French, all the soldiers and
livrer, v. aux

officers did their duty *faithfully*: the enemy sur-

rendered at discretion, and were obliged to (march
de sor-

out) of the country *in a file*. - - Let every one speak
tir, v.

in his turn, for if you speak all *together*, how can
à

I hear what you say? - - *How many times* did I tell

you to write to your parents? - - I spoke to him only
de

once, but I saw him *twice*. - - My father generally

goes to Germany *thrice* a year. - - I told it you *three*

times. - - I saw him *so many times*. - - Do you go
often to London? I go *now and then*. - - The king
strongly opposed the enemy in the action, where
s'opposer à *mêlée, f.*
he fought *gallantly*. - - Your little sister is *very*
combattre, v.
pretty. - - In all that they undertake they always act
stoutly. - - My brother knows French *thoroughly*. - -
They demolished the house *from top to bottom*. - -
I travelled in a post-chaise drawn by three horses
abreast. - - Always behave *genteelly*. - - Your brothers
came to see us, and we received them *politely*. - -
The wine runs from the hogshead *by drops*. - - Give
him *but little* wine. - - ¹Never³ do² things in
Ne jamais, adv.
haste. - - Is Mr. D. *above stairs*? - - Go *up stairs*, you
will find what you (look for) in the drawer
chercher, v. *tiroir, m.*
behind the door. - - After having (waited for) him
derrière, p. *attendre, v.*
hourly, he arrived at last. - - We see the army
increasing every hour. - - I went *yesterday* to London.
grossir, v.
- - It rained very much *last night*, and it has frozen
very hard this morning. - - *The day before yesterday*
très fort
I met your brother, who was riding on horse-
se promener, v.
back.

ADVERBS.

Ici, here.

Ici autour, hereabouts.

Ici près, hard by.

D'ici, hence.

D'ici en quinze jours, within a fortnight.

Par ici, this way.

Par ici par là, here and there.

à l'instant, immediately, instantly.

Jamais, ever.

Ne jamais, never.

à jamais, for ever.

Justement, just, precisely.

Jusqu'à quand ? how long ?

Jusqu'ici, hitherto, as far as this.

Jusque-là, so far, as far as that.

Jusqu'où ? how far ?

De jour, in the day time.

De jour à autre, } from day to day, daily.

De jour en jour, }

De deux en deux jours, }

De deux jours l'un, }

Tous les deux jours, }

every other day.

Dans quinze jours, in a fortnight.

EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

Did I not tell you to stay *here* ? - - How many miles is it *hence* to Hampton-Court ? - -

(There must) be a great deal of game *here*-

Il doit, v. *gibier, m.*
abouts. - - How long has he lived *hard by* ? - - How
demeurer, v.

far is it *hence* to Canterbury ? - - I will call upon your
Cantorbéry

brother *within a fortnight*. - - Come *this way*. - - Your

- books are scattered *here and there*. - - Come back
épars, adj.
immediately. - - They *instantly* invited him to dine
à
 with them. - - I do not believe that he *ever* will follow
 (by the subj.)
 your advice. - - My father *never* will see him again.
conseil, m.
 - - Great men will *for ever* be celebrated in history.
 - - (This is) *just* what I say. - - *How long*, O
Voilà, adv.
 Catiline, will you abuse our patience? - - -
abuser, v. de
Hitherto the enemy has done nothing considerable.
 - - Learn this piece of poetry as far as that. - -
poésie, f.
How far will you go? - - You always come to see me
 by night, why do not you come *in the day-time*? - -
de
 We expect *from day to day* to receive news from
de
 the Continent. - - We are *daily* exposed to great
 dangers. - - My master comes here *every other day*.
 - - I shall go to France and Italy in *a fortnight*.

ADVERBS.

- Là*, there, thither.
Là autour, thereabouts.
Là bas, yonder.
De là, }
En de là, } thence.
Par là, that way.
Loin, far.
De loin, afar off, at a distance.

Long-tems, a long while, long time.

Lors, then, at the time.

Alors,
Pour lors, } then.

Dès-lors, from that time.

Mal, ill, wrong.

Maintenant, now.

Médiocrement, indifferently.

Même, even, yet.

De même, so, in the same manner.

Mieux, better.

De mieux en mieux, better and better.

Moins, less.

Moins—Moins, the less—the less.

à moins, for less, at less.

Au moins, *du moins*, } at least, at the least.

Tout au moins,

En moins de rien, in a trice.

Naïvement, plainly, ingenuously.

Naturellement, naturally, by nature.

au Naturel, to the life.

Ne, ni, ni, neither—nor.

Non pas, ne pas, ne point, non, no, not*.

De nuit, by night, in the night-time.

Obligamment, kindly, obligingly.

Où, where.

OBSERVATION ON THE ADVERB *Où*.

The adverb of place, *Où*, where, is most commonly and more elegantly turned into French by *que* after the two other adverbs *ici*, here, *là*, there, to prevent the hiatus caused by the meeting of the two vowels; and sometimes after nouns expressing the place where something has happened, been done or committed, especially when

* *Pas*, with the negation *ne* before it, merely expresses a negative, without affirming it, whereas *point* denies and affirms at once. *Pas* often denies but partly, or with some modification; *point*, on the contrary, always denies absolutely, totally, and without any reserve.

the sentence begins with the verb *être*, to be, used impersonally, as, *it is, it was, it will be, &c.* : ex.

<i>C'est ici que nous l'attendons,</i>	It is here (where) we are waiting for him.
<i>Ce fut là que je le vis pour la première fois,</i>	It was there (where) I saw him for the first time.
<i>Ce fut en plein sénat que César fut inhumainement assassiné,</i>	It was in full senate (where, or in which) Cæsar was inhumanly murdered.

EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

It was *there* or *thereabouts* that I met him. - - Do you see that tree *yonder* ? - - *Thence* I went to France, and soon after to Germany. - - If you go *that way*, *après, p.* you may call at Mr. H's. - - We are yet *far* from *pouvoir, v. passer chez* our house. - - I see many ships *afar off*. - - I saw him yesterday, but it was *at a distance*. - - You made me wait *a long while*. - - The fight lasted *a long combat, m.* time. - - He was ill *at the time* of my arrival. - - *Then,* I believe you. - - *From that time* I began to *commencer, v.* speak to him. - - Does your son behave ill *now* ? - - When I do wrong, I repent *immediately*. - - They are *mal* now in England. - - The tree that I planted grows *indifferently*. - - Virtue is amiable *even* in an enemy.

You blame him, and nevertheless you act *in the*
agir, v.
same manner. - - You work *better* than your sister. - -

She reads French *better and better.* - - - My cousin
 has *less* money and merit. - - - *The less* you work
 (by the fut.)
the less you will improve. - - - He will not do
faire des progrès.

it *for less.* - - - There are now in America 30,000 men
at the least. - - - If you cannot come, *at least* write
 to us. - - - He replied *plainly* to all my questions, and

I am much pleased with him. - - - What he does, he
de, p.

does it *naturally.* - - - Miss Nichol's picture is
portrait, m.
 drawn *to the life.* - - - I will *neither* see him *nor*
fait, p.p.

speak to him. - - - My mother and sisters (were to) go
devoir, v.
 next week to France, but my father says, that he

neither can *nor* will expose them to the caprice of the
vouloir, v.

fashion which now reigns in that country. - - - (I asked
de-
 for) a glass of wine, and *not* a glass of water.
mander, v.

- - - Will you come with me? *No*, for you always
 travel *by night.* - - Always speak *kindly.* - - *Where* did
 you meet them? - - It was here *where* I saw your brother

for the last time. - - - It was at Caernarvon *where*

Edward the Second was born, the first who bore the
naître, v.
 title of Prince of Wales. - - It was near the walls of
Galles, f.
 Corunna in Spain, *where* (or *near which*) the brave
 Sir John Moore was wounded, and died a
chevalier, m.
 few hours after; England will long regret the loss
 of that great general. It was there also *where* that
 famous battle was fought in which both our
se donner, v.
 officers and soldiers showed so much courage, and
 performed so many prodigies of valour. - - It is not
 amidst the pleasures of this world *where* (or *amidst*
parmi, p.
which) we find happiness, it is in the bosom of inno-
sein, m.
 cence and peace *where* (or *in which*) we ought to
 (look for) it. - - It is in the county of Huntingdon
chercher, v. *province, f.*
where the best cheeses in the kingdom are made.

ADVERBS.

D'où ? whence ?

Par où, through what place ? which way ? through
 which ?

Oui, yes.

D'outre en outre, through.

Pas à pas, step by step.

De part et d'autre, on both sides.

Nulle part, no-where, any-where.

à peine, hardly, scarcely.

Pêle-mêle, helter-skelter.

Peut-être, may be, perhaps.

Peu, little.

Peu à peu, by little and little, by degrees.

à peu près,

à peu de chose près, } almost, very near, thereabouts.

Dans peu, in a short time.

Depuis peu, lately, not long ago, a little while ago.

à pied, on foot.

à pieds nuds, barefoot, barefooted.

Au pis aller, let the worst come to the worst.

De pis en pis, worse and worse.

De plein gré, with a good will, freely.

De plein pied, on the same floor.

à pleines mains, largely.

Plus, more, above.

Plus—Plus, the more—the more.

Plus qu'il n'en faut, more than enough.

Au plus, tout au plus, at the most.

De plus en plus, more and more.

à plus forte raison, much rather, much more so.

EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

Did my brothers tell you *whence* they came? - -

Which way are they gone? - - The hole *through*

which they (made their escape) was so small, that I
s'échapper, v.

do not know how they could get out. - - Do you know
sortir, v.

your lesson? Yes, Sir. - - The barrel is pierced
baril, m.

through. - - I will follow you *step by step*. - -

The battle was cruel and bloody, and
combat, m. *sanglant*, adj.

kept up a long time with an equal advantage
se maintenir, v.

on both sides. - - I can find my book *no-where*. - -

There is no going *any-where* in winter. - - He speaks
 so low, that I can *hardly* hear what he says. - - The
 Spaniards pursued them so closely that they
Espagnol, m. *de si près, adv.*
 entered the town *helter-skelter*. - - I shall see you
perhaps to-morrow. - - He has *little* money. - - If you
 give me a verb, I will learn it *by little and little*. - -
 She is as tall as you, or *thereabouts*. - - I heard that
 your sister will (be married) *in a short time*. - - Have
se marier
 you heard from your mother *lately*? - - I received a
 letter from her *not long ago*. - - I was *on foot*, and
 he was in a coach. - - I often pity the poor little
 chimney sweepers, who walk *barefooted* in
cheminée, f. *ramoneur, m.*
 winter. - - *Let the worst come to the worst*, I will
 (get rid) of it. - - Your brother writes *worse*
se défaire, v.
and worse. - - He submitted to it *with a good will*. - -
se soumettre
 All our rooms are *on the same floor*. - - He is so cha-
 ritable, that he gives alms *largely*. - - I shall
aumône, f.
 never more complain of the rude reception
malhonnête, adj. *accueil, m.*
 which your uncle has given to my father. - - I have
fait, p.p.
 written three letters, neither *more* nor *less*. - - You
 are *above* twenty years old. - - *The more* we are

above others, *the more* it becomes us to be
au dessus de, p.
 modest and humble. - - You give me *more than*
enough. - - You study *more than ever*. - - How many
 coats have you? I have six *at the most*. - - I shall
 endeavour to deserve your kindness *more and more*.
 - - If I have done that to oblige my friend, I
 pour, p.
 would *much more* so do it for my relations.

ADVERBS.

Plutôt, sooner.

Point du tout, not at all.

à point nommé, seasonably.

Tout à point, in the nick of time.

à propos, seasonably.

Pourquoi? or *que ne?* why?

De près, near, nearly, narrowly.

Premièrement, } first, in the first place.
En premier lieu, }

Dès à présent, from this moment.

Presque, almost, hardly.

Presque jamais, hardly ever.

Presque toujours, most commonly.

De propos délibéré, on purpose, purposely, deliberately.

Par cas fortuit, by chance, accidentally.

Par derrière, behind.

Par dessus le marché, into the bargain.

Par en bas, downward.

Par en haut, upward.

Par malice, through ill-nature, out of ill-nature.

Par mégarde, unawares.

Par terre, upon the ground, down.

EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

My father arrived yesterday *sooner* than we expected him. - - How do you like that book? *Not at all*. - - You come very *seasonably*, and your brother came *in the nick of time*. - - He speaks *little*, but he speaks *seasonably*. - - *Why* do you not learn your lessons better? - - *Why* do not you come yourself? - - Your dog is so snarling, *hargneux*, adj. that there is no approaching him *near*. - - He *narrowly* escaped being killed. - - *In the first place*, I must tell you, that I shall punish you, if you do not behave better. - - *From this moment* I begin to believe that you are altered. - - You are *almost* as tall as I am. - - He is *hardly* ever at home. - - We dine *most commonly* between three and four o'clock. - - They killed him *purposely*. - - I met him *by chance*. - - That has happened *accidentally*. - - He struck his enemy *behind*. - - He gave me three yards of muslin *into the bargain*. - - Shall I begin *downward* or *upward*? - - Begin *downward*. - - He has torn my book through *ill-nature*. - - If I have

done him any harm, certainly I did it *unawares*. - -
 I always find your books and hat *upon the ground*.
 - - It was Peter who threw me down.
jetter, v.

ADVERBS.

Quand ? when ?

Depuis quand ? how long is it since ?

Que ? why ? how ?

Quelquefois, sometimes.

à quoi bon ? to what purpose ?

Rarement, seldom.

Au reste, } as to the rest.
Du reste, }

à rebours, the wrong way.

à la renverse, backward, upon one's back;

à reculons, backward.

à rez de chaussée, even with the ground:

Sens devant derrière, preposterously.

Sens dessus dessous, topsy-turvy.

De tous sens, } every way.
De tous les sens, }

Séparément, separately.

Seulement, only.*

De sang froid, in cold blood.

De suite, together, one after another.

Dans la suite, } afterward.
Par la suite, }

Sur le champ, directly, upon the spot.

Sûrement, safely.

EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

When shall I have the pleasure of seeing you ? - -

How long is it since you lived in London ? - - *Why* do
à

* *Only* is also expressed, in French, by *ne* before the verb and *que* after it, when it becomes a conjunction.

you not come to see us *sometimes*? - - To what *purpose* shall I write to him? - - He writes to me very *seldom*. - - *As to the rest*, do as you please. - - You do every thing *the wrong way*. - - - You hold your book *the wrong way*. - - He fell *upon his back*. - - If you walk *backward*, you will fall *backward*. - - Our eating-room is *even with the ground*. - - You put all your things *preposterously*. - - She has left (every thing) *topsy-turvy*. - - You may find it *every-where*. - - He defeated them *separately*. - - I only saw him *once*. - - He committed the murder in *cold blood*. - - They go *together*. - - He will give you much pleasure *afterward*. - - Do *directly* what I bid you. - - We arrived *safely*.

ADVERBS.

Tant, so much, so many.

Tant mieux, so much the better.

Tant pis, so much the worse.

Tantôt, by and by, sometimes.

Tantôt—Tantôt, sometimes—sometimes.

Tôt,
Bientôt, } soon.

Tôt ou tard, one time or other, sooner or later, soon or late.

Tant soit peu, very little, ever so little.

Tard, late.

à tems, time enough, in proper time.

De long-tems, for a long time, this long while.

De tems en tems,
De tems à autre, } now and then, from time to time.

à tort, wrongfully.

à tort ou à droit, right or wrong.

à tort et à travers, at random.

Trop, too much.

Toujours, always, ever.

Pour toujours, for ever.

Tous les jours, every day.

Tour à tour, by turns.

Tout, quite, wholly, thoroughly, entirely.*

Tout à coup, suddenly, on a sudden, all at once.

Tout bas, softly, with a low voice.

Tout d'un coup, suddenly, on a sudden, all at once.

EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

He has so much money, and so many goods,
 that he does not know what to do (with them.) - -
en, pro.

(It is) so much the better for me, but it will be so
C'est, v. ce

much the worse for you. - - My father will come back
revenir, v.

by and by. - - Sometimes you write well, some-

times you write very badly. - - My father says I shall

soon go to France. - - Have patience, you will suc-

ceed one time or other. - - The sun is the em-

blem of truth, which dispels, sooner or later, the
dissiper, v.

* This adverb takes the nature of a noun adjective, and becomes declinable, in French, when placed before another adjective feminine beginning with a consonant : ex.

Ces femmes paroissoient tout effrayées et toutes consternées, These women seemed quite frightened and quite dismayed

vapours of slander. - - Did he give you any meat ?
 - - He gave me *very little*. - - You arrived *late*, but I
 came *in proper time*. - - I have not heard from my
 brother *for a long time*. - - Come and see us *now and*
then. - - You accuse him *wrongfully*. - - *Right or*
wrong he will speak, and always speaks *at*
vouloir, v.
random. - - Give him a *little* money, but never give
 him *too much*. - - You *always* contradict me when I
 speak. - - O my children ! be *ever* good, and you will be
ever happy. - - I bid you adieu *for ever*. - - I go *every*
dire, v.
day to town. - - We will dance *by turns*. - - I am
quite tired with repeating the same things. - - My
de
 sisters were *quite* transported with joy when they
 heard the happy news of the victory. - - Misfortunes
 come sometimes *suddenly* upon us. - - Speak *softly*.
 - - A storm arose *suddenly*, and all the sailors
s'élever, v.
 were *quite* frightened. - - The ladies I saw at the
à
 play were *quite* young and agreeable. - - He has more
 brilliancy than solidity. - - Science is estimable,
brillant, m. *solide, m.*
 but virtue is more *so*.
davantage, adv.

ADVERBS.

Tout à fait, quite.

Tout à l'heure, this minute, presently.

Tout droit, straight along.

Tout de bon, in good earnest.

Tout de long, all along.

Tout franc, frankly, freely.

Tout haut, aloud.

Tout outre, through and through.

à tout bout de champ, } at every turn.
à tous coups, }

à tous égards, in all respects.

De toutes ses forces, with all his or her might.

Par tout, every-where.

Par tout où, wherever.

Vîte, } quickly.
Vitement, }

Vivement, } to the quick.
Au vif, }

à vide, empty.

Au plus vîte, with all speed.

Voici, here is, behold.

Voilà, there is, behold.

à vue d'œil, perceptibly.

Y, there, therein, within, thither.

EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

You are *quite* altered. - - I will do it *presently*. - -

If you do not come *this minute*, I shall go and

fetch you. - - Go *straight along*. - - Do you be-
chercher, v.

lieve it in *good earnest*? - - He was lain down *all*
couché, p.p.

along. - - He acts *frankly*, and speaks aloud. - - He

ran him *through and through*. - - She speaks
percer, v.

at every turn, without knowing what she says. - -
sans, p. savoir, v.

She is better than her sister in all respects. - - He

struck me with all his might. - - I have (looked
frapper, v. cher-

for) you every-where. - - I will follow you wherever
cher, v.

you go. - - Set out quickly. - - Her misfortunes -
(by the fut.) malheur, m.

touch me to the quick. - - The coach was returning

empty. - - Go with all speed to Mrs. Lucas, and
chez, p.

tell her to come directly. - - Here is my room, and
de

there is yours. - - These children grow *percep-*
grandir, v.

tibly. - - Go thither instantly.

SECT. VII.

OF PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions are divided into the three following classes. First, those that govern the genitive or ablative case. Secondly, those that govern the dative. And, lastly, those that govern the accusative.

First, the following govern the genitive or ablative.

Autour de, about, round.

à cause de, because of, on account of.

à cause de vous, de lui, d'elle, de nous, &c. on your, his, her, our, &c. account.

à côté de, aside, by.

à couvert de, free, secure, or screened from.

à fleur de, close to, even with.

à moins de, under.

- à force de*,* by dint of.
à raison de, at the rate of.
à l'abri de, sheltered from.
à l'égal de, to, in comparison.
à l'égard de, with regard, with respect, as to, concerning.
à la faveur de, by means of.
à l'insçu de, without the knowledge of, unknown to.
à la manière de, } in or after the manner or fashion of.
à la mode de }
à l'opposite de, } over-against.
Vis à vis de, }
Au deçà de, } on this side.
En deçà de, }
Au delà de, on that side, on the other side.
Au dehors de, out, without.
Au dessus de, above, over, upon.
Au dessous de, under, below, beneath.
Au devant de, before.
Aller au devant de, to go to meet.
Au derrière de, behind, in the back part.
Au dedans de, in, within.
Au lieu de, instead of.
Au milieu de, in the middle of.
Au prix de, en comparaison de, in comparison to.
Aux environs de, about, round about.
Ensuite de, after.
Faute de, for want of.
à la hauteur de, (sea term), off.
Hors de, out of.
Le long de, along.
Loin de, far from.
Près or proche de, } near, or nigh, by.
Auprès de, }
Pour l'amour de moi, de lui, d'elle, de vous, &c. for
 my sake, for his, her, your sake, &c.
Tout auprès de, close, hard by.
à l'épreuve de, proof, (able to resist).

* This preposition is sometimes Englished by *with* : ex.

Il pleure à force de rire, He cries *with* laughing.

EXERCISE ON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

Come this way ; we shall walk *round* the meadow. - - *prairie, f.*
 I have sent nothing to your brother *because* of his idleness, but I forgive him *on your account*. - - Sit down *by* that lady's sister. - - Endeavour to set yourself *mettre, v.* free from blame. - - We are not yet *secure* from all danger. - - Cut that sorrel *even with the ground. oseille, f.*
 - - He is become a very good master *by dint* of study and practice. - - He will not sell it *under vouloir, v.* twelve guineas. - - My brother bought yesterday twenty pair of silk stockings *at the rate* of fourteen shillings and sixpence a pair. - - Under that tree *Sous, p.* we shall be *sheltered from* the rain. - - Your horse (is worth) very little *in comparison* of his. - - *With valoir, v.* regard to what you say, I do not mind it. *se soucier, v. en*
 - - All the prisoners (made their escape) *by means* of the darkness *s'échapper, v.* of the night. - - Your brother is *obscurité, f.* gone to London *without the knowledge* of your mother. - - He (left off) Latin *unknown* to his father. - - Now the English ladies (dress themselves) *s'habiller, v.* after the French fashion. - - Mrs. Tart lives *in demeurer, v.*

the Strand *over-against* Catharine-street. - - We now live *on this side* of the river. - - Do not you say that you met my father *on the other side* of the bridge? - - Why did you stay *out* of the house? - - Mrs. A. is very proud, she thinks herself *above* every body, and consequently she (looks upon) every body as *se croire* *regarder, v.* *beneath* her. - - Did you observe the elegant lady who was in the box *remarquer, v.* *below* you? - - There is a large tree *loge, f.* *before* the house. - - I am going to meet my aunt, will you accompany me? - - My uncle has a rich plantation in the *back* part of Virginia. - - There is a fine statue *within* the garden. - - He took my hat *instead* of his. - - Let us go *in the middle* of the meadow. - - My house (is good for) nothing *in comparison* of hers. - - He *va-loir, v.* walks two or three times a * day *about* the garden. - - We drank tea, *after* which we went to *prendre, v.* the play. - - I can do nothing *quoi, pro.* *for want* of money. - - They were *off* the Cape of Good Hope when they were taken. - - Do not push me *out* of the *pousser, v.*

* Remember the observations after the article *un, une, a* or *an*, page 43.

room. - - He is gone *along* the river. We are still
far from our house. - - I met your friend Mr. A.
near the church. - - My mother was buried *nigh* this
marble pillar. - - He passed *by* me without knowing
me. - - I do it *for your sake* as well as for *theirs*.
- - My best friend lives *close* to the Royal Exchange,
demeurer
and he lived formerly *close* to St. James's palace. - -
The officers and soldiers were lodged in barracks
caserne, f.
cannon and bomb-*proof*. - - My shoemaker very
canon, m. *bombe, f. pl.*
much wanted to make me a pair of boots water-
désirer, v.
proof, but I had not money enough to pay
pour, p.
him.

Secondly, the following govern the dative,
Conformément, according, pursuant.
Jusqu'à, } till, until, even to, as far as, to.
Jusques à, }
Par rapport à, with respect, on account.
Quant à, as for, as to.

EXERCISE ON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

A candid and sincere man always speaks and acts
according to what he thinks. - - He has been punished
pursuant to an act of parliament. - - Yesterday we
parlement, m.
waited for him *till* five o'clock in the morning. - -
du

They fought with obstinacy on both sides *until* the beginning of the night. - - If I had not stopped him, *entrée, f.* he would have gone *even to* Dover. - - We accompanied them *as far as* Rochester, and they pursued their way *to* Canterbury. - - I will do it *with respect* to you, but never *on account* of them. - - *As for* me I will not give him a penny. - - *As for* us we were very much dissatisfied, I assure you. - - *As to* what people may say, I do not care for it.
pouvoir, v. (fut.) *se soucier, v.*

Thirdly, the following require the accusative.

Après, after.

D'après, after.*

Avant, before.

Avec, with.

à travers, cross, through.

Chez, in, to, at, among.

Chez moi, chez toi, chez lui, chez elle, chez nous, &c. at or to my, thy, his, her, our, &c. house.

Contre, against.

Dans, in, into, within.

De, about, through.

Depuis, since, from.

Derrière, behind.

Dès, from.

Devant, before.

De dessus, from the top.

De dessous, from under, from beneath.

Durant, during.

* We make use of this preposition in the following sense only :—
Il peint d'après un bon maître, He paints after a good master.

En, in, into, like, as, at.
Entre, between.
Envers, towards, with regard to.
Environ, about.
Excepté,
Hors,
Hormis, } except, but, save.
Moyennant, for, provided.
Nonobstant,
Malgré, } notwithstanding, in spite of.
Outre, beside.
Par, by, through.
Par deçà, on this side.
Par delà, on that side.
Par derrière, behind.
Par dessus, above, over.
Par dessous, under, below.
Parmi, among.
Pendant, during, for.
Pour, for.
Sans, without.
Sauf, saving, but with.
Selon,
Suivant, } according to.
Sous, under.
Sur, upon, about.
Touchant, concerning, about.
Vers, towards, to.

EXERCISE ON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

He arrived here an hour *after* you. - - Miss A.
 paints *after* nature. - - Let me drink *before* you. - -
Laisser, v.
 Did you not see her walk *with* her father? - - It was
 the ancient Britons, who cut a road *through*
chemin, m.
 this mountain. - - Such was the custom *among* the
 33*

Romans. - - I was going *to your house* : but as I have met you, we will go *to my house*, where we shall dine.

- - Do not lean *against* that wall. - - Go and *s'appuyer, v.*

take a walk *in* the garden. - - I am going *into* my *faire un tour*

room. - - Keep yourself *within* the limits of decency. *Tenir, v.*

- - I spoke to your father *about* your affairs. - -

His father died *through* grief. - - I have not heard from her *since* her departure. - - Go into my room ;

you will find a letter *behind* the looking-glass ; *miroir, m.*

(be so kind as) to bring it to me. - - *From* this moment I believe you. *avoir la bonté, de*

- - Do not put yourself *before* me. - - We saw the camp *from the top of* the hill. - -

I saw it *from under* a tree. - - He behaved well *during* your absence. - - My sister is *in* England. - - He be-

haved *like* an honest man in that affair. - - He acts *as* a tender father who loves you. *en*

- - Tell nobody what passed *between* you and me. - - Be not unjust *towards* your neighbours. - - It was *about* four o'clock when

prochain, m. sing. we set out. - - Take all that you please *except* my

sword. - - I give you all my books, *but* the History of

my bed. - - Do I not live* *according to* the rules
 which you have prescribed ? - - I found your buckle
 prescrire, v. *règle, f.*
 under the chair. - - You said you had left *boucle, f.*
 chaise, f. *laisser, v.* it upon
 the table. - - How could I lend you a guinea ? I had no
 money about me. - - Did not my brother write to you
 concerning that affair ? - - It was *towards* the evening
 when he arrived.

OBSERVATIONS ON SOME PREPOSITIONS.

Above. This preposition, when preceding a noun expressing *time* or *number*, so as to signify *more than* or *longer than*, is to be rendered in French by *plus de* :
 ex.

Le combat dura plus de The fight lasted *above*
deux heures, two hours.

EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

My brother was not *above* twenty years old, when
 he (was married). - - He made us wait *above* a week. - -
 se marier
 My father's country-house is very handsome, but it
 cost him *above* six thousand pounds. - - In the last
 sea-fight which took place between the French and
 the English, *above* twelve hundred men perished in
 the action on the side of the French, and the

* See the N. B. before the Exercises upon the first Conjugation, page 179.

English took *above* fifteen ships of the line. - - It is
above a year since my cousin set off for Jamaica.

Jamaïque, f.

At is most commonly rendered by *à*, and sometimes by one of the French articles *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, according to the gender and number of the noun following: ex.

Nous étions à diner,

We were at dinner.

Elle est à la maison,

She is at home.

Il joue bien aux cartes,

He plays well at cards.

EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

If you be *at* Rome, live as they do *at* Rome. - -

vivre

We will get up next week *at* six o'clock. - - When I

se lever

called upon Mr. B. he was *at* breakfast. - - Every

passer

thing I have is *at* your service. - - My brother is *at*

Mr. H's. academy. - - Were you *at* Mrs. C's. ball last

week? - - You always travel by night *at* the peril of

your life. - - I will pay you *at* the end of the year. - -

My mother is *at* the height of happiness. - - He plays

comble

very well *at* chess, and his companion begins

échecs, m. pl.

to play a little *at* draughts. - - He did it *at* the insti-

dames, f. pl.

gation of his friend.

After *nouns* or *verbs* denoting *anger*, *derision*, *joy*, *provocation*, *resentment*, *sorrow*, *surprise*, or *concern*, *at* is rendered by one of the following articles, *de*, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*: ex.

<i>Il se moque de vous,</i>	He laughs at you.
<i>Je me réjouis de votre bonheur,</i>	I rejoice at your good luck.
<i>Nous sommes surpris de ce que vous dites,</i>	We are surprised at what you say.

EXERCISE ON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

Exasperated at his conduct, he told him never to
Irrité, adj.
 laugh at poor people. - - We always ought to rejoice
devoir
 at the good fortune which befalls our neighbours.
arriver, v. à
 - - I am vexed at the news which we received last
 week. - - A good Christian never shows any resent-
 ment at the injuries which are offered to him. - - He
faire
 always smiles at (every thing) which is said. - - A pa-
tout
 tient man never grieves at his misfortunes. - -
s'attrister, v.
 I cannot help being surprised at her manner
s'empêcher, v. de
 of answering. - - I am concerned at the loss which
 you sustained in your trade. - - He was so mortified
essuyer, v.
 at the disobedience of his sons, that he died through
de
 grief.

At is rendered by *chez*, when, in English, it precedes the word *house*, either expressed or understood, and the same rule is to be observed with respect to the preposition *to* : ex.

<i>J'étois chez votre frère,</i>	I was at your brother's.
<i>Je vais chez Madame Lucas,</i>	I am going to Mrs. Lucas's.

EXERCISE ON THE SAME PREPOSITIONS.

I (called upon) Miss Brown this morning, as I had
passer
 promised your mother, but she was not *at* home. - - -

Where was she then? She was *at* her aunt's. - - - I

thought my friend was *at* his father's, but I mistook,
se tromper
 for he was *at* his uncle's. - - How long have you been

at Mr. H's.? - - We lodge *at* my friend's, but we board
manger
at the pastry-cook's. - - - If you go *to* my brother, tell

him to come *to* my cousin's, where I am to spend
de *passer, v.*
 the day, and we will go together *to* his friend's.

By, when preceding a numeral adjective immediately followed by another adjective expressing the *dimension* or *superficies* of an object, is rendered in French by *sur*, and when it precedes a verb in the participle active, it is then rendered by *en*: ex.

<i>Cette chambre a dix pieds</i>	This room is ten feet
<i>de longueur sur sept</i>	long <i>by</i> seven and half
<i>et demi de largeur,</i>	wide.
<i>En agissant ainsi, vous</i>	<i>By</i> acting thus, you will
<i>vous ferez des ennemis,</i>	get enemies.

EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

My box is a foot and a half deep *by* two wide and four long. - - The general (drew up) his army in order
ranger, v.
 of battle, and placed his best soldiers in length *by*

fifty feet deep. - - Our (school-room) at Alfred
 House, Camberwell, is forty feet long *by*
 thirty-six wide, and our play-ground contains above
 an acre of land. - - You will soon speak French
arpent, m.
by applying so. - - Your father gets a considerable
s'appliquer *fortune by* buying cheap and selling dear. - - Men
faire, v.
 acquire learning *by* working and not *by* sleeping. - -
 Water hollows a stone, not *by* falling with force,
creuser, v.
 but *by* falling often ; so a man becomes learned, not
by studying with force, but *by* studying often.

By, after the verbs *to sell*, *to buy*, *to work*, and the
 like, preceding a noun of *weight* or *measure*, *day*, *week*,
month, or *year*, is rendered into French by *à*, *au*, *à la*, *à*
l', *aux*, according to the gender and number of the fol-
 lowing noun : ex.

<i>Je ne vends rien à la</i>	<i>I sell nothing by the</i>
<i>livre,</i>	<i>pound.</i>
<i>Il achète toujours à l'aune,</i>	<i>He always buys by the ell.</i>
<i>Nous travaillons à l'heure,</i>	<i>We work by the hour, or</i>
<i>ou à la journée,</i>	<i>by the day.</i>

EXERCISE ON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

Always buy tea *by* the pound, and never *by* the
 ounce, you will get it cheaper. - - I never buy my
avoir
 cloth *by* the ell, but *by* the piece. - - It is a sad thing
 to buy coals *by* the bushel. - - - How do you sell your
dé
 brandy ? We sell it *by* the gallon, and not *by* the

bottle. - - He sells his wine *by* the dozen. - - - I sell eggs *by* the hundred, and chesnuts *by* the quarter. - - How do you measure your cambric? *by* the ell, *batiste, m.* or *by* the yard? - - Do you buy cider *by* the hogshead, *tonneau, m.* or *by* the pipe? - - Does your father work *by* the week or the month? No, Sir, he works *by* the year. Well! I always thought he worked *by* the piece.

By, immediately following the verbs *to kill*, *to wound*, *to knock down*, and the like, is made into French, by *d'un coup de*, when it expresses the effect, blow, thrust, stroke, firing, &c. of an instrument by which a man was either killed, wounded, &c. provided the blows have not been repeated: if the blows have been repeated, we make use of *à coups de*, in which case it is most commonly rendered in English by *with*: ex.

Il fut blessé d'un coup de He was wounded by an
flèche, arrow.
Ils l'assommèrent à coups They knocked him down
de bâton, with a stick.

EXERCISE ON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

Achilles was killed at the siege of Troy *by* an
au
arrow, which Paris, king Priam's son, (let fly)
décocher, v.
at his heel. - - (Unable to) catch the thief,
talon, m. *Ne pouvoir attraper, v.*
they knocked him down *with* a stick. - - At last
Enfin, adv.
the king, having broke his battle-axe and
lâche-d'armes, f.
sword by the force of his blows, was knocked down
renversé, p.p.

by a stone, and taken prisoner. - - William the
fait, p.p.

Second was killed by an arrow in the New-Forest. - -

My brother was wounded by a gun, and my
fusil, m.

cousin was killed by a cannon-ball. - - Edward the
boulet de canon, m.

First was wounded in Palestine with a poisoned

dagger. - - He is so strong, that with his fist he
poignard, m.

could knock down an ox. - - He threw my brother

down, and almost killed him with his feet. - -
par terre,

They killed him not with stones, but with arrows. - -

The soldiers kill one another with bayonets, and the
se tuer

officers with sabres and swords. - - My mother's

watch (goes too fast) by half an hour, but your's
avancer, v.

(goes too slow) by twenty minutes.

retarder, v.

For, after *reflected verbs*, as also those which denote
thanksgiving, &c. is rendered by one of the following
articles, *de, du, de la, de l', des* : ex.

<i>Je me réjouis du service</i>	I rejoice for the service
<i>qu'il vous a rendu, et je</i>	which he has done to
<i>l'en remercierai demain,</i>	you, and will thank
	him to-morrow for it.

EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

I am very grateful *for* all the kindness
reconnoissant, adj. *bonté, f.*
you have had for me. - - He is very sorry *for* the

grief he has caused you. - - When we have reached
the age of reason, we are often sorry, but too late,
atteindre, v.
for the time we lost when we were young. - - - My
brother desired me to thank you *for* the part you
took in his troubles. - - - Every one leaped *for* joy,
de
peine, f. *tressaillir*
when the happy news of peace arrived. - - A child
who cares little *for* those who gave him life,
se soucier, v.
is an unnatural being. - - An ungrateful son will be
dénaturé, adj.
punished (one time or other) *for* his ingratitude.

From, preceding the name of a man or woman, or one of the personal, possessive, relative, or interrogative pronouns, after the verbs *to go*, *to come*, *to send*, &c. is generally rendered in French by *de la part de*, or *de ma*, *de sa*, *de notre part*, *de votre part*, &c.: ex.

Allez de ma part chez Go *from* me to Mr. D.

Mons. D.

Je viens de sa part,

I come *from* him or her.

EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

Go *from* me to Miss Dunkin's and tell her I shall be glad to see her: no, stop a little, tell her that you come *from* my cousin, who has something very pretty to show her. - - *From* whom do you come? said she to me. - - Madame, replied I to her, I come *from* my parents, who sent me. - - Well, answered

she, any one is always welcome, who comes *from* them. - - - Send *from* me to Mr. Lucas, and let him know that I am (very much) vexed at the letter I received *from* him; I never could have ^{*très*} expected ^{*de*} *s'attendre, v.* to receive such an affront *from* such a gentleman.
à

In requires some attention from the learner, who is to observe that *dans* always conveys a limited idea, and is followed by the article; when, on the contrary, *en* conveys a very determinate idea, and seldom admits of the article, whether expressed in English or not: ex.

Il est dans la maison,
Elle est en Angleterre;

He is *in* the house.
She is *in* England.

EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

He always keeps himself shut up *in* his room. - -
Take all the linen which I shall want *in* our journey, and put it *into* my box. - - Walk *into* the parlour.
- - We live *in* the county of Surrey. - - Is there a good fire *in* the room? - - - Ovid, one of the finest poets of the Augustan age, expired *in* the seventeenth year of our Lord, at Tomi, near Varna, on the western coast of the Black Sea, whither he had been banished by the emperor Augustus. - - -
Is your sister *in* France? - - No, madam, she is *in*

Spain. - - How long do you intend to stay *in* town ? - -

Sir, do you keep house ? - - No, we live *in*

(ready furnished) lodgings. - - - When we are *in*
garni,adj. chambre,f. on

peace, people talk of war ; and when *in* war, they
on on

talk of peace. - - - Your eldest son behaved *like* a

hero. - - If my son behave *like* an honest man, I shall

act towards him *as* a tender father. - - *In* what does

human happiness consist ? - - If you wish to be happy

and esteemed *in* this world, live *like* a man of

honour and probity. - - He walks *in* the garden with

his friend. - - - He is gone to spend the winter *in*

Italy. - - - The American navy officers have acted

like heroes.

In, after words denoting *pain, hurting, or wounding*, and preceding one of the possessive pronouns in conjunction with any part of the body, is to be rendered by one of the following articles, *à, au, à la, à l', aux*, and the possessive pronoun left out ; and when *in* precedes a noun denoting a part of time, it is not to be expressed in French : ex.

*Il étoit blessé au bras et
 non à la jambe,
 Vous le trouverez toujours,
 chez lui le matin,*

He was wounded *in* his
 arm, and not *in* his leg.
 You will always find him
 at home *in* the morn-
 ing.

EXERCISE ON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

My brother has constantly a pain *in* his head, and I have very often a pain *in* my teeth. - - Never eat any fruit which is not ripe, for there is nothing more apt to give you a pain *in* your stomach. - - - My companion, by jumping over a form, (fell down), *banc, m. tomber, v.* and was much hurt *in* the shoulder. - - - Your brother was wounded *in* the arm, but not dangerously, and my cousin was mortally wounded *in* the head. - - My master comes generally *in* the morning. - - I will call upon you *in* the afternoon, and *in* the evening go to the play.

On or upon. This preposition is rendered by *de* after the verbs *to depend, to live, to subsist*, and the like; and by one of the following articles, *de, du, de la, de l', des*, after the verb *to play*, preceding the name of an instrument: and before the days of the week and the names of the month, preceded by a numeral adjective the above preposition must not be expressed: *ex.*

Il vit de pain et d'eau,

He lives *on* bread and water.

Vous jouez du violon, et il joue de la flûte,

You play *on* the violin, and he plays *on* the flute.

Cela arriva le dix-huit du mois dernier,

That happened *on* the eighteenth of last month.

EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

We all depend *upon* divine mercy. - - - A
miséricorde, f.
 good end generally depends *on* a good beginning. - -
 Men do not live only *on* bread and meat, but *on* the
 grace of God. - - - Birds subsist *upon* what they can
 catch. - - What do you live *upon*, you who never eat
 any meat ? - - In winter I live *on* milk and vegetables,
 and in summer I live *upon* bread and butter, cheese, and
 all sorts of fruits. - - *Upon* what instrument does your
 sister play ? - - She plays very well *on* the harpsichord,
 and she is now learning to play *on* the harp. - - Come
on Friday early, and I will go to see you *on* the Saturday
 following. - - Why did you not play *on* the violin on
 Wednesday last ? - - *On* June the eighth, 1376, died
 Edward, prince of Wales, the delight of the
 nation, in the forty-sixth year of his age. (in the pl.) - - *On* the
 third of June, 1664, the English obtained a great victo-
 ry over the Dutch off Harwich, took eighteen
Hollandois, m.
 ships, and destroyed fourteen more.

Over. This preposition is commonly rendered in
 French by *sur* ; but it must be rendered by the partici-
 ple passive of the verbs *finir*, *passer*, *achever*, when it
 denotes an action ended ; *ex*.

<i>Il a l'avantage sur vous,</i>	He has the advantage over you.
<i>Votre frère partit dès que la pluie fut passée,</i>	Your brother set out as soon as the rain was over.
<i>Le dîner est-il fini ?</i>	Is dinner over ?

EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

A coach passed *over* his body and killed him. - -
Tullia, Tarquinius' wife, the unnatural daughter
of Servius king of Rome, ordered her coachman
to drive *over* the dead body of her father. - - In
going to London, did you go *over* Westminster
bridge? - - Yes, but in coming back I passed *over*
Blackfriars bridge. - - - They dissolved the army
as soon as it was resolved that the campaign was
over. - - - In France they drink coffee as soon as
dinner is *over*. - - You may go and walk when
the rain is *over*. - - They fought well, and the
battle was soon *over*.

With is rendered by *dans*, when it is used before nouns denoting the purpose, design, or motive of the agent : ex.

Il le fit dans l'attente d'être bien récompensé, He did it with an expectation of being well rewarded.


EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

He poisoned his brother *with* the hope of inheriting his estates. - - My brother is gone to your house *with* the design of scolding you well. - - He who beats another *with* the intention of killing him, is a murderer at the bottom of his heart. - - He did it *with* the intention of pleasing you, and not *with* any design of hurting you. - - I went last week to Mr. Olympus, *with* the expectation of receiving the money which I lent him a month ago, but he was not at home. - - I live *with* the hope of receiving it (one time or another). - - He said so *with* a design of deceiving you, if he could.

With must be made by *de* after the following verbs, *to starve, to die, to do, to dispense, to meddle, to encompass, to load, to cover, to strike*, and those denoting *fulness*: likewise after the following adjectives, *amorous, charmed, pleased, displeased, endowed, &c.* ex.

<i>Elle meurt de froid et de faim,</i>	She dies <i>with</i> cold and hunger.
<i>Je suis content de ce que j'ai,</i>	I am pleased <i>with</i> what I have.

EXERCISE ON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

Lazy people ought to die *with* hunger and
devoir, v.
 cold. - - The winter was so severe, that I was dying
with cold. - - They are so rich, that they do not know
 what to do *with* their money. - - I hope you will dis-
gue 
 pense me *with* that disagreeable (piece of work).
besogne, f.
 - - Do not meddle *with* my affairs, meddle *with* your
 own. - - It is reported on all sides, that Paris is to be
 encompassed *with* walls. - - Do you see that waggon?
chariot, m.
 It is loaded *with* goods. - - - Do you wish your house
que
 (be) covered *with* slates or tiles? - - He was overwhelmed
soit, v. *tuile, f.* *accablé, adj.*
with grief. - - The enemy, struck *with* terror and
 astonishment, ran away. - - - Honour me *with* your
 commands. - - I have filled my cellar *with* good beer
 and excellent wine. - - Narcissus, seeing himself in a
 clear fountain, fell in love *with* his own
devenir, v. *amoureux, adj.*
 person. - - I am charmed *with* the agreeable company
 of your sister. - - As to us, little satisfied *with* his
 answers, we took other measures. - - - Are you not

pleased *with* the behaviour of your son Thomas ?

You would be wrong to be dissatisfied *with*
avoir tort, de mécontent, adj.

him, for he behaved *like* an honest man in
se conduire, v.

that affair, and he is endowed *with* many good
doué, adj.

qualities. - - The man who meddles *with* nobody's

affairs, but quietly follows his own, seldom makes

himself enemies.

With is rendered by *contre* after words denoting anger or passion : and before nouns denoting the matter, instruments, tools, or expressing how and in what manner a thing is done or made, it is rendered by one of the following articles, *à, au, à la, à l', aux*, according to the gender and number of the following noun : ex.

<i>Madame votre mère est très-</i>	Your mother is very angry
<i>fâchée contre vous,</i>	<i>with you.</i>
<i>Une table à tiroirs,</i>	A table <i>with</i> drawers.
<i>Dessiner au crayon, à la</i>	To draw <i>with</i> a pencil,
<i>craie,</i>	<i>with</i> chalk.
<i>Se battre à l'épée, au pis-</i>	To fight <i>with</i> swords, <i>with</i>
<i>tolet,</i>	pistols.

EXERCISE ON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

My brother was in² such¹ a passion³ *with* me, that I
si en colère, f.
 thought he would have beaten me. - - I believe what
croire, v.
 you say, but I was very angry *with* her when she
 told me she would not do it. - - I live near the river,

and if you come to see me, we will fish *with* a
 net or a line. - - Your brother and my cousin
filet, m. *ligne, f.*
 fought *with* sabres and pistols; the former was
 wounded in his thigh, and the latter in his side. - - -
 My house has been built *with* lime and sand. - - Did
 Miss Arnold show you the picture she has drawn
with India ink? - - - No, but he showed me her
Chine, f.
 mother's picture done *with* chalk, I assure you it is
 very like. - - Do not go so near that wall, it is newly
ressemblant, adj.
 painted *with* (white lead). - - I bought a penknife *with*
céruse, f.
 two blades. - - - The Americans fought bravely
lame, f. *se battre*
with the English at New-Orleans.
nouvelle

With is not to be expressed after some verbs, such as,
to meet with, to trust with, to supply with, to reproach with,
 &c. It is likewise to be suppressed where it expresses
 the *situation, position, &c.* of a person, or when it is used
 in the sense of *having, holding, &c.*: ex.

<i>Il a essuyé bien des cha-</i>	He has met <i>with</i> many
<i>grins,</i>	troubles.
<i>Nous lui fournirons, tout ce</i>	We will supply him <i>with</i>
<i>dont il aura besoin,</i>	every thing he wants.
<i>Il se promène toujours un</i>	He always walks <i>with</i> a
<i>livre à la main,</i>	book in his hand, that
	is, <i>having</i> or <i>holding</i> a
	book, &c.

EXERCISE ON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

He met *with* so many mortifications from his
essuyer, v.
 sons, that through grief he fell *ill* and died
de *tomber, v.*
 almost *with* despair. - - - When you meet
rencontrer, v.
 a poor man, never reproach him *with* his poverty,
 but endeavour to furnish him *with* the means
moyen, m.
 of emerging from his misery. - - - I have trusted Mr.
 N. *with* my son's education, with the utmost con-
 fidence that he will answer my expectation. - - - The
 New River supplies London *with* all the water which
 the inhabitants stand in need of. - - I reproached
avoir besoin, v.
 her *with* her ingratitude towards her benefactors. - - -
 He always walks round the premises *with* a stick in his
bâton, m.
 hand. - - Never speak to any body *with* your hat on
le
 your head. - - He is represented on horseback, *with*
 a sword in his right-hand and a horse - pistol
l'épée *arçon, m. pistolet, m.*
 in his left.
gauche, adj.

Without (sans) : this preposition is sometimes ex-
 pressed (in English) by the imperfect or compound of
 the imperfect of the verb *to be*, preceded by the con-
 junction *if*, and sometimes by *but for* : ex.

Sans vous, je ne sais ce que je deviendrois,	<i>If it were not for you, I do not know what would become of me.</i>
Sans lui, mon frère auroit été puni,	<i>Had it not been for him, my brother would have been punished.</i>
Sans elle, je serois mort de faim,	<i>But for her, I should have starved.</i>

EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

Without the assistance of the divine Providence,
secours, m.
what are we? What are we capable of? - - Accord-
ing to what you tell me, and what I have heard,
she has a great deal of wit and merit; and, but for
that large scar which she has in her fore-
grand, adj. cicatrice, f.
head, she would be very handsome. - - Had it not
been for the help of good and honest people, what
could you have done? - - If it had not been for me,
he never would have paid you. - - Were it not for rich
and charitable persons, what would become of the
poor and needy? - - Our neighbour fell into the river,
voisin, m.
and but for my father, who was passing that way, he
would have been drowned. - - Were it not for emula-
se noyer, v.
tion, (every thing) would languish in the world.
tout

SECT. VIII.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Most of the conjunctions are adverbs and prepositions, but always attended by *de* or *que*. They have been divided into *copulative*, *comparative*, *disjunctive*, *adversative*, *casual*, *dubitative*, *exceptive*, *conditional*, *continuative*, *conclusive*, &c. Instead of following this arrangement, it will be of more importance for the scholar to understand, that different conjunctions require different states of the verb. Some require the following verb in the *infinitive mood*, others in the *indicative*, and others again in the *subjunctive*.

These require the following verb in the *infinitive mood*.

Afin de, in order to.

à moins de, or } unless.
à moins que de, }

Avant de, or } before.
Avant que de, }

Au lieu de, instead of.

De crainte de, or } for fear of.
De peur de, }

Excepté de, except to.

Faute de, for want of.

Jusqu'à, to that degree that, till.

Loin de, far from.

Plutôt que de, rather than.

EXERCISE ON THESE CONJUNCTIONS.

In order to learn well, we must study with a
on devoir, v.
 great deal of attention. - - It will be impossible for
 you to learn French *unless* you be diligent. - - Let us

breakfast *before* we begin (any thing). - - A prudent
 man ought to think several times, *rien,* *before* he acts. - - -
 He is gone to church, *agir, v.* *instead of* coming with us. - - -
 I would not do it *for fear* of displeasing you. - - He
 is capable of (every thing) *except* of doing good. - - -
 For want of sending for *tout,* a surgeon in
envoyer chercher, v. *chirurgien, m.* à
 time, he lost his arm. - - He carried his inso-
pousser, v.
 lence to that degree that he spoke injurious words
 to him. - - Your cousin has humbled himself, *dire, v.* *till*
humilier, v.
 he fell (on his) knees before the idol. - - Far from
 exciting them to fight, I did all that I could in order
 to prevent them. - - She would do (any thing) (in the)
 world *tout au* *rather than* speak to him. - - *Rather than* study,
 he loses his time, or spends it in trifles.

The following require the verb in the *indicative mood*.

Ainsi que, * as.

Tout ainsi que, * just as.

Après que, * after that, after.

à cause que, } because.
Parce que, }

à ce que, according as, or to.

à condition que, on, or upon condition that.

à mesure que, * in proportion as, as.

Au lieu que, whereas.

Dès le moment que, * the moment that.
Aussi long-tems que, * as long as.
Aussi loin que, * as far as.
Aussitôt que, }
D'abord que, } * as soon as.
Dès que, }
Sitôt que, }
Attendu que, considering that, seeing that.
Comme, or } * as.
En tant que, }
De façon que, }
De manière que, } in such manner that, so that, so.
De sorte que, }
Si bien que, }
Tellement que, }
Depuis que, ever since, since.
Puisque, since.
De même que, even as.
D'où vient que, how comes it to pass that, why.
Lorsque, } * when.
Quand, }
Mais, but.†
Outre que, beside that.
à peine que, hardly, scarcely,—but, or when.
Pendant que, } * while.
Tandis que, }
Peut-être que, perhaps.
Quand, }
Quand même, } though.
Selon que, } * according as.
Suivant que, }
Tant que, * as long as.
Que—de—ne, than only.
Autant que, * as much as.

† This conjunction, when beginning a sentence, is always rendered by *mais*. In the middle of a sentence, the word *but* is always rendered by *ne* before the verb, and *que* after it: ex.

Je n'ai parlé à votre frère que I have spoken to your brother.
deux fois, but twice.

D'autant que, whereas, for so much as, since.

D'autant plus—que, so much more, the more,—as.

Toutefois, yet, nevertheless.

Toutes les fois que, every time, as often as, whenever.

Sinon que, except that.

Si, if, in case, whether.

EXERCISE ON THESE CONJUNCTIONS.

I called at your sister's, *as* you had desired me.
passer, v.

- - I punish you *as* you deserve (it). - - *After* you

were gone, I began writing. - - I love you *because*

you behave better than your brother. - - *According*

as I see, you are very well. - - - He will write to you,

on condition that he shall speedily receive

promptement, adv.

your answer. - - - *In proportion as* we study, we

become learned. - - - A skilful gardener pulls up

weeds *as* they grow. - - - Your brother

mauvaise herbe, f.

learns his lessons, *whereas* you do nothing. - - - *The*

moment that I saw you, I knew you again. - - I did

not stay in Italy, *as long as* you did. - - I followed him

(with my) eyes *as far as* I could. - - *As soon as* they

des had taken the general, the army surrendered. - - Why

did you give it to him, *considering that* you had

promised it to me? - - - I did not come to see you,

seeing that I did not know that you were ill. - - -

You (look at) me, as if I had taken your book. - -
regarder, v.

I will lend you my horse, as you are my friend. - -

So you will not come when I call you. - - - He

beat him so that he almost killed him. - - -

Your mother is quite altered, since I saw her
changé, p.p.

last. - - - You must stay at home, since you
dernièrement, adv.

are not well. - - The thing happened even as I had

foreseen it. - - How comes it to pass, that I have not

seen your friend until now ? - - Why, in proportion as

we grow older, do we not grow wiser ? - - When
devenir, v.

you are going to undertake an affair of importance,

permit me to tell you, that you ought to consult
de

your friends before you begin it. - - - When she had

done speaking, she (fell asleep). - - Did you not see
s'endormir, v.

Mr. Brown this morning ? - - Yes, but I could not speak

to him. - - - Sometimes those who meddle with our

affairs but to serve us, are those who do us most

harm. - - The misfortunes of others seem to us
tort, m. sembler, v.

but a dream in comparison to our own. - - If you
songe, m.

could give me *but* half of the money you owe me, I should be very much obliged to you. - - *Beside that* he does not apply as he should, he is often absent from school. - - We were *hardly* arrived, when it began to rain. - - *While* you lose your time, your brother improves fast. - - Play on the harpsichord, *à* *beaucoup*, adv. *clavier*, m. *while* I write my exercise. - - *Perhaps* the master will forgive me. - - *Though* you should cheapen for two hours, I could not abate sixpence. - - Our father punishes and rewards us *according as we* deserve. - - Speak *as long as* you please, I will not grant you what you ask me. - - He had rather do harm to his companions *than* (be doing) nothing. - - If you loved to study, *as much as* you love to play, I should have (no occasion) to complain. - - I avoid slanderers; *as much as* I fear them. - - You may believe me, *for so much as* I was present when he said so. - - This proceeding was *the more* extraordinary, *as* it was contrary to the laws of the kingdom. - - The belief of another life appears to

me *so much the more* conformable to truth, *as* it is
the more necessary to virtue. - - Virtue reigns *so*
much the more sovereignly, *as* it does not reign by
force and fear. - - All men (seek after) riches, and
rechercher, v.
yet we see few rich men happy. - - I see the king and
queen *every time* I go to Windsor. - - He interrupts
me *as often as* I speak. - - *Whenever* I go to London, I
meet him. - - She said nothing to me, *except* that it
was impossible (for her) to do what you required of
lui, pro.
her. - - I know not *whether* he would come, even though
you should desire him. - - *In case* Mr. S. calls
passer, v.
here, tell him I am not at home, and ask him when
he will come again to see me. - - *If* you do it, you
will be punished. - - - Tell me sincerely *whether* he
did it or not. - - - We should spare ourselves
épargner, v.
many troubles, were we more prudent.
peine, f.

The conjunctions that have this mark * affixed,
as it appears in the preceding ones, when followed,
in English, by a verb in the present of the indica-
tive mood, and connected with another verb denot-
ing futurity, require the verb, which, in English, is
put in the present, to be rendered in French by the
future,

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

You will be rewarded *just as* you deserve. - -

After you have done your exercises, you shall go out.
devoir, m.

- - I will explain these rules to you, *as* we read them.

- - *The moment* that you burn this letter, the danger
 will be over. - - We will follow you *as far as* you go.

- - *As long as* you (keep company with) those people,
fréquenter, v.
 never come to my house. - - We will set out *as soon*
as we have dined. - - - *As* you deserve, you will be
 rewarded. - - Send me Miss White, *when* she has
 done writing. - - You will write the words *accord-*
fini, p.p. de
ing as I dictate them. - - *As long as* you behave
se comporter, v.
 well, you will be dear to me. - - In short, said this
 good king, I shall only think myself happy in *as much*
se croire
as I cause the happiness of my people.
faire

It has been remarked in the degrees of comparison, that every comparative must be attended by the conjunction *que*, than ; it must now be observed, that, if *que* precede a verb in the infinitive, it is to be followed by *de*. But if the verb be neither in, nor can be turned into the infinitive, the conjunction must then be attended by *ne* ; that is, *que* before the noun or pronoun, and *ne* before the verb : **ex.**

*Il vaut mieux être mal-
heureux que d'être cou-
pable,*

It is better to be unfor-
tunate *than* criminal.

*Mon père est revenu
plutôt que nous ne l'at-
tendions,*

My father came back
sooner *than* we ex-
pected him.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

It is more pleasing to enjoy good health,
agréable, adj.
than to possess a large fortune. - - It is harder (to

be revenged) of an enemy, *than* forgive him. - - -
se venger, v.

It is better to make a sacrifice of a limb, said the
surgeon, *than* lose your life. - - When the thunder

roars, it is less dangerous to be in an open field,
gronder, v.

than to take shelter under a tree. - - Should you
se mettre,

not apply more *than* you do ; you, especially, who
are to be useful to your country ? - - - That would

give me more pleasure *than* you imagine. - - Did you
not receive your goods *before* war was declared ?

- - How many people can say to themselves, Had I
employed my time *better than* I did when I was
young, I should be (in good circumstances) now. - - -

à mon aise,
Diseases come faster than they go away.
s'en retourner, v.

The following require the verb in the *subjunctive mood*.

Afin que, } that, in order that, to the end that.
Pour que, }

Avant que, before.

Au or en cas que, in case that, if, suppose that.

*A moins que,** }
Excepté que, } unless, till.
Si ce n'est que, }

Que—ne,

Bien que, }

Encore que, } though, although, for all that, as.
Quoique, }

Tout† que, }

Bien entendu que, with a proviso that, upon condition that, provided that.

De crainte que,† } lest, for fear.
De peur que, }

Dieu veuille que, God grant.

Plaise, or plutôt à Dieu que, please God, or would to God.

à Dieu ne plaise, God forbid.

Hormis que, } save that, unless, except.
Hors que, }

*Jusqu'à ce que,** till, until.

Loin que, far from.

Moyennant que, } save that, provided that.
Pourvu que, }

Nonobstant que, notwithstanding that.

Pour peu que, how little soever, however little.

Sans que, without that.

Soit que, whether,—or.

Supposons que, suppose, let us suppose that.

Tant s'en faut que je, I am so far from.

Tant s'en faut qu'il, or elle, he, or she is so far from.

Tant s'en faut que nous, or vous, we, or you are so far from.

* These conjunctions require the negation *ne* before the following verbs : ex.

A moins qu'il ne le fasse,

Unless he does it.

De crainte, or de peur qu'ils ne viennent, *For fear, or lest they come.*

† See observations upon the pronouns indefinite, page 118.

EXERCISE ON THESE CONJUNCTIONS.

I will explain to you every difficulty, *that* you may not be disheartened in your undertaking. - - -
décourager, v.
 Carry that money to Mrs. Nolle, *in order that* she may pay the writing-master when he comes. - - - A
 (by the fut.)
 wise and prudent man lives with economy when young, *to the end that* he may enjoy the fruit of his labour when he is old. - - - *Before* you begin an
 (by the fut.)
 action, consider well, and see whether you can bring
en venir
 it about, for it is the end that crowns the work. - - -
à bout *œuvre, m.*
In case you want my assistance, call me, I shall be near you. - - *If* I do not call upon you this afternoon, I will write to you. - - *Suppose* you should lose your friends, what would become of you? - - - You will never be respected, *unless* you forsake the bad
abandonner, v.
 company you keep. - - You cannot finish (to-night),
ce soir,
unless I help you. - - I will not lend it you, *unless* you promise me to return it to her as soon as you
de rendre, v.
 can. - - I shall not cease to importune you, *till* you
 (by the fut.) *de*
 have forgiven me. - - They are not happy, *though*

they be rich. - - The general arrived yesterday morning at the camp, weary and tired, but very season-
las,adj.
 ably ; immediately he gave his orders to
 begin the action, *though* he had not yet all his *pour*,p.
engager,v.
 troops. - - *Although* you have a good memory, this
 is not enough to learn any language whatever,
pour,p.
 you must make use of your judgment. - - *For all*
that she has no fortune, I do not love her the less for
 it. - - *As* zealous a friend *as* he appears, I know one
 action of his life which is neither Christian nor
 equitable. - - I lend you my violin *with a proviso* that
 you will return it to me in an hour. - - My mother
 will come to see you, *upon condition* that you promise
 me to go to the play with her. - - - I give you
 that penknife, *upon condition* that you will not make
 a bad use of it. - - I will go to London to-morrow,
provided you accompany me. - - I will write again to
 your brother to-morrow, *lest* he should not
 (present of subj.)
 have received my last letter. - - We avoided an engage-
 ment, *for fear* we should be taken, their force being

superior to ours. - - God *grant* you be not disappointed
 in your hopes ! - - *Would to God* I had been there ! I
 would have conquered or perished. - - *God forbid* I
 should blame your conduct. - - Your business never
 will be done properly, *unless* you do it yourself. - - I
 shall not go out to-day, *except* you go with me. - - -

They fought with fury on both sides,
se battre, v. *acharnement, m.*
till night came. - - I shall not set out, *till* I have
 dined. - - I am going to write, *till* we go out. - - ~~Far~~
from hating him, I wish him all kinds of prosperity.

- - I forgive you this time, *provided* you promise me
 to be lazy no more, and pay more attention to
de *faire, v.*
 what you are told. - - I will give you leave to dance,
provided you give me your word of honor
parole, f.

not to overheat yourself. - - Why did you tell
de s'échauffer, v.
 me my father was arrived, *notwithstanding* you
 knew the contrary ? - - He is so quick, that
prompt, adj.
however little he is contradicted, he (flies into a passion)
s'emporter, v.
 in an instant. - - - *However little* you give her
 she is of so good a temper, that she is always
naturel, m.

pleased. - - Can you touch it *without* my brother's content, adj.

perceiving it? - - Suppose we dine here to-day, and to-morrow at our house. - - I am *so far from* blaming you for assisting him, that, on the contrary, I very much admire your conduct. - - He is *so far from* despising her, that, on the contrary, he respects and honours her. - - It is *so far from* raining, that, on the contrary, I think we shall have dry and hot weather during all this week.

The conjunction *si*, if, instead of being repeated in a sentence, is more elegantly rendered by *que*, with the verb following it in the subjunctive mood, as, instead of saying,

<i>Si vous venez chez moi, et</i>	If you call upon me, and
<i>si vous ne me trouviez</i>	do not find me at
<i>pas,</i>	home,

It is more elegant to say,

*Si vous venez chez moi, et
que vous ne me trouviez
pas, &c.*

Que must also be repeated in the second part of a sentence, as well as the pronoun, when there is a conjunction in the first part of it; in this case *que* requires the following verb to be put in the same mood as the preceding: ex.

<i>Dès que je l'aurai vu et</i>	As soon as I have seen him
<i>que je lui aurai parlé,</i>	and spoken to him, I will
<i>je vous le ferai savoir,</i>	let you know it.
<i>Quoiqu'il soit plus riche</i>	Though he be richer than
<i>que vous, et qu'il ait de</i>	you, and have better
<i>meilleurs amis,</i>	friends.

EXERCISE ON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

If your father do not arrive to-day, and *if* you want money, I will lend you some. - - *avoir besoin de*

If you should see your sister, and speak to her, &c. - - *If* you study and take pains, I assure you that you will learn the French language in a very short time. - - *Whether* you eat or drink, sing, dance, or play, do every thing with grace and attention. - - -

If you love me, and be willing to oblige me, do not go to France with her. - - *If* men were wise, and would follow the dictates of reason, they would save themselves many sorrows. - - *If* you meet my brother, and he speak to you, do not answer. - - *So that* you saw and spoke to her. - - *Though* you have good relations,

parent, m.

your merit be known, and you do not want
 friends, your projects will not succeed without your ^{*manquer de*}
 brother's assistance. - - *As soon as* I have dressed

myself, and breakfasted, I will go to see him. - -

While you play and lose your money, your sister is
 learning her lesson. - - We must pity him who has
 no talent, and *only* despise him who has no virtue.

- - Play on the organ, *while* I read my brother's
 letter and answer him. - - *Beside* that he never

studies, and is always in the country, he has not
 so much wit as his sister. - - I will explain to you

every difficulty (*in order*) *that* you may take
 courage and learn well. - - *Though* you should have

the best master in England, and learn all the rules
 of the grammar, if you do not put them in practice,

you will never speak good French. - - - God *grant*

you may succeed in your pursuits, and obtain the
 favour you solicit so ardently! ^{*entreprise, f.*} - - - *Whether*

God raise up thrones, or pull them down;
^{*élever, v.*} ^{*abaisser, v.*} ^{*en*}

whether he communicate his power to princes,
^{*puissance, f.*}

or withdraw it to himself, and only leave them
retirer, v.

their own weakness; he teaches them their duty

in a sovereign manner. - - *Whether* you speak or
de, p.

(hold your tongue,) you will obtain nothing from
se taire, v.

me; but whatever you may say, speak *so that* you

may never offend any one. - - Your brother told me

he was young, and was* *personne* but twenty years old when

he was made a captain; I think he was better in-

formed and had more experience *than* you have. - - -

I can assure you, *that* both our officers and soldiers

have behaved nobly, and performed prædigious of

valour, *though* the enemies were superior in num-

ber, and had the advantage of the ground.

terrein

It is here necessary to observe, that verbs denoting
wish, will, command, desire, doubt, fear, ignorance, entreaty,
persuasion, pretension, surprise, &c. always require the
 conjunction *que* after them, with the following verb in
 the *subjunctive mood*.

In short, in those *dispositions* of mind where the will
 is chiefly concerned, or whenever we express a thing
 with some degree of *doubt* or *hesitation*, then the verb,
 which, in English, is put in the infinitive mood, the
 participle active, or the future tense, must, in French,
 be put in the subjunctive mood: ex.

* See the remark after the verb *être*, to be, page 174.

<i>Croyez-vous qu'il soit hon-</i>	Do you believe him to be
<i>nête ?</i>	honest ?
<i>Je doute que vous le fas-</i>	I doubt of your doing it.
<i>siez,</i>	
<i>Je ne crois pas qu'elle</i>	I do not believe she will
<i>vienne,</i>	come.

See *Falloir*, and the rules after it, page 332.

EXERCISE ON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

You wish him to pay you ; he has no money, I am obliged to lend him some every day. - - - I do not think that true philosophy may be less useful to women than men ; but I remark, that the most part of those who meddle (with it) are but very bad philosophers, without becoming better wives for it. - - I do not believe that your mother will arrive to-day. - - She wishes you may succeed in all your undertakings. - - I fear she (will go away) without speaking to me. - - - I much fear he will come sooner than you expect him. - - - Do you not say you are surprised that William has not spoken to you ever since last week. - - For my part, I am not surprised at it, for he is always pouting.

Quant à moi, boudier, v.

- - Do you think he will succeed, and obtain the place
 he aims at ? - - - You have had much trouble, and we
aspirer, v.
 all fear lest hereafter she should give you much
 (pres. of subj.)
 more. - - If you believe him to be your friend, why
 then do not you follow his advice ? - - It is necessary
 for you to go thither, and assure him, that I am very
que
 thankful for all his kindness. - - I wonder that
reconnoissant, de,
 Mr. R. has not yet asked your sister in marriage. - - -
 If you see her and she speaks to you, do not answer
 her. - - Order her to do it. - - Do you imagine
Dire, v. *s'imaginer, v.*
 we are sure they will come to-night ? - - - Do you
 think it is possible for you to (bring it about) ?
croire, v. *de,* *en venir à bout, v.*
 - - It is just we should suffer, since we deserve it. - - -
 I do not say I have seen it. - - He (was afraid) lest
craindre, v. *que*
 you should come while he was (gone out). - - -
sortir, v.
 Our master has ordered, that we should (get up) to-
se lever
 morrow morning early. - - You did not think that she
 wanted to deceive you, when she told you that.
vouloir, v.
 - - I wonder you should doubt, that it is your
être surpris, v.
 daughter who told it me. - - Do you think my mother

will let us go to the ball next week ? - - Were Mr. S. discreet and willing to undertake that affair, I would communicate it to him immediately. - - It will be better for you to go and speak to him yourself, while he is in town, because I do not doubt of his undertaking it. - - Were I certain that you would speak to him about it, I would desire him to come and dine with us to-morrow ; for I am to see him to-night at his brother's. - - I am certain that he will satisfy you : are you certain he will satisfy me ? - - - Your uncle is very glad you have written to your father. - - I am very glad to hear you have overcome ^{de} all difficulties. - - I will give you no rest, ^{sur-} *monter, v.* unless you are reconciled with your mother. - - - I ^{que ne,} do not believe it is she who has done it. - - Do you believe it ? - - My brother is not well, and I doubt very much of his coming to see us before next spring. - - Do you think he is on the road ? - - I doubt whether he will come before ^{en, p. ∞} next week. ^{suivant, adj.} - - I did not know you had studied geography so long.

It must be observed, that, after the verb *vouloir*, the verb *to have* is not expressed, but rendered in French by *que*. It must also be observed, that the sign of the future tense, *shall*, when it refers to the will of a person, and meaning, *I choose, I do not choose, do you choose, &c.* must be rendered in French by the present tense of the indicative mood of the verb *vouloir*, according to the number and person, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood : ex.

<i>Je veux qu'il fasse cela,</i>	<i>I will have him do that.</i>
<i>Je veux que vous me mon-</i> <i>triez cette lettre,</i>	<i>You shall show me that</i> <i>letter, that is to say,</i> <i>I choose you should</i> <i>show, &c.</i>
<i>Voulez-vous que je danse ?</i>	<i>Shall I dance ? that is, do</i> <i>you choose, &c.</i>

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

You would have your daughter return to-
vouloir, v. *revenir, v.*
 morrow, but that is impossible. - - I will have your
 father know what you have done : you must stay
rester, v.
 here till he comes. - - Your mother would have you
 come directly ; why do not you come then ? - - I
 absolutely intend that she shall go thither
vouloir, v.
 directly, and tell him, that, whether he be ill or
 well, I will have him set out as soon as he has re-
 ceived my letter. - - I will have you see my house,
 and tell me what you think of it. - - She shall not go
penser, v.

into the country, unless I go with her. - - - My father would have me and my brother walk all the way. - - - Your sister shall go with me to Croyden, and *faire à pied, v.* *chemin, m.* not you. - - - Your father will have you go to France in a month ; I am very glad of it, however I would not have you do things too precipitately. - - - Shall my brother show you his translation ? - - Your brother asked me whether he might go home to-morrow ; I told him he might go whenever he thought he should be wanted : but you shall remain here till you have learned all your lessons. - - - I know a gentleman who is going to Paris ; shall I tell him to call upon you ? I would not have you go to Germany without understanding French well, as that language will enable you to learn German much sooner than you expect. - - - Your brother shall not go out to-day. - - - Will you be so good as to go and carry that letter to the post ? No, I cannot leave my play. But I tell you, that you shall (go) ; I would have you pay *faire, v.* more attention to what you are told.

Qui, que, or dont, preceded by a superlative, require the following verb in the subjunctive mood, and when *qui* stands as a nominative to a verb, denoting a condition, it also requires the following verb to be put in the subjunctive mood : ex.

C'est la plus belle femme She is the handsomest
qui puisse se voir, woman that can be
 seen.

C'est le plus méchant gar- He is the most wicked
çon que je connoisse, boy that I know.

Je veux une femme qui soit I will have a wife who is
belle, handsome :

that is, I will not have any woman for a wife, but on condition she be handsome.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Do you say you are surprised, that he has not yet written to you ? I assure you it is not to be wondered at, for he is the most negligent man I know.

- - It is necessary for you to go thither, and assure him that he has done nothing that should *devoir, v.*

(make me angry). - - He is the most charitable man *fâcher, v.*

we have in this neighbourhood ; his purse is always

open to any one who is poor and industrious. - - Did

you not tell me you (sought for) a master who had *chercher, v.*

a good pronounciation, and was endowed with a

great deal of patience ? - - When a father is capable

of teaching his children, he is the best master whom

they can have. - - I know nobody that improves
more than Miss K——; and when she was learning *faire des progrès*,
French, had she learned it by rules, she would speak,
write, and translate now much better than Miss S—,
though she was two years in France. - - Has not your
brother some friends whom he can trust? - - - Your
father has bought the finest horse that I have ever *se fier, v.*
seen. - - Is there any lady that appears more reasonable
than she does? - - - If you ever choose a friend, I wish
you may choose one whom you esteem, and who
may be an honest man. - - It will be better for you to
go and speak to him yourself, instead of writing to
him, because I do not doubt of his undertaking and
(bringing about) your affair; he is the most diligent
venir à bout de
and the most careful man we have in this country. - -
Before you begin any thing of importance, consult
some body who is your friend, and on whom you can
rely. - - - Do you know any body who goes to
faire fond, v.
France? - - I have something to send to my sister. - -
If you do not follow my advice, believe me, it will

be the greatest misfortune that can happen to you.

- - Babylon was the finest city that ever was built. - -

The best reason I can *pouvoir, v.* give you is, that I

(was not well). - - If you lend me a horse, lend me
se bien porter, v.

one that goes well. - - - The God who has created us,

and who created the universe, is the only one
seul, adj.

to whom we owe homage, and the only one whom we
ought to fear.

SECT. IX.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections, as before observed, serve to express the sudden emotions of the soul.

There are several sorts, viz.

Of joy, grief, pain, admiration, aversion, silence, calling, encouraging, warning, &c. such as,

Allons, gai ! come, be cheerful !

çà, courage ! come, come on !

Bon ! good !

Ah, mon Dieu ! oh, my God !

Ah, oui-dà ! ay, marry !

Ha, quelle joie ! O, joy !

ô ciel ! O Heaven !

Fi ! fi ; fy upon !

Hola, ho ! ho there !

Hélas ! alas !

Malheur à ! wo to !

Miséricorde ! bless me !

Prenez garde, gare ! have a care !

Paix, chut, st ! hîst, hush !

Silence ! silence !

EXERCISE ON THE INTERJECTIONS.

Come, friends, let us rejoice! - - Good! here are
se réjouir, v.
 news for you, brother. - - Fy, fy! Robert, you do
 not think of what you say. - - Oh! how lovely a
penser, v. à *que*
 virtue is modesty! Why do you not endeavour to
s'efforcer, v. de
 acquire it? - - Alas! who can express the torments
 I suffer here? - - - Man without religion, never
 having his heart or mind at peace, can, alas!
esprit, m. en, p.
 be but a very unfortunate creature. - - Wo to you!
 usurers, misers, unjust possessors of (other people's)
usurier, m. *avare, m.* *autrui, pro.*
 goods, hearken to these words: The treasures
bien, m. *écouter, v.* *parole, f.*
 of iniquity (will be of no service) to you. - - - O!
ne servir de rien
 (lazy people), go to the ant, consider what she
 paresseux, fourmi, f.
 does, and learn from her, wisdom and industry. - - -
 Bless me! I am undone! - - - Hush there! silence!
perdu, p. p.
 - - - Oh! the dismal effects which laziness pro-
funeste, adj.
 duces! - - - How¹ tremendous⁶ an² office³ is⁷ that
terrible, adj. le *in*
 of⁴ a⁵ judge⁶! What wisdom, what integrity, what
 knowledge, what sagacity of mind, what experience,
science, f.
 (are required!)
ne faut-il pas avoir, v.

REMARKS AND EXERCISES ON THE WORDS *de, à, and pour.*

Having, in this manner, gone through the respective parts of speech, there will be no occasion for a syntax. It will, however, be necessary to give some rules for ascertaining the proper use of the particle *de* or *à*, and the preposition *pour*, before a verb in the infinitive mood, and then to point out, by way of exercise, some idiomatical expressions that most frequently occur in the French tongue*.

When two verbs come together in a sentence, the latter, having no subject expressed nor understood, must be put in the infinitive mood, whether the English sign *to* be prefixed or not.

In the following cases, the infinitive mood must never be preceded by a particle.

First, when the verb in the infinitive stands nominative to another verb : ex.

Aimer est un verbe, . To love is a verb.

Secondly, after the following verbs, *aller, croire, devoir, faire, il faut, savoir, valoir mieux, venir, pouvoir, oser, vouloir, and penser*, when rendered by *to be like or near*.

EXERCISES ON THIS RULE.

To know how to give seasonably is a talent every body has not. - - - To be able to live with one's self, and to know how to live with others, are the two great sciences of life. - - - I had rather do it
aimer mieux, v.

* The great number of idiomatical expressions in the French language has long been considered as an almost insuperable difficulty in the way of its easy acquirement; however, this difficulty is daily decreasing; these peculiar expressions are now giving way to a regular construction, and are very little used by the best writers.

now than later. - - Why dare you not undertake it?

I think you might succeed. - - He says he will lend
pouvoir, v. réussir, v.

you his gun with all his heart, because you know
fusil, m.

how to make use of it. - - Aristotle, though so
se servir, v.

great a philosopher, was never able to penetrate the
cause of that prodigy. - - Tell him, that he may set

out when (he pleases). - - - You never could
il lui plaira, v. pouvoir, v.

come more seasonably. - - We are to go to Vauxhall
to-morrow. - - - I am going to see your brother. - - -

(Is it not better) to set out now, than wait
Valoir mieux, v. de attendre, v.

any longer? - - - - If you think to oblige her,
plus croire, v.

you mistake. - - We were to have had a ball yester-
se tromper, v.

day, but my sister was not well. - - You did very
right, for you ought not to speak to him. - - I
bien, adv. car, c. devoir, v.

had like to have fallen twenty times coming
penser, v.

hither. - - To instruct, please, and move the passions,
are the three principal qualifications requisite in an
qualité,

orator. - - If you would read this book, I could
vouloir, v. pouvoir, v.

lend it to you for four or five days. - - - He wishes to
vouloir,

learn without taking pains.
peine, sing.

The particle *de* is put before a verb in the infinitive mood: First, when any of the following words, *of*, *from* or *with*, are used before the participle active of any verb. (See the *N. B.* upon the participle active, page 343.)

Secondly, after a noun substantive joined immediately to a verb, either without any article at all, or with the following articles, *le*, *la*, or *les*.

Thirdly, after the following adjectives, *decent*, *glad*, *impossible*, *necessary*, *sorry*, *worthy*, *vexed*, and the like.

Fourthly after the following verbs: *to advise*, *to apprehend*, *to bid*, *to cease*, *to command*, *to conjure*, *to counsel*, *to defend*, *to defer*, *to deserve*, *to desire*, *to endeavour*, *to entreat*, *to fear*, *to hasten*, *to long*, *to order*, *to permit*, *to persuade*, *to pray*, *to pretend*, *to promise*, *to propose*, *to refuse*, *to remember*, *to threaten*, *to tell*, *to warm*, *to undertake*, &c. and the greater part of the reflected verbs.

And lastly, after the conjunction *que*, preceded by the comparative degree.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

I have desired your brother, to lend me some
prier, v.

money. - - - My mother ordered me to tell you, to
ordonner, v.

go and speak to her directly. - - Did you not permit
sortir, v.

him to go out this morning? - - - I am surprised to
sortir, v.

find you so ill. - - I have not desired you to play. - -

Bid your sister to send me my book. - - - We
Dire, v. à

were afraid of displeasing you. - - - What do you

advise me to do in such a case? - - - My sister
conseiller, v.

and I intend to (call upon) you on Friday next.
passer, v. chez, p.

I am very glad to hear you are better. - - -

apprendre, v.

She does not pretend to speak French as well as
you. - - We are tired of repeating to you the same

se piquer, v.

things so often. - - If you finish your exercise soon,
you will have the pleasure of walking, while the
others will have the trouble of working. - - It is neces-

sary to tell her not to go thither (any more); for,
she would be in danger of losing her life. - - - En-

plus, adv.

deavour to please your masters by your application to
study. - - - Do not you remember having said you

à

would carry me to the camp? - - - Do not they
deserve to be encouraged, who undertake to serve

mener, v.

the public? - - - We are all glad to hear you have
overcome your enemies; we should have been sorry

to have heard the contrary. - - What a fool you are
to grieve so, when you have so much reason to

s'affliger, v.

rejoice! - - Never expect to speak French well, un-

s'attendre,

less you practice it (very much.) - - I shall never refuse
to do you a service, as long as it is in my power.

beaucoup.

- - Have you a mind to do what you have pro-

rendre, v.

envie, f.

mised me? - - I cannot give you the book you asked

me for, my brother has not (thought fit) to send
juger à propos, v.
 it me back again. - - - I desired you to bring your
 sister with you; why did you not?* - - I forbid
défendre, v.
 you to speak or write to him (any more). - - Would
davantage, adv.
 you not be very glad to read and speak Italian? - -
 - - - Condemn the opinion of no one hastily, but
 endeavour to regulate your own by the line of
s'efforcer, v.
 truth. - - - Who can hinder me from speaking or
vérité, f. empêcher, v.
 writing to her? - - (Give me leave) to tell you, that
Permettre, v.
 you do very wrong to disoblige your aunt. - - - He
mal, adv.
 (was not contented) to demolish the temple and pull
se contenter, v.
 down the statues, but, &c. - - - Is there any thing
battre, v.
 more glorious, than to change anger into friendship?
 - - - (I long) to see your mother, and tell her all
Il me tarde, v.
 that I think (about it.)
en, pro.

The particle *à* is to be placed before a verb in the infinitive mood: First, after the auxiliary verb, *avoir*, to have, immediately followed by a substantive or an adverb, expressing a futurity in the action: ex.

J'ai plusieurs lettres à écrire, I have many letters to write.

Secondly, after nouns substantive joined to the verb *avoir*, or nouns adjective joined to the verb *être*, signifying to be *addicted, apt, bent, diligent, dis-*

* *De it*, is understood, and must be expressed in French.

posed, dreadful, easy, fit, hard, inclined, quick, ready, subject, used, &c.

Thirdly, after the following adjectives, *admirable, good, dexterous, handsome, scarce, the last, the first, the second, &c.*

And, lastly, after the following verbs, *to amuse, to aspire or aim at, to begin, to condemn, to continue or go on, to compel or force, to design, or destine, to dispose, to employ or spend, to encourage, to engage, to excite, to exhort, to help, to induce, to invite, to learn, to please, to serve, to take a pleasure or delight in or to, to teach, to think, &c.*

EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING VERBS.

Come hither, Paul, I have something to communicate to you. - - We have much to fear in our present situation, and a great many hazards to run. - - - I cannot go to the play to-night; for, I have five or six visits to pay. - - - Is there any thing pleasanter

rendre, v.

to behold than the flux and reflux of the sea? - - We ought to learn how to subdue our passions,

ou

subjuguier, v.

conquer our desires, and suffer patiently the most cruel misfortunes. - - - She is always the first to

disgrâce, f.

(find fault) with what I do. - - - Do not gather

trouver à redire, à

that apple, it is not yet good to eat. - - - Mr. N. told me you had a country-house to let. - - - Mr. F. is a

louer, v.

very agreeable man, always ready to serve his friends, but he has the misfortune to be inclined to gaming.

- - - Your master does not love you, because you are not diligent in learning your lesson. - - - We had for a long time nothing to eat but the fruits which we had gathered. - - - The greatest part of men spend their time either in doing nothing, or doing what they ought not to do. - - - What you say of her is very hard
difficile, adj.
to be believed. - - - Tell him, I have no complaint to make about his conduct. - - - Why do you oblige her
de
to ask my pardon, since she is not inclined to do it herself? - - - I believe she takes a delight in tormenting me. - - - Life is so short, that we should employ all our days in preparing ourselves for the other world. - - - There is no more danger to fear. - - - Use yourself,
S'accoutumer, v.
said a father to his son, to practice virtue: that alone will help you to bear with patience all the vicissitudes of fortune. - - - Never amuse yourself in reading bad books. - - - You can never spend your time
passer, v.
better than in reading and studying the history of your own country. - - - Learn to speak well; but, above all, to speak truth. - - - That science, which teaches us to
dire, v.
see things as they are, is highly worthy of cultivation. - - - An honest man always takes pleasure in obliging his friends. - - - Does your master teach you how to translate English into French? - - - Do you begin to translate French well? - - - Why did you not oblige him to pay you what he owes you? - - - Why do you

not (get ready) to set out with us? - - - I love to
s'apprêter, v.
 discourse with polite and sensible people.
s'entretenir, v.

N. B. For the sake of euphony, the following verbs, *to begin, to continue, to constrain, to engage, to exhort, to compel or force, to endeavour, to oblige*, may be succeeded by *de*, or *à*, as most convenient.

The preposition *pour* is to be used before a verb in the infinitive mood, when it expresses the *cause*, the *design*, or the *end*, and then the English particle *to* may be expressed by *in order to, to the end, or for to*. This preposition is also used after the adverbs, *enough, on purpose, too, too much, or less*; and before an infinitive in the beginning of a period.

EXERCISE ON THESE RULES.

I will do every thing in my power to please him. - -
 Good rules are useless, if the attention, industry, and
assiduité, f.
 patience of the scholar be not put into practice to learn
 them. - - Mrs. B. has too much pride to confess she
 (is in the wrong.) - - To understand geography well, we
avoir tort,
 must, &c. - - I assure you that I came on purpose to
on
 see you. - - She will do all that is in her power to
 oblige you, and prove to you that she is truly your
 friend. - - The wicked live to die, but the righteous
 die to live. - - She has vanity enough to believe all
 you tell her. - - What makes the misfortunes of kings,
 is not to have friends bold enough to tell them the
 truth. - - I wrote to you some time ago, to let
faire, v.
 you know, that your brothers were arrived. - - - He

promised me, that he would do every thing to deserve the honour of your protection. - - - I sent yesterday my servant to your aunt's to desire her to send me back again the book I lent her a month ago, but she was not at home. - - We did all that *faire, v.* we could to pass the river, but could not (accomplish it). - - To convince you that I am ready to do *venir à bout de, v.* you any service, (be so kind as) to command me. *avoir la bonté, v.* - - Why did you not punish her for having done what you forbade her to do? - - - A man should live a century at least to know the world, and many other centuries to know how to make a proper use of that knowledge.

SECT. X.

OF IDIOMATICAL EXPRESSIONS.

ON THE VERB *AVOIR*, TO HAVE, &c.

<i>Avoir mal à la tête,</i>	{ to have the head-ach, or a pain in the head.
<i>Avoir mal aux oreilles,</i>	{ to have sore ears, or a pain in the ears.
<i>Avoir mal aux yeux,</i>	{ to have sore eyes, or a pain in the eyes.
<i>Avoir mal au nez,</i>	{ to have a sore nose, or a pain in the nose.
<i>Avoir mal à la bouche,</i>	{ to have a sore mouth, or a pain in the mouth.
<i>Avoir mal aux dents, &c.</i>	to have the tooth-ach.

We say, after the same manner,

Avoir froid aux mains, aux pieds, &c. ex.

J'ai froid à la tête, aux mains, et aux pieds, My head, my hands, and my feet, are cold.

Avoir beau, to be in vain : ex.

Vous avez beau parler, It is in vain for you to talk.

Avoir beaucoup de peine, to have much ado.

Avoir de la peine à : ex.

J'ai de la peine à vous croire, I can hardly believe you.

Avoir besoin de, to want, to have occasion for.

Avoir la bonté de (daigner), to be so kind as.

Avoir connoissance, avis de, to have notice of.

Avoir cours, to take, to be in vogue.

Avoir honte, to be ashamed.

Avoir la mine de, to be like, to look like : ex.

Vous avez la mine d'être intelligent, You look like a man of understanding.

Avoir pitié de, to pity.

Avoir part au gâteau, to share in the booty.

Avoir bonne mine : ex.

Vous avez très-bonne mine aujourd'hui, } You look very well to day.

Avoir plus de peur que de mal, to be more afraid than hurt.

Avoir raison, to be in the right.

Avoir soin, to take care.

Avoir tort, to be in the wrong.

N'avoir que faire de, { to have no occasion or business of or for.

N'avoir garde de, or } are ex- { to be sure not, or
Se garder bien de, } pressed by { by no means.

Aller son train, to go our own way.

Aller trouver quelqu'un, to go to somebody.

Venir trouver, to come to.

EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

I could not call upon him this morning, because I had a pain in my head. - - - My brother would have come with me, but he has a sore leg, and is obliged to

keep his bed. - - - I heard your mother had the tooth-ache : Is it true ? No, madam, but she has a pain in her side which prevents her from going out. - - - I have not yet finished my exercise ; for *my hands were so cold*, that I could not write another word ; besides, I *had much ado* to find my books, I did not know where to look for them. - - - *It will be in vain for you* to write to me, I never will answer you. - - - I *can hardly* believe what you tell me. - - - *It is in vain for me* to speak to her, she still goes her own way. - - - Miss N. cried very much yesterday, but I think she *was more afraid than hurt*. - - - *It has been in vain for him* to torment your sister, she never would tell him what happened to her when she was at Mr. P's. - - - *Go to him*, and tell him that, unless he returns me my books in a very short time, I will desire his father to send them to me : when you have told him that, do not wait for his answer ; *come to me immediately*, I shall be at your mother's, where I am to dine, and thence go to the play with the whole family. - - - *In vain* I give myself trouble, I am not the richer for it. - - - Your sister does not *look so well* to-day as she did yesterday. - - - *Am I not in the right* to go there no more ? - - - *I will take care* to prevent them from coming hither. - - - Believe me, I have long suspected them, and now I am very certain that both your cousins and they *have had a share in the booty*. - - - *We should often be ashamed* of our finest actions, if the

World knew all the motives which produce them. - - -
You are in the wrong not to ask for his horse, he would
 lend it to you. - - - Why should I borrow his horse,
 when I have one of my own? - - - *I have no occasion for*
 his. - - - *Be so kind as* to carry that letter to Mr. H's.
 but *be sure not* to tell him who sent you. - - - I hope
 you will *by no means* go there again, after what has hap-
 pened to you. - - - He was so altered, that she *had*
much ado to recollect him, but he now begins *to look*
very well. - - - Somebody having advised Philip, Alex-
 ander's father, to banish from his states a man who had
 spoken ill of him, *I shall by no means do it*, answered
 he, he would go every where and speak ill of me.

ON *ETRE*, TO BE.

<i>Etre</i>	{ à son aise, en bonne passe, bien dans ses affaires,	{ to be in good circum- stances.
<i>Etre bien auprès de quelqu'un,</i>	{	{ to be in great favour with some one.
<i>Etre mal avec quelqu'un,</i>	{	{ to be out of favour with some one.
<i>Etre à charge à quelqu'un,</i>	{	{ to be chargeable, trou- blesome, or a burden to some one.
<i>Etre but à but,</i>		to be equal.
<i>Etre de moitié,</i>		to go halves.
<i>Etre à la portée du fusil, du canon,</i>	{	{ to be within mus- ket-shot, gun-shot.
<i>Etre à la portée de la voix,</i>		to be within call.
<i>Etre</i>	{ à la veille de, sur le point de,	{ to be upon the brink, or very near to.
<i>Etre en état de,</i> <i>Avoir le moyen de,</i>	{	{ to afford.

EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

Your brother *is in good circumstances now*. - - -
 Somebody told me he *was in great favour with the king*. - - - Yes, it is true, but *he is out of favour with my father, because he is troublesome to the family*. - - - Well, Mr. R. and he *are equals*. - - - I thought Mr. A. and Mrs. D. *went halves* in that affair, but I heard the contrary. - - - Suffer me to tell you, you do very wrong to treat her as you do, you undoubtedly must have forgotten she *is in the queen's favour*. - - - Well, if she *be in the queen's favour*, do you imagine I am not to tell her what I think of her conduct? - - - The two fleets *were within gun-shot*, and *very near beginning the engagement*, when we left them. - - - *We will be within call*. - - - Why do you not take a coach now and then? said she to me. I would willingly take one sometimes, replied I to her, but I cannot *afford it*.



ON FAIRE, TO MAKE, OR DO.

Faire cas de, to value, to esteem.

Faire un tour de promenade, to take a walk.

Faire le malade, to sham sickness.

Faire l'école buissonnière, to play truant.

Faire beaucoup de chemin, to go a great way.

Faire le bel esprit, to set up for a wit.

Faire fond sur quelqu'un, to rely upon one.

Faire savoir, (*envoyer dire*,) $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to let one know, to inform,} \\ \text{to send word.} \end{array} \right.$

Faire voile, or $\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \text{Mettre à la voile,} \end{array} \right\} \text{to set sail.}$

Faire faire, to bespeak, to get made, to oblige one to do.

Faire de son mieux, to do our best.

Faire semblant, to pretend.

Faire de son pis, to do our worst.

Ne faire que de, to be just, or

Venir de, to have but just: ex.

Il ne fait que d'arriver, He is but just arrived.

Ne faire que, to do nothing but.

Se faire des amis, des ennemis, to get friends, enemies.

Se faire des affaires, to bring one's self into trouble.

S'en faire accroire, { to be conceited, to have a good
opinion of one's self.

C'en est fait de moi, I am undone, it is over with me.

C'en étoit fait de lui, he was undone, it was over with him.

C'en sera fait d'elle, { she will be undone, it will be over
with her.

C'en seroit fait de nous, { we should be undone, it would
be over with us.

The English verb, *to cause*, preceding the verb *to be*, immediately followed by a participle passive, is rendered in French, by the verb *faire*, and then the verb *to be* is not expressed, but the participle passive is turned into the infinitive mood: ex.

Il lui fit couper la tête, He caused his head to be cut off.

EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

Do not lose that ring, for I *value* it much; it is a particular friend of yours who gave it me. - - - I would go and *take a walk*, if I were well. - - - Do you not *sham sickness* now and then? - - - Did not your brother *play-truant* last week? - - - That man *goes a great way* for a trifle - - - Mr. P. *sets up for a wit*, wherever he goes. - - - You may *rely upon* what I tell you. - - - He succeeds better *in being conceited*, than in giving others a good opinion of himself. - - - I begin to be very much

satisfied with his brother, who now *does his best*, and will soon be able to write a French letter to his father. - - - *Let me know* whether he will pay you or not. - - - *We shall set sail* about the fifteenth of the next month. - - - Why did not you *bespeak* three or four pair of shoes more ? - - - *Send word to your brother*, or let him know, that there is a letter for him here. - - - I will give him an exercise, and *oblige him to do it* in my presence. - - - She told me if she *were obliged to do it*, she *would do her worst*. - - - She *pretends not to listen*, but I assure you she does not lose a word of what you say. - - - We were *but just* come in when it began to rain. - - - It *would have been over with us*, could the enemy have known what passed in our camp. - - - *You do nothing but play* from morning till night. - - - That young lady *will get* friends every where. - - - If you do not take care, you *will bring yourself into trouble* - - - Permit me to tell you, that they are too much conceited. - - - Your brother is *undone*, if his master come to know of it. - - - In 1606, King James caused the oath of allegiance to be drawn up ; and, in 1621, summoned a parliament, in which were formed the two parties, called Whigs and Tories.

ON DIFFERENT VERBS.

Aimer mieux, to have rather, to choose rather.

Se donner bien des airs, { to take a great deal upon
one's self.

Il ne faut pas s'étonner, it is no wonder.

Il me tarde de, I long to,

Pensér, to be like. (Followed by a verb in the infinitive mood.)

S'en prendre à, { to lay the fault or blame upon one,
to look to one for.

S'y bien prendre, or { to go the right way to
S'y prendre de la bonne façon, { work.

S'y prendre mal, to go the wrong way to work.

S'y prendre tout autrement, { to go quite a different, or
another, way to work.

Prendre en mauvaise part, to take amiss.

Venir à bout de, to bring about, to accomplish.

EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

I choose rather to set out now than later. - - - She told me she *had rather* do any thing than speak to Mr. L. - - - They *had rather* have had you stay in Italy two or three years longer. - - - Do not you think Mrs. H. *takes a great deal upon herself*? - - - *It is no wonder* that I do not speak French so well as you; you have been several years in France, and I never was there. - - - I hope your brother will succeed in his undertaking; for, he *goes the right way to work*, and I am certain that he *will bring it about*. - - - Your cousin, on the contrary, will always be poor; for, he *goes the wrong way to work* in every thing he undertakes. - - - She longs to see your father, and tell him how well you have behaved all the time of his absence. - - - I *had like* to have been killed in coming here. - - - If he lose, he *will lay the blame upon you*. - - - Why do you *lay the blame upon her*? she was not even in the room when that happened. - - - Should not your sister succeed, whom *would she lay the fault upon*? - - - You

say you *long* to speak French ; and I too, I assure you.
- - - I *long* to tell you something, nevertheless I do
not know how to communicate it to you for fear of
disobliging you. - - - When you have a mind to tell me
something disagreeable, you should go *quite a different*
way to work. - - - I beg of you not *to take amiss* what I
tell you. - - - Do not begin a thing, unless you are sure
to bring it about.

ON DIFFERENT VERBS.

Se passer de, to do without, or to be easy without.

Savoir bon gré, to take kindly of.

*Trouver mauvais que, to take ill if.**

Trouver à redire à, to find fault with.

Tenir maison, to be a house-keeper.

Tenir boutique, to be a shop-keeper.

Tenir parole, to keep our word.

Ne tenir qu'à, { to be in a person's power,
 { to lie in a person's power: ex.

Il ne tient qu'à moi, à vous, à lui, à elle, &c. It is in my, your, his, her, power, &c.

Il ne tient pas à moi, à vous, *It is not my, your, fault,*
&c. que, *&c. if.†*

S'en tenir à, to stand to.

Vouloir du bien à, to wish one well.

En vouloir à, to have a spite against.

Je souhaiterois pouvoir, I wish I could.

Il y va, il y alloit, de votre vie, your life is, was, at stake.

Il y va, il y alloit, de mon honneur, { my honor is, was,
concerned in it.

Je ne laisse pas de, I nevertheless, or for all that.

* With the following verb in the subjunctive.

t With the following verb in the subjunctive, and *ne* before it.

EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

When I have wine, I drink some ; but when I have none, I *am easy without*. - - - If you will be so kind as to write to my father, to let him know my situation, I *shall take it kindly of* you, and promise you never to *find fault with* what you may recommend to me. - - - I *wish I could* do you that service, I would do it with all my heart. - - - I hope you *will not take it ill*, if I write to your uncle at the same time. - - - I *shall stand to* what you say. - - - *He has been a house-keeper* these five and twenty years. - - - He might have succeeded much better than he has done, had he followed his uncle's advice and mine ; but he never was satisfied, and was continually *finding fault with* what we were telling him. - - - However little you send him at present, he will *take it kindly of* you. - - - *It is in her power* to live in the country, and be very happy there. - - - *It will soon lie in your power* to make us happy. - - - I assure you it *shall not be my fault*, if you do not succeed ; for I *wish you well*. - - - Since it *lies in your power* to recommend Mr. P. to your friend, why do you not do it ? - - - When you see him, you may assure him, that, since it *is in my power* to do it, I will not forget him. - - - *You have a spite against* my brother ; because *it was in his power* two or three times to oblige you, and he never would. - - - *I wish I could* persuade you how sorry he was for it ; but his honor *was concerned* in not doing it : and though you be very angry with him, he would, *nevertheless*, (or *for all that*,) do you service if it were *in his power*. - - - Had I

thought he would have refused me that favour, I never would have asked it of him ; I might very well *have done without it.* - - - You ought to have thanked him for that attention, instead of being angry with him ; but when your sisters heard that you could not obtain his leave, *they took it amiss,* and have ever since *had a spite against him.* - - - When they told me of it, I would most willingly have represented to them how much they *were in the wrong :* but I would *by no means* do it ; for I know *it is in their power* to do me a great deal of harm, and I do not wish to *get enemies.* - - - Every body admires her humanity ; for, though he has behaved in so ungrateful a manner towards her, she would, *nevertheless,* have done him service, if he had lived.

SECT. XI.

GENERAL AND PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES. OF THE UNDERSTANDING OF LANGUAGES.

The understanding of languages serves (for an) *intelligence, f.* *de* introduction to all the sciences. By it we come *parvenir, v.* with very little trouble at the knowledge of a great many fine things, which have cost those who invented them a great deal of pains. By it all times and countries lie open to us. By it *siècle, m.* *être, v.* we become, in some measure, contemporary to all

ages, and inhabitants of all kingdoms. It (enables)
mettre en état,
 us to converse with the most learned men of all
 antiquity, who seem to have lived and laboured for
 us. We find in them many masters, whom (we are
il nous
 allowed) to consult at leisure ; many friends who
est permis
 are always at hand, and whose useful and agreeable
 conversation improves the mind. It informs us of
enrichir, v.
 a thousand curious subjects, and teaches us equally
 (how to make an advantage) of the virtues and vices
à profiter, v.
 of mankind. Without the assistance of languages,
 all these oracles are dumb to us, and all these
pour, p.
 treasures (locked up;) and, for want of having the
fermer, v.
 key, which alone can open us the door (to them,) we
en, p.
 remain poor in the midst of so many riches, and
 ignorant in the midst of all the sciences.

OF STUDY.

We (come into the world) surrounded with a cloud
naître, v. *
 of ignorance, which is increased by the false pre-
 judices of a bad education. By study, the former
 is dispersed, and the latter corrected. It gives

* See the observation on the preposition *with*, page 405.

proportion and exactness to our thoughts and reasonings; instructs how to range in due order whatever we have to speak or write; and presents us with

dire, v.

the brightest sages of antiquity as patterns for our conduct, whom, in this sense, we may call, with

modèle, m.

Seneca, the masters, and teachers of mankind. But

précepteur, m.

the usefulness of study is not confined to what we call science; it renders us also more fit for business and employment; besides, though this study

de plus, adv. quand, c.

were of no other use but (the acquiring) a habit of

labour, (the softening) the pains of it, (the pro-

curing) a steadiness of mind and (conquering)

our aversions to application or a sedentary life, or whatever else seems (to lay a restraint upon) us, it

assujettir, v.

would still be of very great advantage. In reality, it draws us off from idleness, play, and debauchery.

retirer, v.

It usefully fills up the vacant hours of the day, and renders very agreeable that leisure, which, without the assistance of literature, is a kind of death, and, in a manner, the grave of a man while he is alive. It enables us to pass a right judgment upon other men's labours, to enter into society with men

† These participles active are to be rendered in French by the infinitive.

of understanding, to keep the best company,
fréquenter, v.
 (to have a share in) the discourses of the most learned,
prendre part à
 to furnish out matter for conversation, without which
quoi,
 we must be silent, to render it more agreeable and more
 useful, by intermixing facts with reflections, and setting
relever, v.
 the one by the other.

INDOLENCE CHARACTERISED.

Indolence deprives men of all that activity, which should call forth their virtues and make them illustrious. An indolent man is scarcely a man; he is half a woman. He wills and unwills in a breath. He may have good intentions to discharge a duty, while that duty is at a distance; let it but approach, let him view the time of action near, his hands immediately (drop down) in languor. What (can be done) with such a man? He is
*peut on faire, **
 absolutely good for nothing. Business tires him, reading fatigues him, the service of his country interferes too much with his pleasures, and even attendance at court, though for the time of advancement, is too great a restraint upon him. His life should be passed on a bed of down. If he be employed, moments (are as)
sembler, v.
 hours to him; if he (be amused,) hours are as
s'amuser, v.
 moments. In general, his whole time eludes him;

* See the observation on the preposition *with*, page 405.

he lets it glide unheeded, like water under
insensiblement, adv.
 a bridge. Ask him what he has done with his
 *
 morning, he knows nothing about it; for he has
matinée, f.
 lived without one reflection upon his existence. He has
 slept as long as it was possible for him to sleep, dressed
 slowly, amused himself in chat with the first person that
 called upon him, and taken several turns in his room
faire, v.
 till dinner. Dinner is served up, and the evening will
 be spent as unprofitable as the morning, and his whole
 life as this day. (Once more), such a man is good
Encore une fois, adv.
 for nothing. It is only pride that can support him in a
 life so worthless, and so much beneath the character of
 a man.



ANECDOTE OF THE CARDINAL VIVIERS.

John de Brogni, Cardinal of Viviers, who presided at the council of Constance as dean of the cardinals, had been a hog-driver in his infancy. Some monks, passing by the place where he was busied in that mean employment, and taking notice of his wit and vivacity, offered to carry him to Rome, and bring him up to study. The boy accepted of their offer, and went straight to a shoemaker to buy a pair of shoes for his journey; the shoemaker trusted him with part of the price, and told him,

smiling, he should pay him the rest when he was made a cardinal. He became a cardinal in reality, and did not forget his former low condition, but took care to perpetuate the memory of it. In a chapel he built at Geneva, over against the gate of St. Peter's church, he caused this adventure to be carved in a stone, where he is represented young and without shoes, keeping hogs under a tree, and all around the wall are the figures of shoes, to express the favour he had received from the shoemaker. This monument is still subsisting at Geneva.



FRATERNAL AFFECTION.

The king of Cucho had three sons : and, like many other parents, having most affection for the youngest, some days before his death declared him his successor, to the exclusion of his brethren. This proceeding was the more extraordinary, as it was contrary to the laws of the kingdom. The people, therefore, thought that, after the death of the king, they might, without any crime, raise the eldest son to the throne. This design was universally approved of, but the new king, calling to mind his father's last words, rejected the offer, and taking the crown, placed it on the head of his youngest brother, publicly declaring, that he renounced it, and thought himself unworthy of it, as he was excluded by his father's will, and his father could not now retract what he had done. His brother, being affected with such a generous

action, instantly entreated him not to oppose the inclination of the people, who desired him for their ruler. He urged, that he alone was the lawful successor to the crown, which he refused, and that their father could not infringe the laws of the kingdom ; that he had been betrayed by an extravagant fondness ; and that, in a word, the people had the power of redressing any breach in the established law. Nothing, however, was capable of persuading his brother to accept of the crown. There was a glorious contest between the two princes ; and, as they perceived that the dispute would be endless, they retired from court. Thus, each having both conquered and been vanquished, they went to end their days together in peaceful solitude, and left their kingdom to the other brother.



STUDY OF NATURE.

There is a study¹ of nature which requires² almost nothing but eyes, and which, on that account³ is | within the reach⁴ | of all sorts of persons, and even⁵ of children. It consists in | being mindful⁶ | of the objects⁷ which nature offers⁸ us, in considering them carefully⁹, and admiring the different beauties of them, but without searching¹⁰ in their hidden¹¹ causes, which belongs¹² to the physic¹³ of the learned.

I say that even children are capable of it : for they have eyes, and don't want¹⁴ inquisitiveness¹⁵. They |

¹ Etude ; ² demander ; ³ par cette raison ; ⁴ à la portée ; ⁵ même ; ⁶ se rendre attentif ; ⁷ objet ; ⁸ présenter ; ⁹ avec soin ; ¹⁰ approfondir ; ¹¹ secret ; ¹² être du ressort ; ¹³ physique ; ¹⁴ manquer ; ¹⁵ curiosité.

are desirous¹ | to know : they ask questions.² | One need only³ | quicken⁴, and keep up⁵ in them the desire of learning and knowing, which is natural to all men. Besides, that study, if it ought to be called so, far from being painful⁶ and tiresome⁷, offers nothing but pleasure and delight⁸. It can serve instead of,⁹ and ought commonly¹⁰ to be done by way¹¹ of, diversion¹² only.

It is | not to be conceived¹³ | how many things children could learn, if one knew how to improve¹⁴ all the opportunities¹⁵ which they themselves afford¹⁶ us. A garden, the fields¹⁷, a palace, all that is a book open for them : but they must have learnt, and be accustomed to read it. Nothing is more common among us than the use¹⁸ of bread and linen : nothing is more scarce¹⁹ than to find children who know how both the one and the other are prepared : through how many ways²⁰ and hands wheat²¹ and hemp²² must pass before they | are made²³ | bread and linen. The same must be said of woolen²⁴ stuffs,²⁵ which are but little like the fleece²⁶ of sheep²⁷ of which they are made²⁸ no more than paper²⁹ is like those linen rags³⁰ that are picked up³¹ in the streets. Why are not children acquainted³² with those marvellous³³ productions³⁴ of Nature and Art, which they every day make use of, without minding³⁵ them ?

The following examples will serve to shew³⁶ how we ought to study Nature in all that offers itself³⁷ to our eyes and ascend³⁸ from³⁹ her to the Creator. I shall confine myself⁴⁰ to what concerns⁴¹ plants⁴² and animals.

The first Preacher⁴³ that proclaimed⁴⁴ the glory of the supreme God is the sky,⁴⁵ where the sun, the moon, and

- 1 Vouloir ; 2 interroger ; 3 il ne faut que ; 4 réveiller ; 5 entretenir ; 6 pénible ; 7 ennuyeux ; 8 agrément ; 9 tenir lieu ; 10 ordinairement ; 11 en jouant and 12 récréation, (*but this last word must come after tenir lieu, and the sentence end with en jouant*) ; 13 inconceivable ; 14 profiter ; 15 occasion ; 16 fournir ; 17 une campagne ; 18 usage ; 19 rare ; 20 façon ; 21 blé ; 22 chanvre ; 23 devenir ; 24 laine ; 25 étoffe ; 26 toison ; 27 brebis ; 28 former ; 29 papier ; 30 chiffon ; 31 ramasser ; 32 instruit ; 33 merveilleux ; 34 ouvrage ; 35 faire réflexion à ; 36 montrer ; 37 se présenter ; 38 remonter ; 39 par ; 40 borner ; 41 regarder ; 42 plante ; 43 Prédicateur ; 44 annoncer ; 45 firmament.

the stars¹ shine forth² with so much brightness³: and that book written in characters⁴ of light⁵ is sufficient⁶ to make all men inexcusable.⁷ But the divine Wisdom is no less admirable⁸ in its least productions⁹ wherein it has been pleased¹⁰, | if one may say so¹¹, | to make itself more accessible¹², and wherein it seems to invite us to consider it nearer¹³, without fearing to be dazzled¹⁴ by it.

PLANTS.

There is in the most seemingly¹⁵ despicable¹⁶ where-with¹⁷ to astonish¹⁸ the most sublime¹⁹ minds,²⁰ which nevertheless²¹ cannot see but the most coarse²² organs²³ of them, and to which the whole secret of the life, nourishment²⁴, and propagation²⁵, remains²⁶ unknown²⁷. Not one leaf²⁸ is neglected²⁹ in them. Order and symmetry³⁰ are obvious³¹ in every thing: and that with so prodigious³² a quantity³³ of pinking,³⁴ ornaments³⁵ and beauties, that none is exactly³⁶ like another.

What is not discovered by the help³⁷ of mycrosopes³⁸ in the smallest seeds³⁹! But how much virtue and efficacy⁴⁰ has God put in them by one single⁴¹ word, by which he seems to have given plants a sort of immortality! *Let the earth bring forth⁴² grass⁴³, and the herb⁴⁴ yielding⁴⁵ seed⁴⁶, &c.*

Is there any thing that deserves⁴⁷ more our admiration, than the choice⁴⁸ which God has made of the general colour, that beautifies⁴⁹ all plants! If he had died⁵⁰ in white or scarlet⁵¹ all the fields⁵², who could have been able to bear⁵³ either the brightness⁵⁴ or harshness⁵⁵ of

¹Etoile; ²briller; ³éclat; ⁴caractère; ⁵lumière; ⁶il ne faut que, (beginning the sentence); ⁷inexcusable; ⁸admirable; ⁹ouvrage; ¹⁰vouloir; ¹¹pour ainsi dire; ¹²accessible; ¹³de plus près; ¹⁴ébloui; ¹⁵en aparence; ¹⁶méprisable; ¹⁷de quoi; ¹⁸étonner; ¹⁹sublime; ²⁰esprit; ²¹néanmoins; ²²grossier; ²³organe; ²⁴nouriture; ²⁵multiplication; ²⁶demeurer; ²⁷inconnu; ²⁸feuille; ²⁹négligé; ³⁰symétrie; ³¹sensible; ³²prodigieux; ³³fécondité; ³⁴découpure; ³⁵ornement; ³⁶parfaitement; ³⁷secours; ³⁸microscope; ³⁹graine; ⁴⁰éfficace; ⁴¹seul; ⁴²produire; ⁴³son jet; ⁴⁴herbe; ⁴⁵porter; ⁴⁶sa semence; ⁴⁷digne; ⁴⁸choix; ⁴⁹embellir; ⁵⁰teindre; ⁵¹rouge; ⁵²campagne; ⁵³soutenir; ⁵⁴éclat; ⁵⁵durété.

them? If he had darkened¹ them with more dusky² colours, who | could have taken a delight³ | in so sad⁴ and so melancholy⁵ a prospect⁶? A pleasant⁷ verdure⁸ keeps⁹ a medium¹⁰ between these two extremes¹¹, and it has such an affinity¹² with the frame¹³ of the eye, that it is diverted¹⁴ instead of strained¹⁵ by it, and it is rather¹⁶ sustained¹⁷ and nourished¹⁸ than wasted¹⁹. But what was thought at first²⁰ to be but one colour, is such a diversity of hues²¹ as astonishes²². 'Tis green every where, but 'tis no where the same. Not one plant is coloured²³ like another: and that surprising²⁴ variety, which no art can imitate²⁵ is again diversified²⁶ in each plant, which is in its origin²⁷, its progress²⁸ and maturity²⁹ of a different sort of green.

I transport³⁰ myself | in thought³¹ | into blossomed³² fields³³ or into a garden well look'd after³⁴. What an enamel³⁵! What colours! What riches! But what an harmony³⁶, and what sweetness³⁷ in their mixture³⁸ and the shadowing³⁹ that tempers⁴⁰ them! What a picture⁴¹, and by what a master! But let us pass from this general view⁴² to the consideration of any particular flower⁴³, and pick up⁴⁴, at random⁴⁵, the first that offers to⁴⁶ our hand, without troubling ourselves⁴⁷ with chusing⁴⁸.

It is just blown⁴⁹, and has still all its freshness⁵⁰, and brightness⁵¹. Are there so lively⁵², and at the same time so sweet colours⁵³ among men! Could ever art invent⁵⁴ stuffs as thin⁵⁵ and of as smooth⁵⁶ and nice⁵⁷ a texture⁵⁸? Bring near⁵⁹ the leaves which I hold,⁶⁰ Solomon's purple⁶¹ itself. What a course⁶² haircloth⁶³ to them!⁶⁴

¹ Obscurcir; ² sombre; ³ faire ses délices; ⁴ triste; ⁵ lugubre; ⁶ vûe; ⁷ agréable; ⁸ verdure; ⁹ tenir; ¹⁰ milieu; ¹¹ extrémité; ¹² rapport; ¹³ structure; ¹⁴ délasser; ¹⁵ tendre; ¹⁶ plutôt; ¹⁷ soutenir; ¹⁸ nourrir; ¹⁹ épuiser; ²⁰ d'abord; ²¹ teinture; ²² étonner; ²³ coloré; ²⁴ surprenant; ²⁵ imiter; ²⁶ se diversifier; ²⁷ origine; ²⁸ progrès; ²⁹ maturité; ³⁰ se transporter; ³¹ par la pensée; ³² fleuri; ³³ compagne; ³⁴ cultivé; ³⁵ émail; ³⁶ harmonie; ³⁷ douceur; ³⁸ mélange; ³⁹ nuances; ⁴⁰ tempérer; ⁴¹ tableau; ⁴² vûe; ⁴³ fleur; ⁴⁴ cueillir; ⁴⁵ au hasard; ⁴⁶ tomber sous; ⁴⁷ se mettre en peine; ⁴⁸ choix; ⁴⁹ éclore; ⁵⁰ fraîcheur; ⁵¹ éclat; ⁵² vif; ⁵³ teinture; ⁵⁴ inventer; ⁵⁵ délié; ⁵⁶ uni; ⁵⁷ délicat; ⁵⁸ tissu; ⁵⁹ approcher; ⁶⁰ tenir; ⁶¹ pourpre; ⁶² grossier; ⁶³ cilice; ⁶⁴ en comparaison.

What a ruggedness¹, what breaking off² in the texture, what a difference in the colouring³ !

TREES AND FRUITS.

So far⁴ we have considered⁵ the earth only as a meadow⁶. Now⁷ it shews itself⁸ to us like a rich orchard⁹, filled¹⁰ with all sorts of fruit, which succeed¹¹ one another according to the seasons¹².

I observe¹³ one of those trees bowing¹⁴ its branches¹⁵ | down to the ground¹⁶, | bent¹⁷ under the weight¹⁸ of excellent fruit, whose colour and smell¹⁹ declare²⁰ the taste²¹, and at the quantity²² whereof I am amazed²³. Methinks²⁴ that tree says to me by that glory²⁵ it displays²⁶ to my eyes : Learn of me what is the goodness and magnificence²⁷ of the God who has made me²⁸ for you. 'Tis neither for him, nor for myself, I am so rich. He has need of nothing, and I cannot use²⁹ what he has given me. Bless³⁰ him, and unload³¹ me. Give him thanks ; and since he has made me the instrument³² of your delight³³, become³⁴ that of my gratitude³⁵.

I think³⁶ I hear the same invitations³⁷ from all sides³⁸ : and as³⁹ I walk on,⁴⁰ I always find out new subjects of praises⁴¹ and wonder,⁴² for 'tis a new kind⁴³ at every step⁴⁴. Here the fruit is hid⁴⁵ within⁴⁶ : there 'tis the kernel⁴⁷ that is in the inside⁴⁸ : and a delicate pulp⁴⁹ shines⁵⁰ outwardly⁵¹ with the most lively colours. This fruit sprung⁵² out of a blossom⁵³, as almost all do : but this other so delicious was not preceded⁵⁴ by the blossom, and it shoots⁵⁵ out of the very⁵⁶ bark⁵⁷ of the

¹Rudesse ; ²interruption ; ³coloris ; ⁴jusqu'ici ; ⁵regarder ; ⁶prairie ; ⁷maintenant ; ⁸se montrer ; ⁹verger ; ¹⁰rempli ; ¹¹succéder ; ¹²saison ; ¹³considérer ; ¹⁴porter ; ¹⁵branche ; ¹⁶jusqu'en terre ; ¹⁷courbé ; ¹⁸poids ; ¹⁹odeur ; ²⁰annoncer ; ²¹goût ; ²²abondance ; ²³étonner ; ²⁴il me semble ; ²⁵pompe ; ²⁶étaler ; ²⁷magnificence ; ²⁸former ; ²⁹user ; ³⁰bénir ; ³¹décharger ; ³²ministre ; ³³délices ; ³⁴devenir ; ³⁵reconnaissance ; ³⁶il me semble ; ³⁷invitation ; ³⁸de toutes parts ; ³⁹à mesure que ; ⁴⁰s'avancer ; ⁴¹louange ; ⁴²admiration ; ⁴³espèce ; ⁴⁴pas ; ⁴⁵caché ; ⁴⁶au dedans ; ⁴⁷amande ; ⁴⁸intérieur ; ⁴⁹chair ; ⁵⁰briller ; ⁵¹au dehors ; ⁵²venir ; ⁵³deur ; ⁵⁴précédé ; ⁵⁵naître ; ⁵⁶même ; ⁵⁷écorder.

tree¹. The one begins the summer², the other finishes it. If this is not soon³ gathered⁴ it | falls down⁵ | and withers⁶ : if you don't wait⁷ for that, it will never ripen⁸. This keeps⁹ long¹⁰ : that goes away¹¹ swiftly¹². The one refreshes¹³ : the other nourishes¹⁴.

Among¹⁵ fruit trees¹⁶, some bear¹⁷ fruit in two seasons of the year, and others unite¹⁸ together both the different seasons, and even the years : bearing young¹⁹ blossoms, green fruit, and ripe fruit | all at once²⁰ ; | to evince²¹ the sovereign²² liberty of the Creator, who in diversifying²³ the laws of Nature, shews²⁴ that he is the master of it, and can at all times, and with all things, do equally what he pleases²⁵.

I observe²⁶ that weak²⁷ trees, or of an indifferent²⁸ pitch²⁹, are those that bear the most exquisite³⁰ fruit. The higher³¹ they grow³² the less rich they seem³³ to me ; and their fruit | is the less fit³⁴ | for me. The other trees which bear nothing but leaves, or bitter³⁵ and very small fruit, are nevertheless very useful³⁶ for building³⁷ and navigation³⁸.

If we had not seen trees of the height and bigness³⁹ of those that are in some forests, we could not believe that some drops⁴⁰ of rain⁴¹ fallen from heaven were capable to nourish them. For | there is need⁴² of | a juice⁴³, not only very plentiful⁴⁴, but full of spirit⁴⁵ and salts⁴⁶ of all kinds⁴⁷ to give the root⁴⁸, the trunk⁴⁹, and branches⁵⁰ the strength and vigour⁵¹ which we admire in them. It is even remarkable⁵² that the more neglected those trees are, the handsomer they grow⁵³ : and that if men applied themselves to cultivate⁵⁴ them, as

1 Arbre ; 2 été ; 3 promptement ; 4 cueillir ; 5 tomber ; 6 se fêtrir ; 7 attendre ; 8 avoir de la maturité ; 9 se garder ; 10 long-tems ; 11 passer ; 12 avec rapidité ; 13 rafraichir ; 14 fortifier ; 15 entre ; 16 fertile ; 17 porter ; 18 unir ; 19 naissant ; 20 tout à la fois ; 21 montrer ; 22 souverain ; 23 diversifier ; 24 faire voir ; 25 plaire ; 26 observer ; 27 foible ; 28 médiocre ; 29 taille ; 30 exquis ; 31 plus ; 32 s'élever ; 33 paroître ; 34 convenir ; 35 amer ; 36 utile ; 37 édifices ; 38 navigations ; 39 grosseur ; 40 goutte ; 41 pluie ; 42 il faut ; 43 suc ; 44 abondant ; 45 esprit ; 46 sel ; 47 espèce ; 48 racine ; 49 tronc ; 50 branche ; 51 vigueur ; 52 remarquable ; 53 devenir ; 54 cultiver.

they do the small trees of their gardens, | they would rather hurt¹ them. | You thereby, O Lord, preserve² a proof³ that 'tis you alone have made⁴ them: and you learn man that his cares⁵ and industry⁶ are useless⁷ to you; and that if you require⁸ them for some shrubs⁹, 'tis to employ¹⁰ him, and warn¹¹ him of his own weakness¹² in trusting¹³ weak things only to his care.

FISHES.

With what a deal¹⁴ of fishes¹⁵ of all sizes¹⁶ do the waters teem¹⁷! I consider¹⁸ all these creatures, and see, methinks¹⁹, that they have nothing but a head and a tail²⁰. They have neither feet²¹ nor arms. Even their head has no free movement²²: and, if I attended²³ to their figure only, I should think²⁴ them deprived²⁵ of all that is necessary for the preservation²⁶ of their life. But with so few exterior²⁷ organs²⁸, they are more nimble²⁹, more swift³⁰, and more | artful and cunning³¹, | than if they had many hands and feet: and the use they make of their tail and fins³², shoots³³ them forward like arrows³⁴ and seems to make them fly³⁵.

How | comes it to pass³⁶ | that in the middle³⁷ of waters, so much impregnated³⁸ with salt that I cannot bear³⁹ a drop⁴⁰ of them in my mouth, fishes live, and enjoy a perfect strength⁴¹ and health? And how, in the middle of salt, do they keep⁴² a flesh that has not the taste of it?

Why do the best, and most fit for the use of man, come near⁴³ the coasts⁴⁴, to offer themselves, it seems, to

¹ Ils ne feroient que leur nuire; ² conserver; ³ preuve; ⁴ former; ⁵ soin; ⁶ industrie; ⁷ inutile; ⁸ exiger; ⁹ arbrisseau; ¹⁰ occuper; ¹¹ avertir; ¹² foiblesse; ¹³ confier; ¹⁴ foule; ¹⁵ poisson; ¹⁶ grandeur; ¹⁷ enfanter; ¹⁸ examiner; ¹⁹ ce me semble; ²⁰ queue; ²¹ pié; ²² mouvement; ²³ être attentif; ²⁴ croire; ²⁵ privé; ²⁶ conservation; ²⁷ extérieur; ²⁸ organe; ²⁹ agile; ³⁰ prompt; ³¹ rempli d'artifices; ³² nageoire; ³³ pousser; ³⁴ trait; ³⁵ voler; ³⁶ arriver; ³⁷ milieu; ³⁸ chargé; ³⁹ souffrir; ⁴⁰ goutte; ⁴¹ vigueur; ⁴² conserver; ⁴³ s'approcher; ⁴⁴ côte.

him, whilst a great many others, useless¹ to him, affect² to keep off³ ?

Why do those that keep⁴ in unknown⁵ places, whilst they | were propagating⁶ | and growing⁷ to a certain size,⁸ as herrings,⁹ mackarel¹⁰, cods¹¹, &c. come in shoals¹² at an appointed¹³ time, to invite the fisherman¹⁴, and throw themselves | as it were¹⁵ | of their own accord¹⁶, into their nets¹⁷ and boats¹⁸ ?

Why are several of them, and of the best kinds¹⁹, eager²⁰ to get²¹ into the mouth²² of rivers²³, and come up²⁴ to | their fountain-head²⁵ | to communicate the benefits²⁶ of the sea to the countries which are distant²⁷ from it? And what hand directs²⁸ them with so much care and bounty for men, but your's, O Lord, although so obvious²⁹ a Providence³⁰ seldom³¹ engages³² their gratitude³³.

BIRDS.

We see in several | dumb creatures³⁴ | an imitation of reason which astonishes: but it appears | no where³⁵ | in a more sensible manner than in the industry of birds in making their nests³⁶.

In the first place³⁷, what master has learnt them that they had need of any? Who has taken care to forewarn³⁸ them to get them ready³⁹ | in time⁴⁰ | and not to be prevented⁴¹ | by necessity? Who has told them how they must be contrived⁴²? What Mathematician has given them the plan⁴³ of them? What Architect⁴⁴ has directed⁴⁵ them to chuse a firm⁴⁶ place, and build upon a solid⁴⁷ foundation⁴⁸? What tender⁴⁹ mother has advised⁵⁰ them to line⁵¹ the bottom⁵² of them with so soft⁵³ and

¹inutile ; ²affecter ; ³s'éloigner ; ⁴se tenir ; ⁵inconnu ; ⁶se multiplier ; ⁷acquérir ; ⁸grandeur ; ⁹hareng ; ¹⁰maquereau ; ¹¹morue ; ¹²soule ; ¹³marqué ; ¹⁴pêcheur ; ¹⁵pour ainsi dire ; ¹⁶d'eux mêmes ; ¹⁷filet ; ¹⁸barque ; ¹⁹espèce ; ²⁰to be eager is s'empresser ; ²¹entrer ; ²²embouchure ; ²³fleuve ; ²⁴remonter ; ²⁵source ; ²⁶avantage ; ²⁷éloigné ; ²⁸conduire ; ²⁹visible ; ³⁰Providence ; ³¹rarement ; ³²attirer ; ³³reconnaissance ; ³⁴animal ; ³⁵nulla pars ; ³⁶nid ; ³⁷lieu ; ³⁸avertir ; ³⁹préparer ; ⁴⁰à temps ; ⁴¹se laisser prévenir ; ⁴²construire ; ⁴³figure ; ⁴⁴Architecte ; ⁴⁵enseigner ; ⁴⁶forme ; ⁴⁷solide ; ⁴⁸fondement ; ⁴⁹tendre ; ⁵⁰conseiller ; ⁵¹couvrir ; ⁵²fond ; ⁵³mou.

nice matter¹ as down² and cotton³ ? And when these are wanting, who has prompted⁴ them that ingenious⁵ charity which makes them pluck⁶ out of their breasts⁷ with their bill,⁸ as much down as is requisite, to prepare a convenient⁹ cradle¹⁰ for their young ones¹¹ ?

In the second place, what wisdom has traced out¹² to each kind¹³ a particular¹⁴ way of making their nests, where the same precautions were kept¹⁵, but in a thousand different ways¹⁶ ? who has commanded the swallow¹⁷, the most industrious¹⁸ of all birds, to come near man, and chuse his house to build¹⁹ her nest before²⁰ his eyes, without fearing to have him for a witness, and seeming²¹ on the contrary to invite him to consider her works²². 'Tis not with small sprigs²³ and hay²⁴ that she builds, as the others do. She uses²⁵ cement²⁶ and mortar²⁷, and in so solid a manner that | her work cannot be demolished without some might and main²⁸. | Yet she has no other instrument²⁹ but her bill. She has nothing wherewith³⁰ to draw up³¹ water. She can only wet³² her breast, in keeping³³ her wings³⁴ up³⁵. And 'tis with the dew³⁶ which she sprinkles³⁷ the mortar with, she dilutes³⁸ and moistens³⁹ her masonry⁴⁰ which she afterwards disposes⁴¹ and sets in order⁴² with her bill. Reduce⁴³, if it is possible, the most ingenious⁴⁴ Architect to the small compass⁴⁵ of this swallow : | with all his learning leave him a bill only to work with⁴⁶, | and see if he will have the same dexterity⁴⁷, and the same success⁴⁸.

In the third place, who has made all the birds understand that they were to hatch⁴⁹ their eggs⁵⁰ in sitting over⁵¹ them ? That this was an indispensable⁵² necessity ; that both the father and mother could not

¹Matière ; ²duvet ; ³coton ; ⁴suggérer ; ⁵ingénieux ; ⁶s'arracher ; ⁷estomac ; ⁸bec ; ⁹commode ; ¹⁰berceau ; ¹¹petit ; ¹²marquer ; ¹³espèce ; ¹⁴manière ; ¹⁵observé ; ¹⁶façon ; ¹⁷hirondelle ; ¹⁸adroit ; ¹⁹édifier ; ²⁰à ; ²¹paroître ; ²²travail ; ²³branchage ; ²⁴soin ; ²⁵employer ; ²⁶ciment ; ²⁷mortier ; ²⁸il faut une espèce d'effort pour démolir son ouvrage ; ²⁹instrument ; ³⁰où ; ³¹puiser ; ³²mouiller ; ³³tenir ; ³⁴aile ; ³⁵élevé ; ³⁶rosée ; ³⁷faire rejaillir sur ; ³⁸détremper ; ³⁹humecter ; ⁴⁰maçonnerie ; ⁴¹ordonner ; ⁴²arranger ; ⁴³réduire ; ⁴⁴habile ; ⁴⁵volume ; ⁴⁶conservez lui toutes ses connoissances en ne lui laissant que le bec ; ⁴⁷adresse ; ⁴⁸succès ; ⁴⁹faire éclore ; ⁵⁰oeuf ; ⁵¹couver ; ⁵²indispensable.

quit together¹ ; and that if one | went in quest² | of food³, the other was | to stay for⁴ | his return? Who has set⁵ them in the calander⁶ the precise⁷ number of the days of this rigorous⁸ attendance⁹? Who has told them to help out¹⁰ of the egg the young one already formed, by breaking first the shell¹¹? And who has so exactly¹² acquainted¹³ them with the moment, that they never prevent¹⁴ it.

Lastly¹⁵, who has made lectures¹⁶ to all birds concerning the care which they were to take of their young ones, till they were brought up¹⁷ and fit¹⁸ to shift for themselves¹⁹? Who has taught them that wonderful²⁰ industry to keep²¹ in their throat²², either the food²³ or water, without swallowing²⁴ them, and preserve²⁵ them for their young ones, to which this first preparation²⁶ serves²⁷ instead of milk? Who has made them discern²⁸ so many things, of which some suit²⁹ with one kind³⁰ but are pernicious to another: and between those which are proper for the old ones³¹, but would be hurtful³² to the young? Who has made them discern those which are wholesome³³? We know the tenderness³⁴ of mothers among men, and the anxiety³⁵ of nurses³⁶ but I don't know whether we see any thing so perfect.

Is it for birds, O Lord, that thou hast united³⁷ so many miracles³⁸ which they are not sensible of³⁹? Is it for | curious people⁴⁰ | who are contented to admire them, without ascending⁴¹ to thee? And is it not obvious⁴² that thy design was to call us⁴³ to thee by such a spectacle⁴⁴ to make us sensible of thy providence and infinite wisdom, and to fill⁴⁵ us with trust⁴⁶ in thy goodness?

Some of these young ones are exceeding beautiful, and

¹En même tems ; ²aller chercher ; ³nouriture ; ⁴attendre ; ⁵marquer ; ⁶calendrier ; ⁷précis ; ⁸rigoureux ; ⁹assiduité ; ¹⁰aider à sortir ; ¹¹coque ; ¹²exactement ; ¹³instruit ; ¹⁴prévenir ; ¹⁵enfin ; ¹⁶leçon ; ¹⁷élevé ; ¹⁸en état ; ¹⁹se servir eux-mêmes ; ²⁰merveilleux ; ²¹retenir ; ²²gorge ; ²³aliment ; ²⁴avaler ; ²⁵conserver ; ²⁶préparation ; ²⁷tenir lieu ; ²⁸discerner ; ²⁹convenir ; ³⁰espèce ; ³¹pères ; ³²faire tort ; ³³salutaire ; ³⁴tendresse ; ³⁵sollicitude ; ³⁶nourrice ; ³⁷unir ensemble ; ³⁸miracle ; ³⁹connoître ; ⁴⁰des curieux ; ⁴¹remonter ; ⁴²visible ; ⁴³rapeller ; ⁴⁴spectacle ; ⁴⁵remplir ; ⁴⁶confiance.

nothing is richer or more diversified¹ than heir feathers². But one must own that all finery³ must yield⁴ to that of the peacock,⁵ on which God | with a liberal hand⁶ | has poured forth⁷ all the riches that embellish⁸ the others, and on which he has lavished,⁹ with gold and azure¹⁰, all the shadowing¹¹ of colour. This bird seems¹² | to be sensible¹³ of | its preference¹⁴. And 'tis, it seems, to display¹⁵ all its beauties to our eyes, that | it spreads that glorious tail¹⁶, | which | puts them beyond all dispute¹⁷. | But the most magnificent of all birds has nothing but a disagreeable¹⁸ voice¹⁹: and it is a proof that with a very shining²⁰ outside²¹, one may have nothing but a wicked heart²², little gratitude, and much vanity.

It is not necessary to shew how these | physical observations²³, | and a great many²⁴ others of the like²⁵ nature, are capable of adorning²⁶ and enriching²⁷ a youth's²⁸ mind: making him attentive to the effects of Nature, which are before our eyes, and offer themselves²⁹ to us every minute³⁰ almost, without our taking notice of them³¹: of learning him a thousand curious things concerning the Sciences, Arts, and Trade, as Chemistry³², Anatomy³³, Botany³⁴, Drawing³⁵, Navigation, Printing³⁶, &c. | of giving him a taste³⁷ | for gardening³⁸, for trees, the country, and walking³⁹, which is not a thing indifferent: of enabling⁴⁰ him | to bear a part agreeably in conversation⁴¹, | and not to be reduced either | to keep silent⁴² | or not to know what to speak, but trifles⁴³.

HISTORY.

'Tis not without reason History has always been looked upon⁴⁴ as the light⁴⁵ of times, the repository⁴⁶ of

¹Diversifié ; ²plumage ; ³parure ; ⁴céder ; ⁵Paon ; ⁶comme à pleines mains ; ⁷verser ; ⁸embellir ; ⁹prodiguer ; ¹⁰azur ; ¹¹nuance ; ¹²paraître ; ¹³sentir ; ¹⁴avantage ; ¹⁵étaler ; ¹⁶il fait cette pompeuse rouë ; ¹⁷mettre en évidence ; ¹⁸désagréable ; ¹⁹cri ; ²⁰brillant ; ²¹extérieur ; ²²fond ; ²³observation physique ; ²⁴infinité ; ²⁵pareil ; ²⁶orner ; ²⁷enrichir ; ²⁸jeune homme ; ²⁹se présenter ; ³⁰moment ; ³¹faire réflexion à ; ³²Chimie ; ³³Anatomie ; ³⁴Botanique ; ³⁵Peinture ; ³⁶Imprimerie ; ³⁷donner du goût ; ³⁸jardinage ; ³⁹promenade ; ⁴⁰mettre en état ; ⁴¹fournir agréablement à la conversation ; ⁴²garder le silence ; ⁴³bagatelle ; ⁴⁴regarder ; ⁴⁵lumière ; ⁴⁶dépositaire.

events¹, the faithful² witness³ of truth, the source of good counsel and prudence, the rule of conduct and manners⁴. Without it, being confined⁵ within the bounds⁶ of the age and country wherein we live, contracted⁷ in the narrow compass⁸ of our particular knowledge⁹ and reflections, we always continue¹⁰ in a sort¹¹ of infancy¹², which leaves us¹³ strangers¹⁴ to the rest of the universe¹⁵, and in a deep ignorance of all that has past¹⁶ before us and surrounds¹⁷ us. What is that few number of years which make up¹⁸ the longest life? What is the | tract of land¹⁹ | we can inhabit²⁰ or run over²¹ upon the earth, but an imperceptible²² point²³ with respect²⁴ to those vast²⁵ regions²⁶ of the universe, and that long series²⁷ of ages which have succeeded one another from the beginning of the world? Yet 'tis to that imperceptible point our knowledge is limited²⁸, if we don't call to our assistance²⁹ the study of history, which lays all ages and countries open³⁰ to us: makes us enter into a correspondence³¹ with all the great men that antiquity³² ever produced³³, sets³⁴ all their virtues and vices before our eyes: and by the wise reflections it affords³⁵ us, or suggests³⁶ to us, procure us, in a short time, an anticipated³⁷ prudence, much superior to the lessons of the ablest³⁸ masters.

History may be said to be the common school of mankind³⁹; equally open and useful both to high⁴⁰ and low⁴¹, princes and subjects, and still more necessary to princes and the great than to others. For how, through the crowd⁴² of flatterers⁴³ who beset⁴⁴ them on all sides⁴⁵, and never cease to praise and admire them, that is to say, to corrupt them, and infect their⁴⁶ mind and heart; how, I say, will timorous⁴⁷ truth be able to approach

¹Evènement; ²fidèle; ³témoin; ⁴mœurs; ⁵renfermer; ⁶borne; ⁷resserré; ⁸cercle; ⁹connoissances; ¹⁰demeurer; ¹¹espèce; ¹²enfance; ¹³laisser; ¹⁴étranger; ¹⁵univers; ¹⁶précéder; ¹⁷environner; ¹⁸composer; ¹⁹étendue de pays; ²⁰occuper; ²¹parcourir; ²²imperceptible; ²³point; ²⁴à l'égard de; ²⁵vaste; ²⁶région; ²⁷suite; ²⁸se borner; ²⁹secours; ³⁰to lay open, ouvrir; ³¹commerce; ³²antiquité; ³³produced is made by were in French; ³⁴mettre; ³⁵fournir; ³⁶donner lieu de faire; ³⁷anticipé; ³⁸habile; ³⁹genre humain; ⁴⁰grand; ⁴¹petit; ⁴²foule; ⁴³flatteur; ⁴⁴assiéger; ⁴⁵de toutes parts; ⁴⁶empoisonner; ⁴⁷timide.

them, and raise¹ its weak voice, in the midst² of that tumult³, and confused⁴ noise⁵? How | will it make bold⁶ | to shew them the duties and slavery⁷ of royalty⁸, make them understand⁹ wherein¹⁰ their true glory consists; represent to them that if they | will be pleased¹¹ | to trace their institution back to its origin¹², they will plainly¹³ see that they are for the people, and not the people for them; tell them of their faults; make them fear the just judgment of posterity; and dispel¹⁴ the thick cloud¹⁵ formed round¹⁶ them by the vain phantom¹⁷ of their greatness, and the intoxication¹⁸ of their fortune.

These so important and so necessary services it cannot render them but by the help¹⁹ of history, which alone is in possession of the liberty to speak to them freely²⁰, and carry that right so far as²¹ | to judge | without further appeal²² | of the actions of kings themselves, as well as fame²³, which Seneca calls *the most unbiassed*²⁴ judge of princes. In vain²⁵ are their endowments²⁶ cried up²⁷, their parts²⁸ and courage admired, their achievements²⁹ and conquests³⁰ extolled³¹: if all that is not founded on truth and justice, history secretly | arraigns and condemns³² | them under borrowed³³ names. It makes them look upon the generality³⁴ of the most famous conquerors³⁵ but as public scourges³⁶, enemies to mankind, robbers³⁷ of nations, who being impelled³⁸ by a restless³⁹ and blind⁴⁰ ambition, carry desolation from country⁴¹ to country, and, like an inundation or conflagration⁴², lay waste⁴³ all that they meet with⁴⁴. It sets⁴⁵ before their eyes a Caligula, a Nero, a Domitian, loaded⁴⁶ with praises during their life, become, after their

1Faire entendre; 2au milieu; 3tumulte; 4confus; 5bruit; 6oser; 7servitude; 8royauté; 9entendre; 10en quoi; 11vouloir bien; 12remonter jusqu'à l'origine de leur institution; 13clairement; 14dissiper; 15nuage; 16au tour de; 17fantôme; 18enivrement; 19secours; 20avec liberté, *and the liberty, coming before, is left out*; 21jusqu'à; 22souverainement et sans appel; 23renommée; 24intègre; 25on a beau; 26talent; 27faire valoir; 28esprit; 29exploit; 30conquête; 31vanter; 32faire le procès; 33emprunté; 34la plupart; 35conquérant; 36fléau; 37brigand; 38poussé; 39inquiet; 40aveugle; 41contrée; 42incendie; 43ravager; 44rencontrer; 45mettre; 46comblé.

death, the horror¹ and execration of mankind : whereas Titus, Trajan, Antonin, Marcus Aurelius, are still looked upon as the delight of men, for having used² their power only to do them good.

There is no age³, or condition, but can reap⁴ the same benefits⁵ from history : and what I have said of princes and conquerors, comprehends also, due⁶ proportion being kept⁷, all persons | preferred to honours⁸ : | ministers of state, generals, officers, magistrates, lieutenants, prelates, fathers and mothers in their family⁹, masters and mistresses with their servants¹⁰, in one word, all those that have authority over others.

Thus¹¹ history, when it is well taught, proves¹² a school of morality¹³ for all men. It cries down¹⁴ vices, unmasks¹⁵ false virtues, undeceives¹⁶ from vulgar¹⁷ errors and prejudices¹⁸, dispels the enchanting¹⁹ witchcraft²⁰ of riches, and all that vain splendor²¹ which dazzles²² men, and demonstrates by a thousand instances²³ more persuasive²⁴ than all arguments²⁵, that there is nothing great and commendable²⁶ but honour and probity. From the esteem and admiration which the most corrupted people cannot refuse to the great and glorious²⁷ actions which it lays before them²⁸, it makes one²⁹ conclude, that virtue is therefore the true blessing³⁰ of man, and that it alone makes him truly great and estimable. It learns us³¹ to respect that virtue, and discover³² its beauty and brightness³³ through the veils³⁴ of poverty, adversity, obscurity, and even sometimes of discredit³⁵ and infamy³⁶ : as on the contrary, it inspires nothing but contempt³⁷ and horror for vice³⁸, | though arrayed³⁹ | with purple, | blazing with light,⁴⁰ | and placed upon the throne.

¹Horreur ; ²user ; ³âge ; ⁴tirer ; ⁵avantage ; ⁶juste ; ⁷garder ; ⁸constitué en dignité ; ⁹famille ; ¹⁰domestique ; ¹¹ainsi ; ¹²devenir ; ¹³morale ; ¹⁴décrier ; ¹⁵démasquer ; ¹⁶détromper ; ¹⁷populaire ; ¹⁸préjugé ; ¹⁹enchanteur ; ²⁰prestige ; ²¹éclat ; ²²éblouir ; ²³exemple ; ²⁴persuasif ; ²⁵raisonnement ; ²⁶louable ; ²⁷beau ; ²⁸présenter ; ²⁹one and us, are left out ; ³⁰bien ; ³¹us is left out ; ³²démêler ; ³³éclat ; ³⁴voile ; ³⁵décri ; ³⁶infamie ; ³⁷mépris ; ³⁸crime ; ³⁹fut-il revêtu ; ⁴⁰tout brillant de lumière.

But to confine myself¹ to my design, I look upon history as the first master that children must have, equally fit to amuse and instruct them, to form their mind and heart, and enrich their memory with an infinite number of facts as agreeable as useful. It | is even very conducive², | by the allurements³ of pleasure which is inseparable from it, to excite⁴ the curiosity of that age eager⁵ to learn, and give them a taste for study. Therefore in point⁶ of education, it is a fundamental principle, and observed in all times, that the study of history ought | to go before⁷ | all others, and | pave⁸ the way | for them. Plutarch tells us that the old Cato, that celebrated⁹ censor¹⁰, whose name and virtue have done so much honour to the Roman republic, and who took a particular care to bring up¹¹ his son himself¹², without relying¹³ upon the care¹⁴ of masters, composed purposely¹⁵ for him, and wrote with his own hand, in large letters¹⁶, | entertaining pieces of history¹⁷; | that, said he, the child from the lowest age, could, without quitting his father's house, get acquainted¹⁸ with the great men of his country, and form himself upon those antient patterns¹⁹ of probity and virtue.

Our age, and still more our nation, have an extreme need to be undeceived²⁰ of an infinite number of errors, and false prejudices which become every day | more and more²¹ | reigning²², concerning poverty and riches, modesty and pomp²³, the simplicity of building²⁴ and furniture²⁵, costliness²⁶, and magnificence²⁷; frugality and the | refined arts²⁸ | of cookery²⁹: in a word, concerning almost every thing, that makes the object of the contempt or admiration of men. The public taste herein³⁰ becomes the rule of young people. They think that valuable³¹, which is valued by all. 'Tis not reason

¹Se borner; ²pouvoir beaucoup servir; ³attirait; ⁴piquer; ⁵avide; ⁶matière; ⁷précéder; ⁸préparer la voie; ⁹célèbre; ¹⁰censeur; ¹¹élever; ¹²lui-même; ¹³s'en reposer; ¹⁴travail; ¹⁵exprès; ¹⁶caractère; ¹⁷de belles histoires; ¹⁸faire connoissance; ¹⁹modèle; ²⁰détrompé; ²¹de plus en plus; ²²dominant; ²³fasté; ²⁴bâtiment; ²⁵meubles; ²⁶somptuosité; ²⁷magnificence; ²⁸refinement; ²⁹bonne chère; ³⁰sur cela; ³¹estimable.

but custom that guides them. One bad example alone would be capable of corrupting the mind of young people, susceptible of all sorts of impressions : what is not therefore to be feared for them in a time wherein vices are grown¹ into custom², and sensuality³ | exerts its utmost endeavours⁴ | to extinguish⁵ all sentiments of honour and probity.

What need have they not of this science, whose chief⁶ effect is to dispel the false prejudices which seduce⁷ us, because they please us : to cure and | set us free³ | from the vulgar errors, which | we have sucked in with our mother's milk⁹ : to learn us | to discern between¹⁰ | what is true and false¹¹, good and bad, between | true greatness¹² | and a vain pride¹³ : and to hinder the contagion of bad example and vicious customs from tainting¹⁴ the minds of young people, and stifling¹⁵ the happy seeds of virtue, which are observed¹⁶ in them ! 'Tis in that science, which consists in judging of things, not by the common opinion, but by truth ; not by their outward appearance¹⁷, but by their intrinsic value¹⁸, that Socrates placed¹⁹ the whole wisdom of man.

I therefore thought it my duty²⁰ to begin this treatise²¹ on history, with setting down²² principles and rules to judge soundly²³ of great²⁴ and good actions, to discern wherein consists solid glory and true greatness, and to distinguish²⁵ exactly²⁶ what is worthy of esteem and admiration, and what deserves only indifference and contempt. Without these rules, young people, naturally unguarded²⁷, and having no other guides²⁸ but their own inclinations²⁹, or the vulgar opinions, might mistake³⁰ for a pattern³¹ all that is agreeable³² to those

¹Passé ; ²usage ; ³cupidité ; ⁴s'efforcer ; ⁵éteindre ; ⁶principal ; ⁷séduire ; ⁸délivrer ; ⁹sucer avec le lait ; ¹⁰faire le discernement ; ¹¹le vrai et le faux ; ¹²solide grandeur ; ¹³enfure ; ¹⁴infecter ; ¹⁵étouffer ; ¹⁶remarquer ; ¹⁷turn thus, by what they appear outwardly ; ¹⁸turn thus, by what they really are (réellement) ; ¹⁹mettre ; ²⁰turn thus, I thought to owe to begin ; ²¹traité ; ²²établir ; ²³sainement ; ²⁴beau ; ²⁵démêler ; ²⁶précisément ; ²⁷peu précautionné ; ²⁸guide ; ²⁹penchant ; ³⁰prendre ; ³¹modèle ; ³²conforme.

false notions¹, and imbibe² the passions and vices of those of whom history relates³ celebrated⁴ actions, which are not always virtuous or commendable⁵. Whereas they will be convinced by these principles, that those common opinions are contrary to right⁶ reason : and that 'tis neither riches, the magnificence of buildings, the sumptuousness⁷ of clothes or furniture⁸ | luxurious eating⁹, | the splendor of dignities or birth, shining¹⁰ actions, such as victories and conquests, nor even the most valuable parts¹¹, that make a man truly great and worthy of admiration : but that 'tis by his heart man is whatever he is ; and that the more truly great and generous his heart¹² is, the more contempt will he have for whatever appears great to the rest of men.



THE CITY OF BABYLON.

Babylon¹³, the seat¹⁴ of the empire of the kings of Assyria¹⁵, | was founded¹⁶ by Semiramis ; but Nabucodonosor gave it its chief¹⁷ beauties. This conqueror¹⁸, after | having brought to an end¹⁹ long²⁰ and difficult²¹ wars²², seeing himself in a full tranquility²³, applied himself²⁴ to make²⁵ his metropolis²⁶ one of the wonders²⁷ of the world.

It was situated²⁸ in a vast²⁹ plain, watered³⁰ by the Euphrates³¹ : the canals, cut³² out of that river, made the fruitfulness³³ of the soil³⁴ so great, that it yielded³⁵ as much to the king as half³⁶ of his empire.

The walls of the city built with large bricks³⁷, fifty cubits³⁸ thick, and two hundred high, made a perfect³⁹

¹Idee ; ²se remplir de ; ³rapporter ; ⁴éclatant ; ⁵estimable ; ⁶droit ; ⁷somptuosité ; ⁸meubles ; ⁹luxue de la table ; ¹⁰brillant ; ¹¹qualités de l'esprit ; ¹²turn thus, the more he will have a heart truly great, &c. ; ¹³Babylone ; ¹⁴siège ; ¹⁵Assyrie ; ¹⁶fondé ; ¹⁷principal ; ¹⁸conquérant ; ¹⁹terminer ; ²⁰long ; ²¹difficile ; ²²guerre ; ²³tranquillité ; ²⁴appliquer ; ²⁵add of in French before the next noun ; ²⁶capitale ; ²⁷merveille ; ²⁸situé ; ²⁹vaste ; ³⁰arrosé ; ³¹Euphrate ; ³²tiré ; ³³fertilité ; ³⁴terroir ; ³⁵rapporter ; ³⁶moitié ; ³⁷brique ; ³⁸coudée ; ³⁹parfait.

square¹, of twenty leagues in compass². One hundred and fifty towers³ were raised along⁴ those inaccessible⁵ walls | at equal distance⁶ | and commanded⁷ all the neighbouring⁸ country.

An hundred⁹ gates of brass¹⁰ poured out¹¹ on all sides an innumerable¹² crowd¹³ of people of all nations : fifty large streets crossed¹⁴ the city from one end¹⁵ | to the other, and formed¹⁶ | in crossing one another¹⁷ | a great many¹⁸ spacious squares¹⁹, containing²⁰ stately palaces, magnificent places, and delightful²¹ gardens.

The Euphrates ran²² | through the midst²³ | of Babylon. A bridge, built²⁴ upon that river with wonderful²⁵ art, joined²⁶ the two parts²⁷ of the city. At both ends²⁸ of that bridge were seen two palaces : the old palace at the east²⁹, and the new one westward³⁰. Near the old palace was the temple of Belus. From the centre³¹ of this building sprung out³² a pyramid³³ six hundred feet high, and composed³⁴ of eight towers rising³⁵ upon one another, always tapering³⁶. From the top³⁷ of that pyramid the Babylonians³⁸ observed³⁹ the motion⁴⁰ of the stars⁴¹. This was their chief study⁴², and 'tis by it they have made themselves famous⁴³ among other nations.

At the other end of the bridge the new palace was seen, which was sixty stades, or eight miles round⁴⁴. Its celebrated⁴⁵ gardens, encompassed⁴⁶ by large terraces⁴⁷, rose⁴⁸ like⁴⁹ an amphitheatre⁵⁰, | as high as⁵¹ | the walls of the city. The whole mass⁵² was supported⁵³ by several⁵⁴ arches⁵⁵, the vaults⁵⁶ whereof being covered with large stones, reeds⁵⁷ done over⁵⁸ with bitumen⁵⁹, two rows⁶⁰ of bricks⁶¹, and plates⁶² of lead⁶³, made⁶⁴ the whole

¹Quarré ; ²circuit ; ³tour ; ⁴régner ; ⁵inaccessible ; ⁶de distance en distance ; ⁷commander ; ⁸voisin ; ⁹porte ; ¹⁰airain ; ¹¹s'ouvrir ; ¹²innombrable ; ¹³foule ; ¹⁴traverser ; ¹⁵bout ; ¹⁶former ; ¹⁷se croiser ; ¹⁸plusieurs ; ¹⁹quarré ; ²⁰renfermer ; ²¹délicieux ; ²²couler ; ²³au milieu ; ²⁴construit ; ²⁵surprenant ; ²⁶joindre ; ²⁷partie ; ²⁸aux deux extrémités ; ²⁹orient ; ³⁰à l'occident ; ³¹centre ; ³²sortir ; ³³pyramide ; ³⁴composé ; ³⁵s'élever ; ³⁶en diminuant ; ³⁷sommet ; ³⁸Babylonien ; ³⁹observer ; ⁴⁰mouvement ; ⁴¹astre ; ⁴²étude ; ⁴³célèbre ; ⁴⁴tour ; ⁴⁵fameux ; ⁴⁶entouré ; ⁴⁷terrasse ; ⁴⁸s'élever ; ⁴⁹en ; ⁵⁰amphithéâtre ; ⁵¹à la hauteur ; ⁵²masse ; ⁵³soutenu ; ⁵⁴plusieurs ; ⁵⁵arcade ; ⁵⁶voute ; ⁵⁷roseau ; ⁵⁸endaît ; ⁵⁹bitume ; ⁶⁰rang ; ⁶¹brique ; ⁶²plaque ; ⁶³plomb ; ⁶⁴rendre.

impenetrable¹ to the rain² and dampness³. | There were seen walks⁴ | reaching farther than one could see⁵, | groves⁶, grass-plots⁷, flowers⁸ of all sorts; canals, ponds⁹, aqueducts¹⁰, to water¹¹ and embellish¹² that delightful¹³ place¹⁴. A marvellous¹⁵ collection¹⁶ of all the beauties of nature and art !

MERIT.

Cyrus interrupted¹⁷ Solon, and said to him, It seems¹⁸ to me that merit alone¹⁹ distinguishes men. Wit is the least of all merits, because it is always dangerous when alone : but wisdom, virtue, and valour, give a natural right²⁰ to govern. He alone ought²¹ to command others, who has more wisdom to find out what is right²², more virtue to pursue²³ it, and more courage to cause it to be executed²⁴.

Merit, replied²⁵ Solon, essentially²⁶ distinguishes men : it alone should determine²⁷ their rank²⁸ : but ignorance and passions oftentimes hinder²⁹ it to be known. Self-love³⁰ makes every body challenge³¹ it. Those who have most of it, are always modest³², and don't desire³³ to rule³⁴. In short³⁵, what seems³⁶ to be virtue, is sometimes nothing but a deceitful³⁷ vizard³⁸. Disputes, discords³⁹, illusions⁴⁰, | would last for ever⁴¹ | if there were no surer⁴² and less ambiguous⁴³ means⁴⁴ to regulate⁴⁵ the ranks, than merit only.

In small republics⁴⁶ the ranks are determined⁴⁷ by election⁴⁸. In great monarchies⁴⁹ by birth⁵⁰. I own⁵¹ that it is an evil to bestow⁵² dignities upon those who

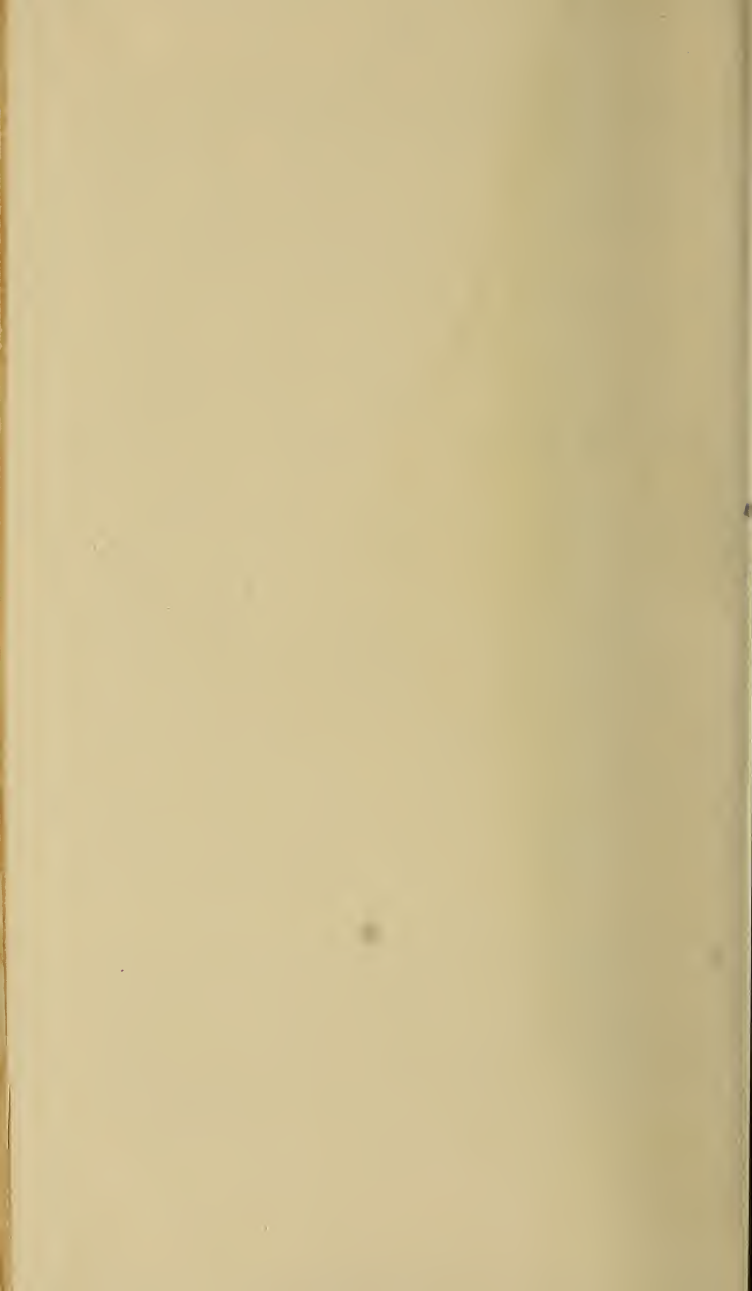
¹Impénétrable ; ²pluie ; ³humidité ; ⁴allée ; ⁵à perte de vue ; ⁶bosquet ; ⁷gazon ; ⁸fleur ; ⁹reservoir ; ¹⁰aquéduc ; ¹¹arroser ; ¹²embellir ; ¹³délices ; ¹⁴lieu ; ¹⁵merveilleux ; ¹⁶assemblage ; ¹⁷interrompre ; ¹⁸sembler ; ¹⁹seul ; ²⁰droit ; ²¹devoir ; ²²juste ; ²³suivre ; ²⁴exécuter ; ²⁵répliquer ; ²⁶essentièllement ; ²⁷décider ; ²⁸rang ; ²⁹empêcher ; ³⁰amour-propre ; ³¹s'attribuer ; ³²modeste ; ³³chercher ; ³⁴dominer ; ³⁵enfin ; ³⁶paroître ; ³⁷trompeur ; ³⁸masque ; ³⁹discorde ; ⁴⁰illusion ; ⁴¹être éternel ; ⁴²sûr ; ⁴³équivoque ; ⁴⁴moyen ; ⁴⁵régler ; ⁴⁶république ; ⁴⁷se régler ; ⁴⁸élection ; ⁴⁹monarchie ; ⁵⁰naissance ; ⁵¹avouer ; ⁵²accorder.

have no true merit : but it is another necessary evil ; and that necessity is the spring¹ of almost all political establishments. That is the difference between natural and civil right. The former² is always conformable³ to the most perfect justice. The other, though often unjust in its⁴ consequences, becomes however⁵ unavoidable⁶, in order to prevent⁷ disorder⁸ and confusion.

Ranks and dignities are but the shadow⁹ of true greatness¹⁰. The outward¹¹ respect and duties¹² that are paid¹³ to them, are likewise¹⁴ but the shadow of that esteem which belongs¹⁵ to virtue only. Is it not a great wisdom in the first law-givers¹⁶ to have preserved¹⁷ the order of the society, in enacting¹⁸ laws, by which they, who have the shadow of virtues, are contented¹⁹ with the shadow of esteem ?

I apprehend²⁰ you, said Cyrus : sovereignty²¹ and ranks are necessary evils | to keep passions within bounds²². | The commonality²³ ought to be contented to deserve the inward²⁴ esteem of men by their simple and modest virtue : and the great ought to be convinced²⁵ that outward²⁶ respect²⁷ only will be paid²⁸ to them, unless they have true merit. | By that means²⁹ | the former³⁰ will not be exasperated³¹ at their | low state³² | neither will the others pride³³ in their greatness. Men | will be sensible³⁴ | that kings are necessary : and kings will not forget that they are men. Every body will keep³⁵ his own³⁶ place ; and the order of the society will not | be broke through³⁷. | I comprehend³⁸ the beauty of that principle. I am mightily impatient³⁹ to be informed⁴⁰ of your other laws.

¹Source ; ²un ; ³conforme ; ⁴turn thus, the consequences which arise from it (résulter) ; ⁵pourtant ; ⁶inévitable ; ⁷prévenir ; ⁸désordre ; ⁹ombre ; ¹⁰grandeur ; ¹¹extérieur ; ¹²hommage ; ¹³rendre ; ¹⁴aussi ; ¹⁵appartenir ; ¹⁶législateur ; ¹⁷conserver ; ¹⁸établir ; ¹⁹se contenter ; ²⁰concevoir ; ²¹souveraineté ; ²²contenir les passions ; ²³les petits ; ²⁴intérieur ; ²⁵se persuader ; ²⁶extérieur ; ²⁷respect ; ²⁸accorder ; ²⁹par-là ; ³⁰un ; ³¹s'aigrir ; ³²bassesse ; ³³s'enorgueillir ; ³⁴sentir ; ³⁵se tenir ; ³⁶own is left out ; ³⁷trouble ; ³⁸comprendre ; ³⁹avoir grande impatience ; ⁴⁰apprendre.



Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: Sept. 2006

Preservation Technologies
A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION

111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
(724) 779-2111



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 117 507 0

